

# OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation

Maintenance

Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, GENESIS Branded Vehicle reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.

As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

Please note that some models are equipped with Right-Hand Drive (RHD). The explanations and illustrations for some operations in RHD models are opposite of those written in this manual.

### **CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR GENESIS BRANDED VEHICLE**

Your GENESIS Branded Vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your GENESIS Branded Vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

### **TWO-WAY RADIO OR MOBILE TELEPHONE INSTALLATION**

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or mobile telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your authorised retailer of GENESIS Branded products for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

### **WARNING! (IF EQUIPPED)**

The vehicle is equipped with a device of the system Pan-european eCall which calls emergency services. Any self- or unauthorised interference in the system Pan-european eCall, in vehicle systems and its components, installing of equipment which is not recommended by vehicle manufacturer and/or in authorised retailer of GENESIS Branded products can cause incorrect operation (of the device of) the system Pan-european eCall, making erroneous calls, causing failure of the device (in cars) in case of traffic accident or other accidents, when you need emergency care.

This may be dangerous and threaten your life!

---

## **SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING**

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE. These titles indicate the following:

### **DANGER**

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

---

### **WARNING**

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

---

### **CAUTION**

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

---

### **NOTICE**

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

---



## Table of contents

Information/Getting started with your electric vehicle	1
Vehicle information	2
Safety system	3
Instrument cluster	4
Convenience features	5
Driving your vehicle	6
Driver assistance system	7
Emergency situations	8
Maintenance	9
Index	I



# 1. Information/Getting started with your electric vehicle

Introduction .....	1-3
Genesis brand motor company .....	1-3
Safety messages .....	1-4
Vehicle modifications .....	1-5
Returning used vehicles (For Europe) .....	1-5
Vehicle data collection and event data recorders .....	1-6
About "Getting started with your electric vehicle" .....	1-7
Understanding your electric vehicle .....	1-7
Characteristics of your electric vehicle .....	1-7
Precautions when using the high voltage battery .....	1-9
Other precautions for electric vehicle management .....	1-10
Charging your electric vehicle .....	1-11
Safety precautions for charging your electric vehicle .....	1-11
Checking basic information on charging your electric vehicle .....	1-14
Using an AC charger .....	1-20
Using a DC charger .....	1-22
Using a portable charger (ICCB) .....	1-24
Stopping charging immediately .....	1-29
Using Electric Vehicle functions .....	1-30
Checking the Electric Vehicle screen configuration .....	1-30
Checking energy information .....	1-32
Setting the next departure time .....	1-34
Setting the options for the AC charger .....	1-36
Setting the target battery charge level .....	1-38
Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L) .....	1-39
Setting electric vehicle specialized functions .....	1-40
Using V2L function .....	1-45
Safety precautions when using the V2L function .....	1-45
Using electricity outside the vehicle .....	1-47
Solving V2L problems .....	1-48
Aux. Battery Saver+ .....	1-49
Driving your electric vehicle .....	1-50
Starting and stopping the vehicle .....	1-50
Checking electric vehicle driving information .....	1-51

Countermeasures for accidents or fire.....	1-60
If the electric vehicle catches fire .....	1-60
If the electric vehicle is submerged .....	1-60
If the electric vehicle needs towing .....	1-61
Other precautions for electric vehicle accidents .....	1-61

## INTRODUCTION

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing Genesis Branded Vehicle. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive Genesis Branded Vehicle. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis Branded Vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis Branded Vehicle. To become familiar with your new Genesis Branded Vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance, and any other assistance that may be required.

## GENESIS BRAND MOTOR COMPANY

Copyright 2024 Genesis Brand Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Genesis Brand Motor Company.

## SAFETY MESSAGES

Your safety, and the safety of others, are very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, and may damage your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE, and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING, and CAUTION.

### **DANGER**

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

---

### **WARNING**

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

---

### **CAUTION**

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

---

### **NOTICE**

NOTICE indicates a situation that, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

---

## Vehicle modifications

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.  
In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge, and fire.

### NOTICE

Some vehicle interior sounds (including welcome sound, navigation alerts, or warning sounds) may be generated from the interior speakers and amplifier. We recommend that you do not replace these components with anything other than the original Genesis/Hyundai factory parts. Any unauthorised product may cause a malfunction of the vehicle interior sounds that may affect the intended operation of the vehicle.

## Returning used vehicles (For Europe)

Genesis Branded Vehicle promotes an environmentally sound treatment for end of life vehicles and offers to take back your Genesis Branded Vehicle end of life vehicles in accordance with the European Union (EU) End of Life Vehicles Directive.

You can get detailed information from your national Genesis Branded Vehicle homepage.

## Vehicle data collection and event data recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

### *i* Information

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (for example, name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

---

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties that have the special equipment, such as law enforcement, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## About "Getting started with your electric vehicle"

"Getting started with your electric vehicle" provides information about new technologies applied to the vehicle and explains how to use the main features. "Getting started with your electric vehicle" allows you to quickly and easily understand new vehicle features and how to operate them conveniently.

- Before driving, carefully read the manual provided with the vehicle and follow all safety information and precautions for every vehicle feature.
- "Getting started with your electric vehicle" covers all optional specifications. It may include descriptions for features that are not equipped in the vehicle.
- Images of the exterior and interior of the vehicle in "Getting started with your electric vehicle" may differ from the actual vehicle.

## Understanding your electric vehicle

Electric vehicles are driven using a battery and an electric motor. Understand the characteristics of your electric vehicle and check the features that you must know before driving it.

### Characteristics of your electric vehicle

The characteristics that differentiate electric vehicles from petrol and diesel vehicles are as follows:

- Electric vehicles are eco-friendly because they do not use fossil fuels for driving. Additionally, unlike petrol and diesel vehicles, noise and vibration are minimal, and the vehicle's lifespan is relatively long.
- When slowing down or driving downhill, regenerative braking is used. Regenerative braking charges the high voltage battery and minimises energy loss.
- If the high voltage battery is running low, you can charge the vehicle using the AC charger, DC charger, or portable charging cables. For more information, see "Charging your electric vehicle".

#### *i* Information

Regenerative braking uses an electric motor when decelerating and braking, and it transforms kinetic energy to electrical energy in order to charge the high voltage battery.

### ***Battery information***

The batteries used in the electric vehicle are as follows:

- **High voltage battery (high-capacity):** Drives the motor and operates the air conditioner. It can be charged via an AC charger, DC charger, or portable charger.
- **12 V battery:** Operates all lamps, wipers, and audio system. It is automatically charged when the vehicle is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY or the high voltage battery is being charged.

### ***Main components of your electric vehicle***

The main components of your electric vehicle and their functions are as follows:

- **On-Board Charger (OBC):** Charges the high voltage battery by converting the power grid's AC power to DC power.
- **Inverter:** Converts power from direct current (DC) to alternating current (AC) and supplies power to the motor, and converts power from AC to DC and charge the high voltage battery during deceleration and braking.
- **Low Voltage DC-DC Converter (LDC):** Converts the high voltage battery's power source to a low voltage (12 V) power source and supply power to the electrical devices in the vehicle.
- **Vehicle Control Unit (VCU):** Controls the various controllers and sensors on the vehicle.
- **Motor:** Uses electricity accumulated in the high voltage battery to drive the vehicle (same role as an engine in petrol and diesel vehicles).
- **Reduction gear:** Delivers the rotational force of the motor to the tyres at appropriate speeds and torque.
- **High voltage battery (Lithium-ion battery):** Stores and supplies power necessary for the electric vehicle to operate. (The separately installed 12 V battery provides power to the vehicle when the vehicle is in POWER ON or OFF.)



#### **WARNING**

- Do not remove or disassemble any high voltage battery's connectors and wires. Doing so may lead to accidents, such as electric shock, and result in serious injury and significantly degrade the vehicle's performance and durability.
  - When the high voltage battery or its related components require inspection and maintenance, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

## Precautions when using the high voltage battery

Precautions for high voltage battery when driving and storing the vehicle are as follows:

### CAUTION

- Keep the gauge of the high voltage battery from going below than 20 %. Storing the vehicle whilst the battery level is low for a long time may damage the battery or reduce the battery's capacity, potentially causing the need for a battery replacement.
- If a collision occurs and the vehicle is impacted, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to check the battery connection status.
- Using the V2L function may reduce the driving distance due to the use of the high voltage battery energy, and repeated use of the V2L function may cause a decrease in the life of the high voltage battery.
- Repeated use of a DC charger may cause a decrease in the life of the high voltage battery.
- The high voltage battery level may reduce naturally even if the vehicle is not driven.
- Storing the vehicle in temperatures that are too hot or cold may degrade the battery performance.
- The distance to empty or power output may vary depending on the driving conditions, such as the outside temperature. Driving at high speeds or uphill may increase battery consumption, resulting in a shorter distance to empty.
- If you use the air conditioning or heating, which is powered by the high voltage battery, the distance to empty may decrease. Maintain proper temperature when using the air conditioning or heating.
- Depending on the vehicle's period of use, natural degradation of the battery may occur, so the distance to empty may decrease. When the charge capacity and distance to empty keep failing, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If you do not use the vehicle for a long time, charge the vehicle at least once every 3 months to prevent the battery from fully discharging. When the battery level has lower power, immediately charge the vehicle.
- To keep the battery in optimal condition, use AC charging. Fully charging the battery when it is 20 % or lower helps to keep the battery in optimal condition. (Charging once a month or more is recommended.)
- The charging level value displayed on the instrument cluster may decrease according to the charging conditions (charger status, outside temperature, battery temperature, etc.). For longer battery life and safety, after a certain charging level is reached, the charging current is gradually lowered to fully charge the battery.

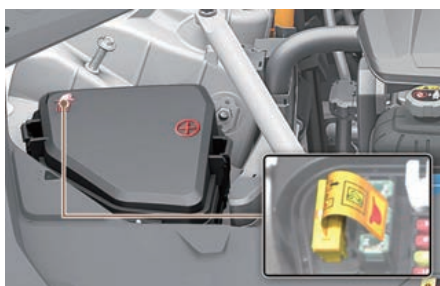
## Other precautions for electric vehicle management

### CAUTION

- If post repair heat treatment after repairs or painting is required after an accident, the high voltage battery's performance may be degraded. If heat treatment is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
  - When cleaning the motor compartment, do not use a high-pressure washer. Doing so may result in electric shock, due to a discharge in high voltage electricity, or damage the vehicle's electric system.
  - Do not install third-party parts or modified parts on the vehicle. Doing so may damage the electric power system. Only use or install genuine parts.
- 

### *High voltage cut-off switch*

High voltage cut-off switch is a device located inside the motor compartment to block the battery's high voltage when your vehicle is inspected at an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



### WARNING

- Never touch the high voltage cut-off switch. This could result in serious injury or death in a collision or electric shock.
  - If the high voltage cut-off switch requires an inspection or repair, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
  - Never disconnect or cut the high voltage cut-off switch except in an emergency situation. Serious problems may occur, such as the vehicle may not start.
-

## Charging your electric vehicle

Check the detailed information about charging an electric vehicle and charge your vehicle.

Electric vehicles can be charged via an AC charger or DC charger installed at public charging stations. If the vehicle cannot be moved to a public charging station in the event of an emergency, you can charge the vehicle via the In-Cable Control Box (ICCB) with a power source (AC 230 V).

To find a nearby charging station, refer to the "Searching for nearby charging stations" section in this chapter.

## Safety precautions for charging your electric vehicle

Before charging your electric vehicle, carefully read and follow all the safety information below. Failure to do so may cause electric shock or fire and result in a serious injury, death, malfunctions, or property damage.

### *Precautions for electric medical devices*

#### WARNING

**Electromagnetic waves that are generated from the charger can seriously impact electric medical devices, such as an implantable cardiac pacemaker.** When using such devices, make sure to consult with your doctor and the manufacturer to find out whether charging your electric vehicle will impact the operation of your device.

### *Basic safety precautions for charging*

#### WARNING

- Before charging, apply the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) with the brake pedal pressed, shift to P (Park) and turn off the vehicle. Movement of the vehicle whilst charging may result in property damage, serious injury, or death.
- Use specified electric vehicle charger only. Failure to do so may damage the charger, charging cable, or vehicle. Also, it may lead to safety hazards, such as fire, explosion, etc.
- To avoid property damage, serious injury, or death from electric shock and fire, follow the instructions below:
  - Do not touch the charging connector, charging plug, or the charging inlet when connecting the cable to the charger and the charging inlet on the vehicle.
  - Do not touch the charging connector and charging plug with wet hands, or when standing in water or snow whilst connecting the charging cable.
  - When connecting or removing the charging cable, you must hold the charging connector handle and charging plug.
  - Use a waterproof charger. Do not charge the vehicle in a place where rainwater may come into contact with the joints of the charging cable connector and the charging plug.

- Ensure there is no water, dust, or other contaminants on the charging cable connector and the charging plug.
  - Immediately stop charging if you feel abnormal conditions, such as odor or smoke.
  - Do not charge the vehicle if there is a risk of lightning.
- 

### *i* Information

- Whilst charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.
  - Ensure the vehicle door is unlocked before disconnecting the charging connector. The unlock button on the charging connector does not work when the vehicle door is locked.
  - To control the temperature of the high voltage battery whilst charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air conditioner is used to cool down the battery. It may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air conditioner compressor and cooling fan, but this is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery.
  - The cooling system may be operated when using the air conditioner during charging. This may degrade the air conditioner's performance temporarily.
  - Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications and condition, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery and distance to empty may vary.
  - In rare cases, you might hear high-frequency noise (a small beeping sound) outside the car when charging with a 400 V DC charger that has deteriorated or has long communication delay. The high-frequency noise can be generated only when the vehicle tries to reduce its own electromagnetic waves to keep DC charging as stable as possible. Do not worry about this beep noise, because it is intentional and does not affect the charging performance or the vehicle itself.
- 

### *Precautions for operating the cooling fan*

#### **WARNING**



Do not put your hand near the cooling fan in the motor compartment whilst charging. It may operate automatically to control the battery temperature, even if the vehicle is turned off.

---

### ***Precautions for operating the charging door***

Before operating the charging door, carefully read and follow all the safety information below.

#### **CAUTION**

- Before opening the charging door, check the direction in which the door opens and ensure that there is no interference with nearby objects when opening or closing the door.
- When opening and closing the charging door, be careful not to bump your face, head, etc., or get your hands or other body parts caught in the door.
- If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather. In this case, operate the charging door warmer (if equipped), and lightly tap or remove any ice near the charging door.

For more information, refer to the "Electric charging door" section in chapter 5.

- Do not try to forcibly open the charging door. It may cause damage to the charging door or cause a malfunction.
- Do not hold the parts that support the charging door. Damage to parts or deformation of parts may cause vehicle damage and accidents.

### ***Precautions for using, handling, and storing the charging cable***

#### **Precautions when using the charging cable**

#### **CAUTION**

- To prevent electric shock, replace the charging cable if the coating or the connector is damaged.
- Do not modify or disassemble the charging cable. Doing so may result in fire, electric shock, or injury.
- Do not pull or twist the charging cable excessively, and ensure that the cable is not twisted. Power cuts or damage to the cable's insulation sheath may result in electric shock or fire.
- Do not drag the charging cable on the floor or place objects on it. Damage to the insulation of the cable may result in electric shock or fire.
- Do not use the charging cable near a heat source or heating appliance.
- Do not drop or subject the charging cable to a strong impact. Also, ensure no water or liquid comes into contact with the cable.
- Use the charging cable only when there are no children around.
- If there is any sign of damage, corrosion, or rust on the charging connector and plug, or if the connection of the charging connector and plug feels loose, do not use the cable. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Precautions when handling and storing the charging cable

#### **CAUTION**

- Always keep the charging connector and plug dry and clean.
- Ensure that the connectors, plugs, and control box (portable charger) of the charging cable are not submerged or in contact with water.
- Keep the charging cable free from water or moisture, and keep it in the luggage compartment.
- Do not keep the charging cable near heat source or heating appliances.
- Keep the charging cable away from children.
- If there is dust or contaminants inside the charging connector or plug, remove it using the air gun.
- If the charging cable is contaminated, completely disconnect the cable from the charger or power, and remove the contaminants.
  - Wipe the charging cable lightly with the soft cloth soaked with a 3 % neutral detergent aqueous solution, then use a clean cloth to completely remove moisture and dry the cable in a well-ventilated shade.
  - When removing contaminants, ensure the charging connector and charging plug are not in contact with water.
  - Do not use organic solvents, such as benzene, paint thinner, or detergent. Doing so may cause deformation, discolouration, or malfunction of charging cable.
  - When using a vehicle decontamination agent, ensure that the product does not contain organic solvents, such as benzene, paint thinner, or detergent.

---

## Checking basic information on charging your electric vehicle

Before charging your vehicle, check and understand the information such as the expected charging time according to the charge type, checking the State of Charge (SOC), and setting the charger lock mode.

### *Checking charge types and times*

The charge types for electric vehicle are as follows:

- **AC charge:** The electric vehicle is charged via an AC charger at public charging stations. An AC charger may require an AC charging cable (sold separately).
- **DC charge:** You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.
- **Portable charge:** If the vehicle cannot be moved to a public charging station due to a lack of battery power, the vehicle can be charged with household electricity, using the 230 V portable charger (sold separately).

## CAUTION

- Battery performance and life may deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly. Use of DC charging should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life. Use AC charging unless DC charging is necessary.
- The electrical outlet at home must comply with regulations and can safely accommodate the Voltage, Current (Amps), and Power (Watts) ratings specified on the portable charger. If not, the vehicle may not be charged or safety hazards, such as fire, may occur.
- If the power distributor exceeds its capacity whilst charging the vehicle with a portable charger at home, the power to home may be cut off or a fire may occur.
- If you use a portable charger to charge your electric vehicle with household electricity, you are charged on your household electricity bill.

The estimated charging time for each charging type is as follows:

Charging type		Charging time (at room temperature)	Charge level (Minimum-Maximum)	Charging condition (Temperature)
AC charge		About 8 hours and 30 minutes	10-100 %	Battery temperature (25 °C)
DC charge	350 kW	About 25 minutes	10-80 % (Can be charged to 100 %)	
	50 kW	About 84 minutes	10-80 % (Can be charged to 100 %)	
Portable charge		About 38 hours and 30 minutes	10-100 %	

## *i* Information

- Depending on the condition and duration of use of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.
- If the charger is worn out, exposed, or there exists any type of damage, charging may stop for your safety. Use another charger that works normally.
- When charging the battery, an additional 3 minutes may be required to check battery condition.

Checking the charging status

Inside the charging door

Check the State of Charge (SOC) of the high voltage battery via the charge indicator lamp inside the charging door.

- 1. With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator on the charging door to open the charging door.
- 2. Check the SOC referring to the charge indicator lamp inside the charging door.
  - SOC is indicated in 4 levels.



Charge indicator lamp	SOC [%]
	0-24 %
	25-49 %
	50-74 %
	75-100 %

## On the instrument cluster



Check the charging state on the instrument cluster to monitor the battery capacity of the high voltage and estimated charging time.

When charging starts, the charging state will be displayed on instrument cluster.

### *i* Information

- With the vehicle on, the charging state will be displayed continuously.
- When the vehicle is off, the charging state will be displayed for up to 1 minute.  
The charging state will be displayed continuously when a door is opened.
- When scheduled charging is set, scheduled charging message is displayed.
- When scheduled air conditioner or heater operates whilst waiting for the scheduled charging, the estimated charging time is displayed as "-".

Checking information on the charging label

Open the charging door and check the information on the charging label. The charging label shows safety symbols and the rated input specifications for charging.



Name		Description
(1)	Warning for high voltage	Indicates a device with a risk of electric shock.
(2)	Warning/Caution symbol	Indicates a device that may cause property damage, serious injury or death if not operated carefully.
(3)	Rated voltage and maximum charging current	Indicates the type of input current (AC) and the rated voltage range (V) and charging current (A) when AC charging.

### ***Setting charging connector locking mode***

You can lock the charging connector during AC charging to prevent unintended detachment of the charging connector from the vehicle.

#### ***i* Information**

The connector is automatically locked during DC charging or whilst using the V2L function, regardless of the settings of charging connector locking mode applied to the vehicle.

- When DC charging is complete, the charging connector is unlocked automatically.
- After using electricity, you can unlock the charging connector by pressing the switch on the V2L connector to turn off the power and unlock the vehicle door.
- On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > **⚙️ (EV Settings)** > **Lock Charging Cable** to set the locking mode of the charging connector.

The available locking mode options are as follows:

- **Always:** Locks the connector automatically whenever the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.
- **While charging:** Locks the connector automatically only whilst charging is in progress after the charging connector is properly connected to the vehicle.
- **Do not lock:** The connector unlocks regardless of the state of charging.

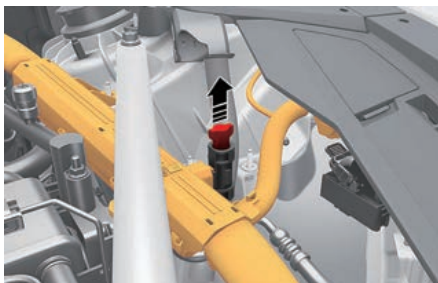
### ***Disconnecting the charging connector in an emergency***

If the unlock button is not functioning properly due to a discharged battery or abnormal electrical wiring, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the vehicle.

#### **CAUTION**

Do not disconnect the charging connector forcibly. Doing so may damage the charging connector or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

If the charging connector is not disconnected due to battery being fully discharged or a wiring failure, open the bonnet and pull the emergency cable.



- If the charging connector does not disconnect after pulling the emergency cable, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Using an AC charger

AC charging is the most common charging method for electric vehicles. Charge your electric vehicle using an AC charging cable installed in public charging stations or separately purchased AC charging cable.

- To find a nearby charging station, refer to the "Searching for nearby charging stations" section in this chapter.

### **WARNING**

Before charging the vehicle, carefully read and follow the instructions in "Safety precautions for charging your electric vehicle" to prevent property damage or injury due to electric shock, fire, explosion, etc.

---

### **CAUTION**

To prevent property damage or injury due to fire or explosion, follow the instructions below.

- Only use the genuine AC charging cable provided by the manufacturer (if equipped).
  - Do not use an extension cable.
  - Check the rated voltage and maximum charging current required for charging, and ensure that the charger power you are using meets the requirements.
  - Immediately stop charging if you discover abnormal conditions, such as odor or smoke.
- 

## *Understanding the AC charging cable*

The exterior and configuration of the AC charging cable are as follows:



[A] Charging connector (Vehicle side)  
[B] Charging plug (Charger side)

## *Charging with an AC charger*

Follow the instructions below to charge the vehicle with an AC charger.

1. With the vehicle started, apply the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) whilst pressing the brake pedal.
2. Turn all switches off, shift to P (Park), and turn off the vehicle.

3. With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator on the charging door to open the charging door.
4. Open the charging inlet cover and check the charging connector and charging inlet for dust or other contaminants.
  - If there is any dirt or contaminants, remove it using the air gun.



### WARNING

Do not touch the charging connector of the charging cable or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

5. Remove the charging connector protection cap of the AC charging cable, hold the charging connector handle, and connect it to the AC charging inlet on the vehicle. Push it until you hear a click.
6. **[If using separately purchased charging cable]** Remove the charging plug protection cap of the AC charging cable, hold the charging plug handle, and connect it to the electric outlet (230 V) of the AC charger.
  - This process is required only when using a separately purchased AC charging cable. If you use a charging cable installed in an AC charger, a separate charging plug connection is not required.
  - When charging starts, the estimated charging time is displayed on the instrument cluster.
7. **[If using a separately purchased charging cable]** When charging is complete, hold the charging plug handle, disconnect the charging plug from the electric outlet (230 V) of the AC charger, and close the protection cap of the charging plug.
  - This process is required only when using an AC charging cable purchased separately. If you use a charging cable installed in an AC charger, a separate charging plug disconnection is not required.
8. Hold the charging connector handle, and pull the charging connector to disconnect it from the charging inlet.



### CAUTION

Do not forcibly disconnect the charging connector without pressing the unlock button on the charging connector. It may damage the charging connector or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

9. Close the charging inlet cover and press the charging door to completely close it.



### Information

- If the charging connector locking mode is set to **Always** or **While charging**, unlock the door by pressing the button on the smart key or the button on the driver's door, and disconnect the charging connector from the charging inlet.
  - For more information, refer to the "Setting charging connector locking mode" section in this chapter.
- During AC charging, the quality of radio reception may degrade in some areas.

## Using a DC charger

If you need to charge the vehicle in a short time, you can charge at high speeds using a DC charger installed in public charging stations.

- To find a nearby charging station, refer to the "Searching for nearby charging stations" section in this chapter.

### **WARNING**

Before charging the vehicle, carefully read and follow the instructions in "Setting charging connector locking mode" to prevent property damage or injury due to electric shock, fire, explosion, etc.

---

### **CAUTION**

Battery performance and life may deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly. Use of DC charging should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life. Use AC charging unless DC charging is necessary.

---

### *Understanding the DC charging connector*

The exterior of the DC charging cable is as follows:

Type A



Type B



### ***Charging with a DC charger***

Follow the instructions below to charge the vehicle with a DC charger.

1. With the vehicle started, apply the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) whilst pressing the brake pedal.
2. Turn all switches off, shift to P (Park), and turn off the vehicle.
3. With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator on the charging door to open the charging door.
4. Open the charging inlet cover and check the charging connector and charging inlet for dust or other contaminants.
  - If there is any dirt or contaminants, remove it using the air gun.

#### **WARNING**

Do not touch the charging connector of the charging cable or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

5. Remove the charging connector protection cap of the DC charging cable, hold the charging connector handle, and connect it to the DC charging inlet on the vehicle. Push it until you hear a click.
  - When charging starts, the estimated charging time is displayed on the instrument cluster.

#### **Information**

If you open the driver's door whilst charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the instrument cluster.

6. When charging is complete, hold the charging connector handle and pull out the charging connector to disconnect it from the charging inlet.
  - Depending on the DC charger types, some DC chargers may not have a charger connector unlock button.

#### **CAUTION**

Before disconnecting the charging connector, check if there is an unlock button on the connector handle. If the connector handle is equipped with an unlock button, forcibly disconnecting the connector without pressing the button may damage the charging connector or charging inlet on the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

For more information, refer to the "Setting charging connector locking mode" section in this chapter.

7. Close the charging inlet cover.
8. Press the charging door to completely close it.

### Information

During DC charging, the quality of radio reception may degrade in some areas.

---

## Using a portable charger (ICCB)

If the vehicle cannot be moved to a public charging station, you can charge the vehicle using a separately purchased In-Cable Control Box (ICCB) in places where general power (AC 230 V) is supplied.

### WARNING

Before charging the vehicle, carefully read and follow the instructions in "Setting charging connector locking mode" to prevent property damage or injury due to electric shock, fire, explosion, etc.

---

### CAUTION

To prevent property damage or injury due to fire or explosion, follow the instructions below.





- Only use a genuine Genesis portable charger (if equipped).
  - Do not let children operate or touch the portable charger. Doing so may lead to unexpected accidents.
  - Do not use an extension cable.
  - The charger power you are using must comply with regulations and safely accommodate the voltage, current (amps), and power (watts) ratings. If not, the vehicle may not be charged or safety hazards, such as fire, may occur.
  - If the power distributor exceeds its capacity whilst charging the vehicle with a portable charger at home, the power to the home may be cut off or a fire may occur.
  - Immediately stop charging if you discover abnormal conditions, such as odor or smoke.
  - Use a portable charger only in emergencies, and do not use it to fully charge the battery.
  - If you charge the vehicle with household electricity, you are charged electricity bill according to the home rate system, not the electric vehicle rate system.
-


### Understanding portable chargers

The configuration of a portable charger and the display of the operation indicator are as follows:



- [A] Control box
- [B] Power plug
- [C] Charging connector

Indicator	Name	colour	Description
	POWER	Green	Turns on when the power is on.
	CHARGE	Blue	Turns on whilst charging and blinks when current is limited (Forcibly switched to 6 A).
	FAULT	Red	Blinks when a leakage current, communication error, or overcurrent error occurs, or when the high-temperature protection inside the plug and charger is activated.
	CHARGE LEVEL	-	Displays the present charging current setting (6 A, 8 A, 10 A, or 12 A).

Indicator	Name		colour	Description
	E1	Control pilot communication	-	Vehicle communication error
	E2	Leakage	-	Current leakage
	E3		-	Charger error
	E4	Plug temperature	-	Plug overtemperature warning
	E5		-	Plug temperature failure
	E6		-	Charger error
	E7	Overcurrent	-	Charging overcurrent warning
	E8	Internal temperature	-	Charger overheating
	E9		-	Charger error
	F1	Relay fusion	-	Charger error
	F2	Ground Monitoring/Interrupt	-	Poor grounding of outlet
	F3	Switched mode power supply power failure	-	Switched mode power supply error (voltage failure)
	F4		-	Switched mode power supply error (abnormal voltage)
	F5	Control Pilot voltage error	-	Control Pilot (-) voltage error
	F6		-	Control Pilot (+) voltage error
	F7	Temperature sensor error	-	Plug temperature sensor error
	F8		-	PCB internal temperature sensor error

- If an error occurs, you can reset the portable charger by disconnecting and reconnecting the power plug, and then pressing the button on the control box for more than 2 seconds.
- If the same symptom repeats after resetting the portable charger, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If there is no status change for more than 1 minute, the portable charger is switched to power saving mode, and the display light is turned off.

### Charging with a portable charger

Follow the instructions below to charge the vehicle with a portable charger.

1. Connect the power plug of the portable charger to the electrical outlet at your home.
  - The power indicator light on the control box turns green.
2. Set the charging current by pressing the button on the control box for more than 2 seconds until the number on the charging current indicator blinks.

#### NOTICE

An example of a portable charger charging current setting suitable for the rated current of the power supplied is as follows. However, the appropriate charging current may vary depending on the environment, such as the power usage inside the building.

Outlet current	ICCB charge level
14-16 A	12 A
12-13 A	10 A
10-11 A	8 A
8-9 A	6 A

- The charging current is changed each time the button is pressed, in the order of '6 A - 8 A - 10 A - 12 A'.
- If 10 seconds have passed without pressing any button, the blinking stops and the charging current setting is finished.

3. With the vehicle on, apply the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) whilst pressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn all switches off, shift to P (Park), and turn off the vehicle.
5. With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator on the charging door to open the charging door.
6. Open the charging inlet cover and check the charging connector and charging inlet for dust or other contaminants.
  - If there is any dirt or contaminants, remove it using the air gun.



#### WARNING

Do not touch the charging connector of the charging cable or the charging inlet of the vehicle.

7. Remove the charging connector protection cap of the portable charging cable, hold the charging connector handle, and connect it to the AC charging inlet of the vehicle. Push it until you hear a click.
  - When charging starts, the estimated charging time is displayed on the instrument cluster.

8. When charging is complete, hold the charging connector handle with the unlock button pressed and pull on the charging connector to disconnect it from the charging inlet.

### *i* Information

If you have set the charging connector locking mode as **Always** or **While charging**, unlock the door by pressing the button on the smart key or the button on the driver's door, and disconnect the charging connector from the charging inlet.

- For more information, refer to the "Setting charging connector locking mode" section in this chapter.
- 

9. Close the charging inlet cover.

10. Press the charging door to completely close it.

### *i* Information

During portable charging, the quality of radio reception may degrade in some areas.

---

### *Using the scheduled charging function*

The scheduled charging function allows you to charge your vehicle using low-cost, late-night power until the next departure time.

### *i* Information

You can use the scheduled charging function only when using an AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box). For more information about connecting an AC charger and portable charger, refer to the "Using an AC charger" and "Using a portable charger (ICCB)" section in this chapter.

---

On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric Vehicle > Scheduled Charging**.

- For more information, refer to the "Setting the options for the AC charger" section in this chapter.
- When scheduled charging is set and the AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB) is connected for charging, the indicator lamp gradually illuminates for 3 minutes to indicate that scheduled charging is set.
- When scheduled charging is set, charging is not started immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB) is connected. To charge the vehicle immediately, open the charging door and press the immediate charging button for more than 2 seconds or select **Electric vehicle > Scheduled charging** on the screen and deactivate the scheduled charge setting.

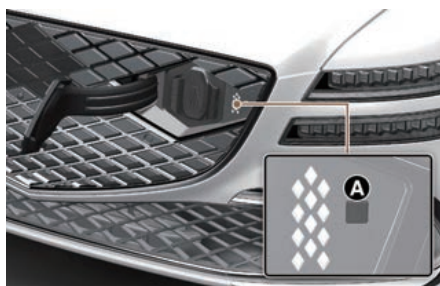
## **i** Information

- You can set up or cancel scheduled charging using the Genesis Connected Service app on your smartphone. For more information, refer to the infotainment system manual.
- Charging may start immediately after a charger is connected to the vehicle, depending on the charging time calculated when setting up the scheduled charging.

## **Stopping charging immediately**

If you cannot stop charging the electric vehicle through the charger whilst charging with an AC charger, DC charger, or portable charger, follow the instructions below:

1. Press the door lock or unlock button of the vehicle.
2. Within 15 seconds press the immediate charging button [A] for more than 2 seconds.



## **Checklist when charging does not start**

Check the following if charging does not start after connecting the charger to the vehicle.

- Check the scheduled charging setting. If the scheduled charging is set, charging is not started after connecting an AC charger or portable charger to the vehicle until the setting conditions are met.
- Check the operation status of the AC charger, DC charger, and portable charger. Actual method for indicating the operation status may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.
- If a warning sign related to charging appears on the instrument cluster, check its message.
- If the charging connector and charging inlet are not connected properly, the connector may droop or vibrate. In this case, hold the charging connector handle and push it all the way in.
- Check the charging status by connecting another charger that has been approved for proper operation.
  - If the vehicle is charged normally using another charger, contact the charger manufacturer for a solution.
  - If the vehicle is not charged even when using another charger, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Using Electric Vehicle functions

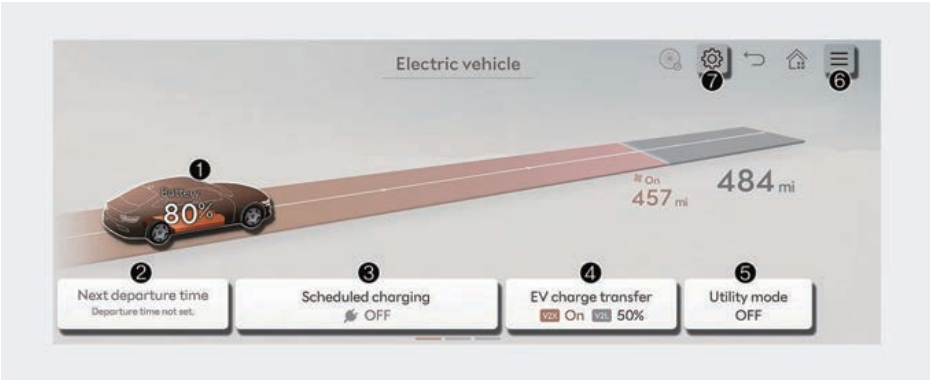
**Electric vehicle** provides driving information and high voltage battery information. You can set various electric vehicle functions in **Electric vehicle**.

### Checking the Electric Vehicle screen configuration



Follow the instruction below to enter Electric Vehicle mode and check the screen configuration.

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle**.
  - The **Electric vehicle** mode screen appears.

The details of the **Electric vehicle** mode screen is as follows:



Name		Description
(1)	Energy information	You can check the energy consumption and energy economy history.
(2)	Next Departure Time	You can set a scheduled departure time by which charging is complete and the cabin temperature is preconditioned.
(3)	Scheduled charging	You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery and the climate control temperature.
(4)	EV Charge transfer (V2L)	You can set the battery discharging limit (%) for the high voltage battery for driving. For more information, refer to the "Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L)" section in this chapter.
(5)	Utility mode	You can use devices inside the system with the use of a high voltage battery.

Name		Description
(6)	 (Menu)	You can check the energy information, charging station and online manual.
(7)	 (EV settings)	<p>You can set various electric vehicle specialized functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Maximum % Charge</li><li>• AC charging current</li><li>• Battery conditioning mode</li><li>• Utility mode etc.</li></ul> <p>For more information, refer to the "Setting electric vehicle specialized functions" section in this chapter.</p>

## Checking energy information

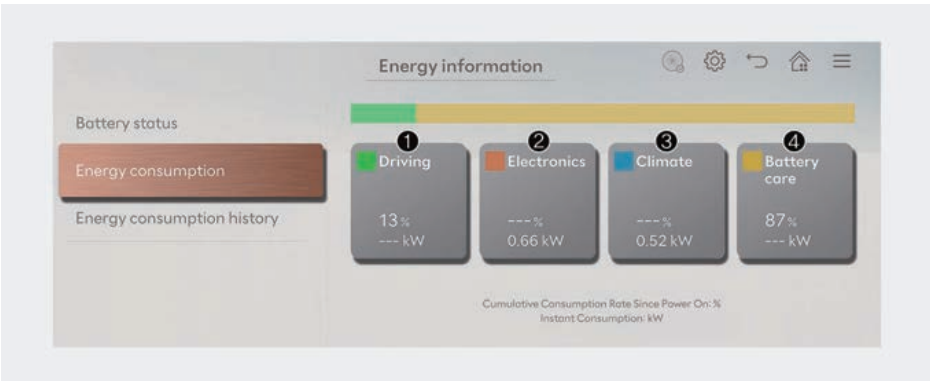
You can check the energy consumption and energy economy history.

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle**.
  - Check the energy information.

### Checking the energy consumption

On the infotainment screen, select **Energy information**.

- You can check the current energy consumption for each vehicle system.

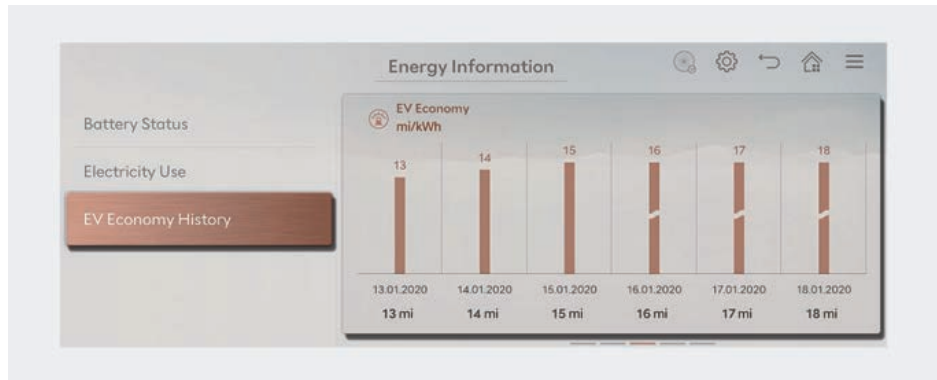


Name		Description
(1)	Driving	Shows the percentage of instantaneous and regenerative energy consumed by the motor to drive the vehicle and the percentage of the power driving system used in total power used since starting the vehicle.
(2)	Electronics	Shows the power and energy consumption used by the vehicle system, including the instrument cluster, infotainment system (speaker and navigation), headlight, vehicle control unit, etc., and the percentage of the power vehicle system used in total power used since starting the vehicle.
(3)	Climate	Shows the power and energy consumption used by the air conditioner or heater and the percentage of the power climate system used in total power used since starting the vehicle.
(4)	Battery care	Shows the momentary power and energy consumption used when increasing and cooling down the battery temperature to maintain optimal battery performance and the percentage of battery temperature control mode (Battery care mode) used in the total power used since starting the vehicle.

### *Checking the energy economy history*

On the infotainment screen select **EV Economy History**.

- You can check the history of electric energy economy with the date and distance of previous driving.



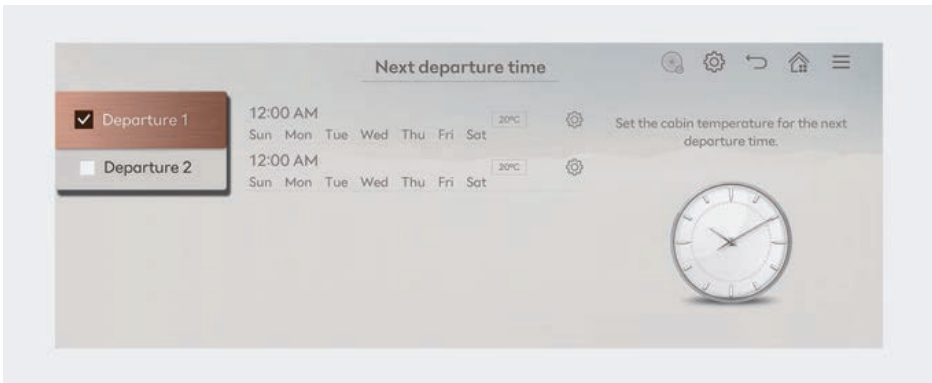
## Setting the next departure time

You can set an anticipated departure time for scheduled charging and target temperature.

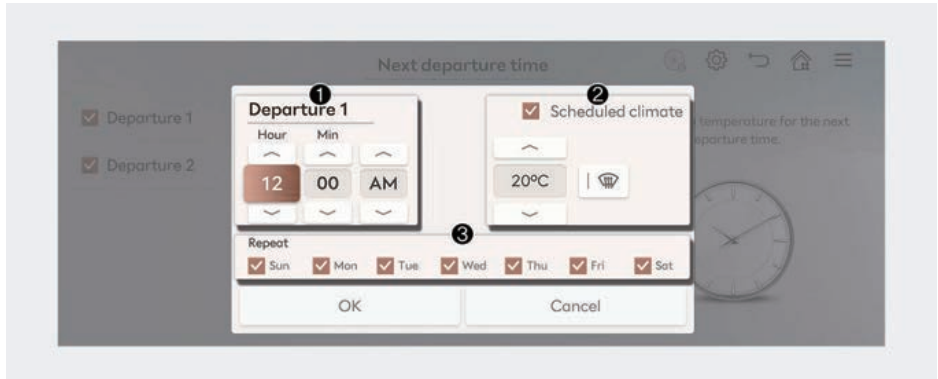
### *i* Information

- Scheduled climate is activated based on the departure time.
- The scheduled climate function directly uses the power of the connected charger or the 12 V battery that is being recharged. It can maintain a pleasant environment and enhance vehicle performance by controlling the temperature of the vehicle.

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** > **Next departure time**.
3. Set the anticipated departure schedule.



4. Set anticipated departure time (1) and temperature (2) the vehicle departure after charging.
5. At repeat option (3), select the day of the week to activate target temperature for the departure time.

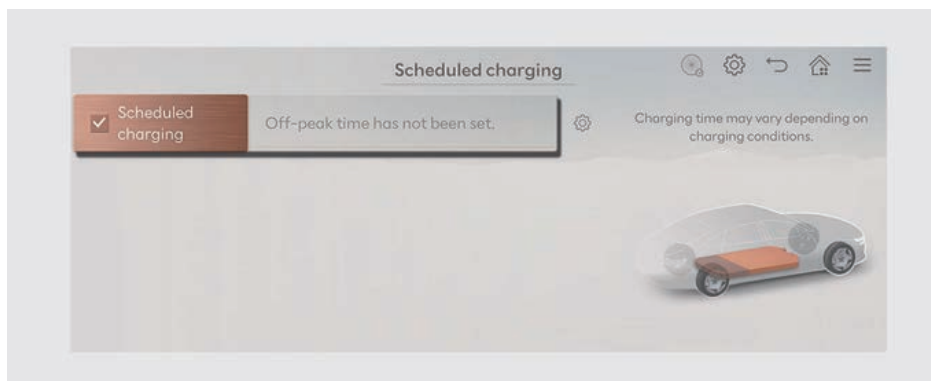


6. Scheduled charging and climate is activated based on the departure time.  
The scheduled climate operates 20 minutes before and 10 minutes after the departure.  
(1) Departure: Enter the time of departure.  
(2) Target temperature settings: Enter the desired temperature.  
(3) Repeat: Designate the date you want to repeat.  
In cold weather, pre-scheduled heating helps enhance electric vehicle performance by heating the vehicle in advance.

## Setting the options for the AC charger

You can set the options for the AC charger including scheduled charging and charging current.

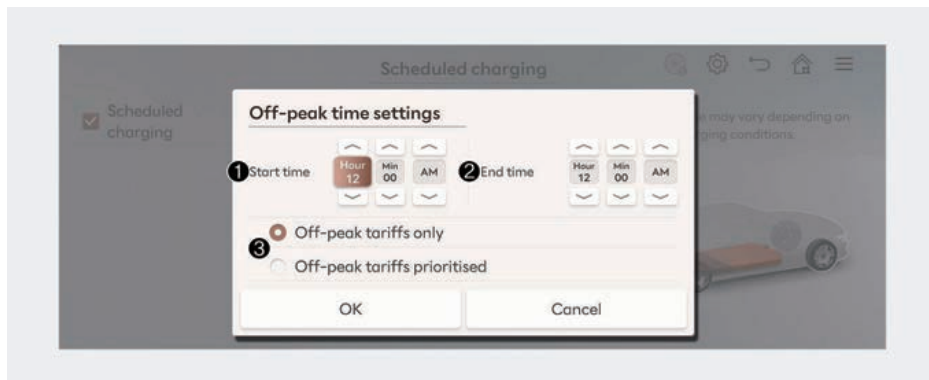
1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** > **Scheduled charging**.



3. Set the required functions.

## Setting scheduled charging

Select **Scheduled charging** to turn on the function.



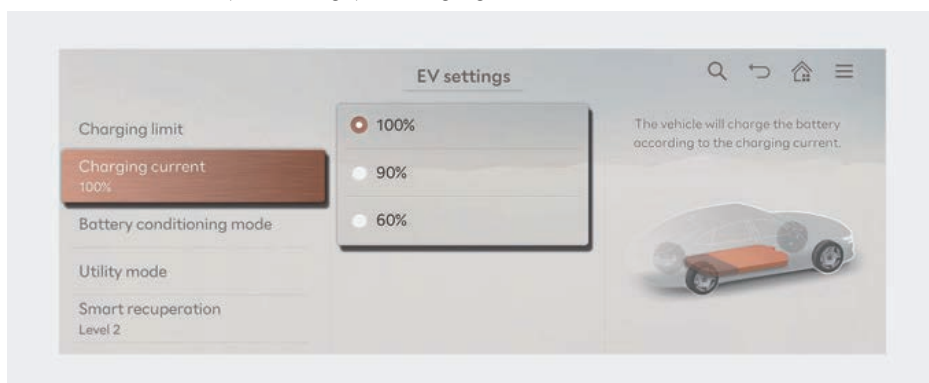
- **Start time (1):** If selected, starts charging only on the designated off-peak time.
- **End time (2):** If selected, sets the most inexpensive time to complete charging.
- Scheduled charging option (3):
  - **Off-peak tariffs only:** Charging is activated during the off-peak time. It may keep on charging pass off-peak time to reach the target battery charge level.
  - **Off-peak tariffs prioritise:** Charging is activated only during the off-peak time. It may not be able to reach the target battery charge level.

For more information about setting the target battery charge level, refer to the "Setting the target battery charge level" section in this chapter.

## Setting the charging current

Set the charging current when using an AC charger. Select:

**Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Charging current**



## Setting the target battery charge level

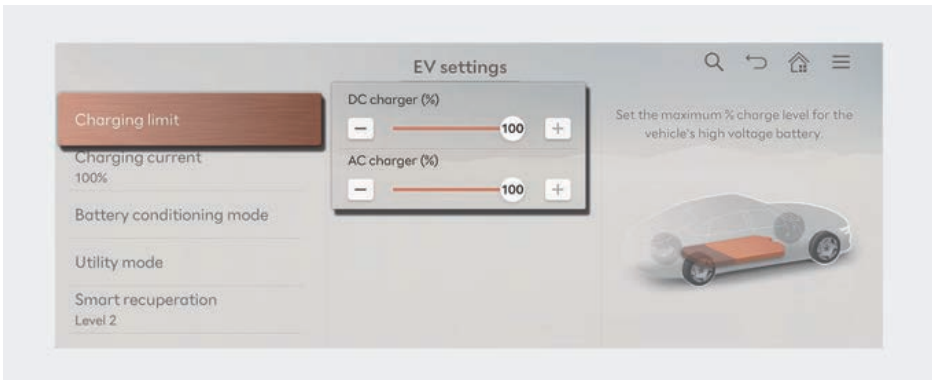
You can set the target battery charge level when charged with an AC charger or a DC charger.

- You can check the status of high voltage battery, estimated distance to empty, and the time required for charging the target battery level.

### *i* Information

- The distance to empty is estimated based on the energy economy and temperatures. It may vary according to your driving style.
- The distance to empty may vary even with the same target level according to changes of your driving style.

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Charging limit**.



3. Set each of the target battery charge level for AC charger and DC charger.
  - The charging level can be changed by 10 %.
  - If the target battery charge level is lower than the current high voltage battery charge level, the battery is not charged.

## Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L)

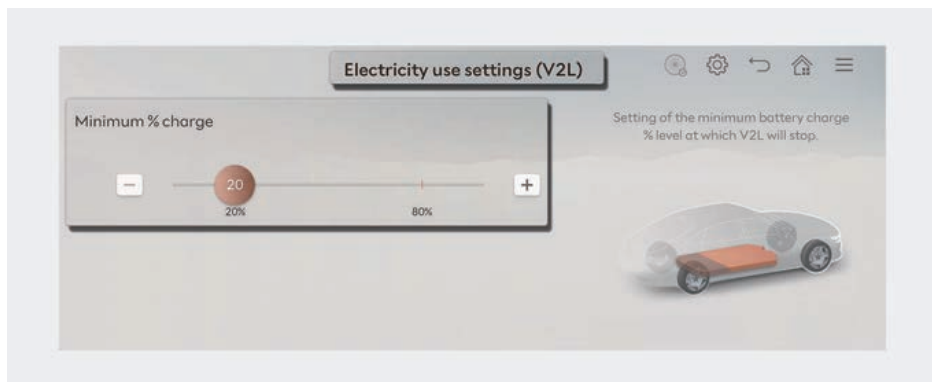
Setting battery discharging limit (%) can prevent the battery from discharging when operating home appliances or electronic devices using the high voltage battery.

- For more information about V2L function, refer to the "Using V2L function" section in this chapter.

### *i* Information

V2L is the system provides AC power using the high voltage battery for driving to operate several electronic devices. You can operate home appliances and electronic devices, or charge another electric vehicle in emergency using the charged electricity from the vehicle's battery whilst camping or doing other outdoor activities.

- On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
- On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle > EV charge transfer**.



- Set the desired battery discharging limit (%).
  - The battery discharging limit can only be set below the current battery charge.
  - When the battery charge reaches the set battery discharging limit, V2L function cuts off automatically.

## Setting electric vehicle specialized functions

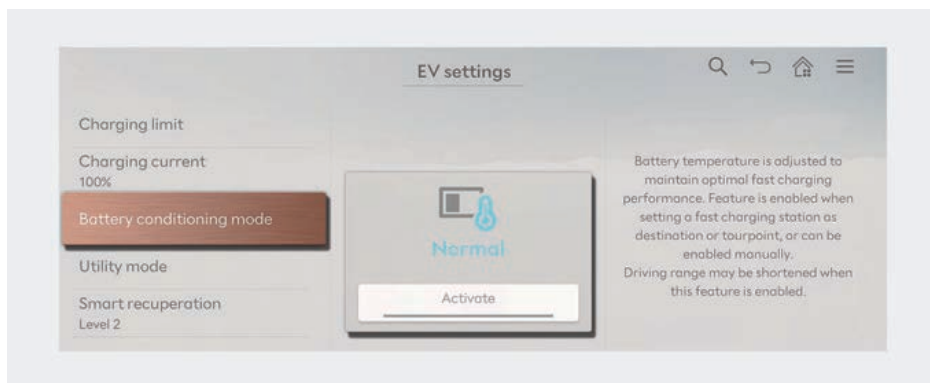
You can set various EV specialized functions such as battery conditioning mode and utility mode.

### Using Battery Conditioning

The Battery Conditioning mode is a function to improve DC charging performance during the winter and summer when the high voltage battery temperature is low and high. You can manually operate the Battery Conditioning function or automatically operate the function by setting a DC charging station as a destination or a waypoint.

#### Manual operation

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ **(EV settings)** > **Battery conditioning mode** and select **Activate** to use manually.



#### Linked to navigation route

Linked to navigation route If you set a DC charging station as a destination or waypoint on your navigation, the Battery Conditioning function maintains the battery temperature ideal for DC charging whilst considering the arrival time.

### *i* Information

- Battery Conditioning function operates only in a vehicle equipped with a battery heater.
- Battery Conditioning function does not operate to ensure driving distance when the battery charge level is low. The function also does not operate if the temperature of the battery is ideal for driving and charging.
- The charged power used to raise the temperature of a battery may shorten the driving distance. Reaching the optimal temperature of a battery requires time.

- When you are a member of Genesis Connected Service, you can control the battery Conditioning function remotely whilst parking from the Genesis Connected Service app. For more information on Genesis Connected Service, refer to the separately supplied manual.

### Setting Utility mode

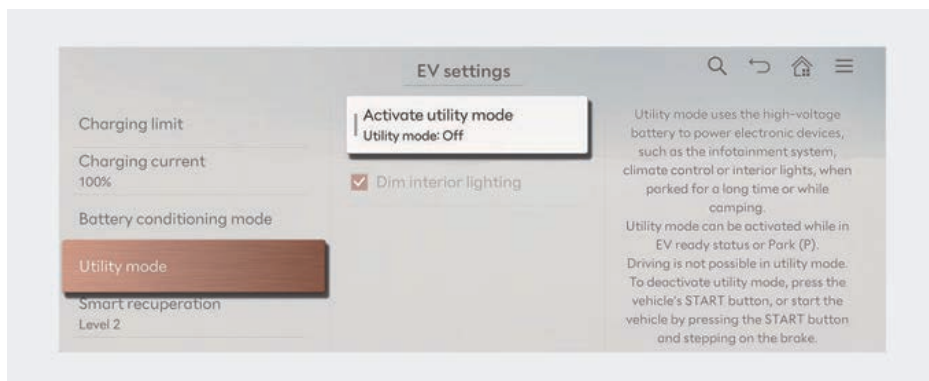
Utility mode allows the high voltage battery to be used instead of the 12 V battery for purposes other than driving. You can use the audio and lights of the vehicle without worrying about discharging the battery and even use the indoor V2L feature.

#### *i* Information

- You cannot drive the vehicle whilst the utility mode is activated, and the gear can only be shifted to P (Park).
- You can use every electric device in the vehicle whilst the utility mode is activated.
- When the utility mode is activated, the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is applied automatically and you can release EPB by pressing the EPB switch if necessary.

Follow the instructions below to set the utility mode.

1. Check the operation conditions of the utility mode.
  - Check if the Start/Start button is in POWER ON position.
  - Check if the READY indicator is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - Check if the gear is shifted to P (Park).
2. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
3. Select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ **(EV settings)** > **Utility mode**, and then select **Activate utility mode** to activate the function (Utility mode: ON).



- The UTIL indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster and the EPB is applied.
- Press the Start/Stop button whilst not depressing the brake pedal to turn off the vehicle.
- Press the Start/Stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal to turn on DRIVE READY.

- Select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (**EV settings**) > **Utility mode** in the infotainment system. Then, press '**Activate utility mode**' to turn off the function. Utility Mode will be dismissed once you press '**Yes**' after a message noticing the Utility Mode has been cancelled is displayed. Then it will set to be OFF.
- If you want to utilize the V2L feature in the vehicle whilst the utility mode is activated, refer to the "Using V2L function" in this chapter.

### *i* Information

If the utility mode is not activated when the gear is shifted to P (Park), inspect the operation status of EPB.

---

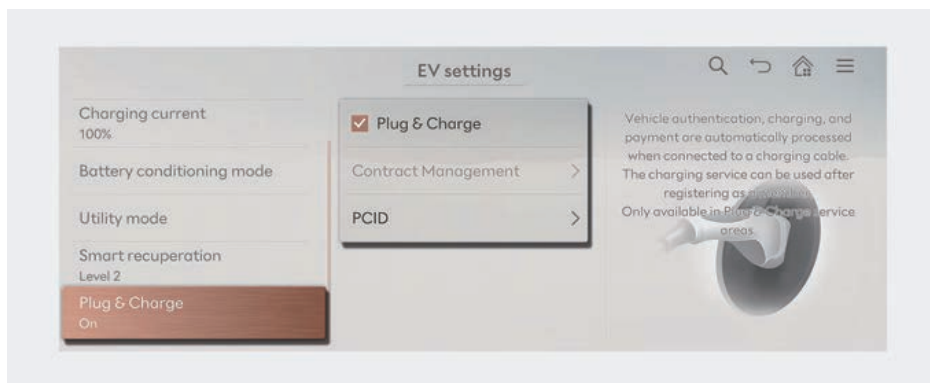
### *Using Plug & Charge*

When charging with a DC charger, you can use the Plug & Charge function to charge your electric vehicle quickly and easily.

#### Setting the Plug & Charge

Follow the instructions below to charge your electric vehicle setting the Plug & Charge.

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (**EV settings**) > **Plug & Charge**, and then select **Plug & Charge** to turn on the function.



### *i* Information

If you do not have a Plug & Charge contract, turn off the Plug & Charge. If the function is turned on, problems with the charging process may occur.

---

### Renewing the Plug & Charge

If the Plug & Charge does not proceed or fails during the process, check the expiration and renewal status of the contract certificate.

- The Plug & Charge does not proceed if the certificate has expired.
- Turn off the Plug & Charge function and use an external payment method until you check the certificate status.
- If the Plug & Charge fails more than 2 times, the payment method is forcibly switched to an external payment method from the third attempt.

### *i* Information

To reset and enable Plug & Charge again after the payment method is forcibly switched to an external payment method, follow one of the instructions below:


- Charge once using an external payment method. Plug & Charge is available from the next charge.
- Disconnect the charging plug, close the charging door, and wait at least 1 minute with the vehicle on.
- Use another charger that is Plug & Charge enabled.

If the contract certificate for the Plug & Charge has expired or withdrawn, follow the instructions below:

1. Make a new contract to issue or renew the certificate.
2. Connect the charging plug and try Plug & Charge once.
  - The charger displays the expiration and withdrawal status of the certificate and the charging is failed.
3. Disconnect and reconnect the charging plug and retry charging.
  - The newly contracted certificate is installed and charging proceeds normally.

### Managing the Plug & Charge contract

If a new agreement certificate is installed, the **Manage Agreements** option becomes available. To see its details or manage it, follow the instructions below:

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** >  **(EV settings)** > **Plug & Charge**, and then select **Manage agreements**.
3. Check the contractor information and expiration date (year/month) displayed on the screen.
  - You can delete the certificate by pressing **Delete** if necessary.


### Searching for nearby charging stations

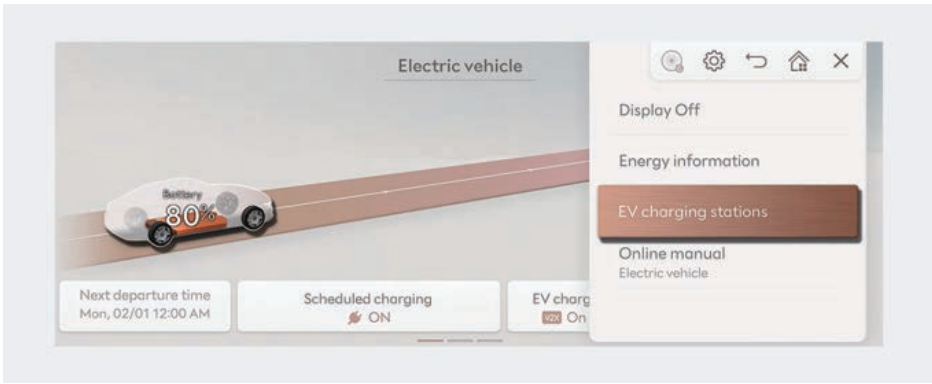
Around the course, around the current site, around the selected destination or charging stations of interest is searched. If you choose the charging station, the detailed information is provided.

## *i* Information

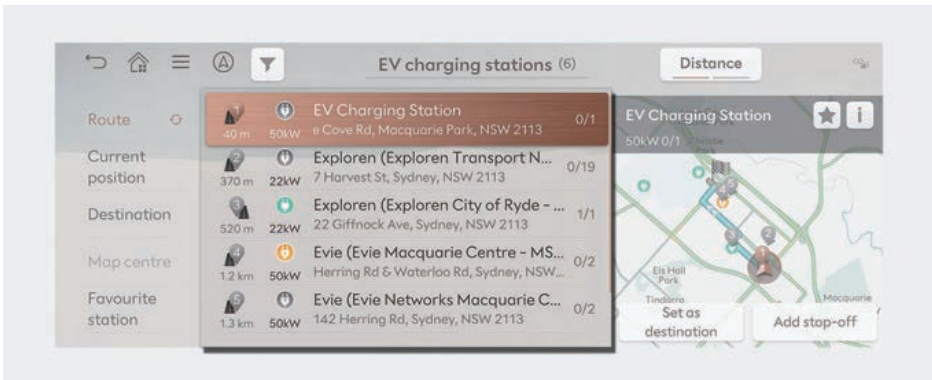
When you sign up for Genesis Connected Service, the available chargers at each charging station is displayed.

Follow the instructions below to search for nearby charging stations:

1. On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
2. On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** >  > **EV charging stations**.



- You can choose among "**Route**", "**Current position**", "**Destination**", and "**Favorite station**".
- The direction and distance, charger type, address, and location on the map of the charging stations corresponding to the selected option are displayed on the right side of the screen.



3. Select the charging station on the list and check the detailed information.

## Using V2L function

With the Vehicle to Load (V2L) feature, you can turn on electronic devices by connecting them to the high voltage battery.

### Safety precautions when using the V2L function

Before using V2L function, carefully read all the safety information below and follow precisely. Failure to do so may cause electric shock or fire and result in a serious injury, death, malfunction in your vehicle or property damage.

#### *Precautions when using the V2L function*

##### **WARNING**

- Do not use the V2L function if the V2L connector, charging inlet, power plug, or cable is damaged, corroded, or rusted.
- Do not touch the V2L connector, charging inlet, or power plug with wet hands.
- Do not use the V2L function if the connection part of the V2L connector and the charging inlet is loose.
- Check if there is no water, dust, or other contaminants before connecting the connector and the plug. They may cause electric shock or fire.
- Do not put metal objects or bare hands to the V2L connector or charging inlet.
- For electric devices used outdoors in a vehicle, use a product with a waterproof function or use it in a waterproof environment. If rain or humidity intrude into electric devices, multi-outlets, extension cords, etc., it may cause electric shock or damage to the vehicle or the devices.
- If there is a risk of lightning, do not use the V2L function outside the vehicle.
- Do not use an electric heating appliances like electric kettle, toaster, or iron in the vehicle. Doing so may result in a fire and injury.

#### *Precautions for operating the cooling fan*

##### **WARNING**



When using the V2L, the cooling fan in the vehicle motor compartment can operate automatically even if the vehicle is turned off. Do not put your hand near the cooling fan in the V2L operating state.

### ***Precautions for handling and using the V2L connector***

#### **CAUTION**

- Do not remodel or disassemble the V2L connector. It may cause fire, electric shock, or injury. Damage to your vehicle caused by remodeling and disassembling is not covered by warranty.
- When the power plug is connected or disconnected to the V2L connector or open or close the connector cover of the V2L, be careful not to be scratched on the hand or other parts of the body.
- Be sure to disconnect the V2L connector from the vehicle when you are finished using V2L.
- Do not charge the vehicle using the V2L connector. If you charge the vehicle arbitrarily by remodeling the power cable of the connector, etc., it may damage the vehicle.
- Do not place objects on the V2L connector. It may damage the cable and cause electric shock or fire.
- Do not drop the V2L connector or give a strong impact to it. Keep it clean in a dry place without water or humidity.

### ***Precautions when using electric/electronic products***

#### **CAUTION**

- Before using the product, check the precautions and how to use the product referring to the product manual.
- Only use products that have obtained national safety certification.
- Only use an electric device that does not exceed the maximum power capacity that the vehicle can supply. However, some of the electric devices may not operate normally even if the product has power consumption less than the maximum power capacity provided by the vehicle.
  - Electric devices that require high power during initial operation.
  - Measuring devices that need to process accurate data.
  - Electric devices that are sensitive to inverter type AC charger.
- Do not use products that require a continuous power supply, such as medical equipment. The power supply may be interrupted depending on the vehicle's condition.
- The V2L discharging mode is blocked automatically in case of overheating. When the discharging mode is blocked, check whether the V2L connector or power plug is contaminated, worn, corroded or broken.
  - If the temperature falls to a proper level after it is left unattended, you can use it again.
  - If overheating repeats when using a certain electric device, do not use the electric device.
- Do not connect more than two extension cords or multi-outlet. Also, when using the extension cable, ensure using the cable without twist. Heat from the overlapped cable may cause fire.

- Do not hang the home appliances onto the wire.
  - Do not use if the sheath of home appliance cables is damaged or broken.
  - Put the power plug fully when connecting to the power.
  - Only use the qualified plug with ground connection that meets the standard. Do not use worn, corroded, or broken plug or improper plug that does not meet the standard.
- 

## Using electricity outside the vehicle

Before using V2L function, carefully read all the safety information and precautions on "Safety precautions when using the V2L function" and follow the instructions.

Follow the instructions below to connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet on the vehicle and supply power to an electronic product.

1. Open the cover of the V2L connector.
2. Close the cover after connecting the plug of an electronic product to the power outlet of the connector.



### **WARNING**

Some types of plugs may not fit into the outlet cover of the V2L connector, causing incomplete closing of the cover. Do not use the V2L connector on a rainy or snowy day if the outlet cover is not completely closed. There is a risk of fire and/or injury.

---

3. Open the connection terminal protection cap of the connector with the open switch pressed.
4. Open the charging door and connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet on the vehicle.
  - Connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet within 60 seconds after opening the charging door.
  - Time remaining until the battery level reaches the set value, and the distance to empty at the set value appears on the instrument cluster or the infotainment system.
5. Press the power switch of the V2L connector.
  - The power is supplied and the indicator on the V2L connector is turned on.

## **i** Information

- When the V2L connector is connected to the charging inlet of the vehicle, all doors and connectors will be automatically locked to prevent theft and separation. To disconnect the V2L connector, unlock the door and pull the connector with the open switch pressed.
- Before using the V2L function, deactivate the scheduled climate setting referring to the "Setting the next departure time". The V2L function may be cut off depending on the scheduled climate setting.
- To check and change the V2L setting, refer to the "Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L)" section in this chapter.
- If an electric device that exceeds the maximum power capacity is connected, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster and the power supply shuts off immediately.

## **Solving V2L problems**

If a problem occurs whilst using the V2L function, the V2L stops and a related messages appears on the instrument cluster.

Check the cause of the message and take an appropriate measure referring to the table below.

Message	Cause	Measure
V2L finished. Defined charge level reached	The high voltage battery level reaches the discharging limit set level.	To use the V2L continuously, make the discharging limit set level lower than the present battery level. (Refer to the "Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L)" section in this chapter.)
Energy consumption too high. V2L cancelled	An electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power output the vehicle can supply is connected.	Check the total power consumption of the electrical appliance and replace it a product within the V2L maximum power output.
V2L conditions not met	V2L is stopped for the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• V2L connector switch off</li> <li>• V2L connector overheating</li> <li>• Opening the charging door whilst using the V2L indoor outlet</li> </ul>	Make sure there are no problems with the V2L connector and the vehicle indoor outlet.

## Aux. Battery Saver+

### WARNING

When the function is activating the high voltage electricity flows into the vehicle. Follow the instruction below to prevent electrical shock or injuries.

- Do not touch the high voltage electric wire (orange), connector, and all electric components and devices.
- Do not modify or disconnect any electronic devices in your vehicle.

The Aux. Battery Saver+ is a function that specialized in battery protection, prevents the failure due to fully discharge of the 12 V battery.

If the user drives or charges the vehicle, the Aux. Battery Saver+ is automatically activated to check the 12 V battery charging state. If necessary, the high voltage battery charges the 12 V battery.

### CAUTION

The Aux. Battery Saver+ function cannot prevent the 12 V battery discharging in the following situations:

- The 12 V battery is damaged or worn out.
- The 12 V battery is used as a power supply or unauthorised electronic devices are used.

### Information

- If the Aux. Battery Saver+ function was activated, the high voltage battery level may have decreased.
- Depending on the condition of the vehicle or high voltage battery, the Aux. Battery Saver+ function may not operate normally or stopped.

## Driving your electric vehicle

Check how to use the devices inside the vehicle that you must know for driving, such as starting, braking, and shifting the electric vehicle.

### Starting and stopping the vehicle

Follow the instructions below to start or stop the vehicle.

#### CAUTION

- Always fasten the seat belt before starting the vehicle for safety.
  - Check if the EPB is applied before starting the vehicle.
- 

#### *Starting the vehicle*

1. Holding the smart key, sit in the driver's seat.
2. Press the Start/Stop button whilst pressing the brake pedal.
  - On the instrument cluster, **READY** indicator is displayed.

#### *i* Information

Whilst the **READY** indicator is displayed, press the brake pedal, shift to D (Drive) or R (Reverse), and release the EPB and the brake pedal to start moving the vehicle forward or backward. You can start driving by pressing the accelerator pedal slowly and decelerate or stop by pressing the brake pedal.

---

#### *Stopping the vehicle*

1. Stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal.
2. Apply the EPB whilst pressing the brake pedal, and press the reduction gear's **P** button to shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Start/Stop button.
  - The **READY** indicator on the instrument cluster turns off.

#### *i* Information

There are other Start/Stop button positions besides the **DRIVE READY/OFF**. Use it appropriately.

- **POWER ON:** The vehicle power is turned on, allowing to check the instrument cluster and use all the electric devices inside the vehicle. Press the Start/Stop button when it is in the **OFF** position to turn on **POWER ON**.
-

### ***Understanding virtual engine sound system***

Electric vehicles do not use an internal combustion engine, so there is no engine noise whilst driving. The Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS) generates engine sound to make pedestrians aware of the approaching vehicle when driving.

- If the vehicle is in the ready mode (READY indicator ON) and the gear is not in P (Park), the VESS is operated.
- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), an additional warning sound is heard.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- Be aware that the vehicle does not make engine noise whilst driving.
- Pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive carefully.
- After parking or waiting for a traffic light, please check around for children, or other obstacles before departure.
- When reversing, check directly behind you before driving. Pedestrians may not be able to recognise vehicle sounds.

## **Checking electric vehicle driving information**

During vehicle operation, the instrument cluster displays the main information, such as distance to empty, real-time energy status, battery charge level, and warning messages, via the user interface and indicators.

### ***Factors affecting the distance to empty***

The distance to empty refers to the distance that can be driven by the current charged battery level and is displayed on the bottom of the instrument cluster whilst driving the electric vehicle.



The distance to empty varies depending on many factors such as driving habits, power usage, driving conditions, and high voltage battery. The distance to empty may be increased or decreased than the certified figures as it reflects all the factors comprehensively. Check the distance to empty considering the following:

- The driving habits: The driving speed and tendency of accelerating and decelerating. High-speed driving or frequent accelerating and decelerating reduces the distance to empty.

- The power usage: Additional power use, such as the air conditioner, heater, lamps, etc. As the power usage increases, the distance to empty reduces.
- The driving conditions: The weather, temperature, and terrain. If you drive in snow/rain/strong wind or low temperature, the distance to empty will be reduced. The distance to empty will also be reduced when driving uphill or on slippery or rough roads.
- The electric energy: Proportional to the State of Charge (SOC), but may vary depending on the battery temperature and the State of Health (SOH) of a battery.

### ***Change in the distance to empty when 100 % charged***

In case the distance to empty has been reduced due to learning of the driving habit or the driving conditions, you can increase the distance to empty again by continuously driving following the "Tips for enhancing the distance to empty".

- Resetting the previously learned driving patterns at the service centre may increase the distance to empty displayed on the bottom of the instrument cluster, but it does not increase the actual distance to empty. The distance to empty may not be accurate until the learning proceeds.
- If the high voltage battery temperature is low in winter, the distance to empty reduces but it is not a permanent change. The distance to empty may increase again once the temperature rises.
- If you reduce the power usage, the distance to empty may increase.
- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.

### ***When setting a destination***

When the destination is set, the distance to empty may change because the distance to empty is recalculated using the information of the destination instead of the learned electric energy economy history.

## ***i* Information**

The distance to empty may vary significantly based on traffic conditions or driving speed.

---

### ***Tips for enhancing the distance to empty***

The distance to empty vary depending on the charge level of the high voltage battery, weather, temperature, duration of the battery use, terrain, driving habits, etc.

You can increase the distance to empty by driving the vehicle following the instructions below.

- The air resistance increases rapidly as the electric vehicle drives faster, so avoid speeding to increase the distance to empty and the electric energy economy.
- Rapid acceleration consumes a lot of driving energy and rapid deceleration limits the regenerative braking. Gradually depress and release the accelerator pedal when accelerating or decelerating to maintain speed.
- If you operate the air conditioner or heater too much, the high voltage battery uses excessive electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty. Therefore, set the cabin temperature to 22 °C (71.6 °F) AUTO level 2. Especially in winter, reducing heating and using heated seats instead can significantly increase the distance to empty. Turn off the air conditioner or heater if you do not need them.
- When using the air conditioner or heater, the energy consumption is reduced if recirculation mode is selected instead of fresh mode. Fresh mode requires a large amount of energy consumption as the outside air has to be reheated or cooled.
- Close the windows whilst driving. Driving with the windows open increases air resistance and the usage of the air conditioner or heater.
- When using the air conditioner or heater whilst driving alone, use the DRIVER ONLY function.
- Always maintain specified tyre pressures and use tyres for electric vehicles.
- Do not use unnecessary electrical components whilst driving.
- Do not load unnecessary items in the vehicle.
- Do not mount parts that may increase air resistance.

### ***When the distance to empty is insufficient***

- When the battery warning indicator is displayed, immediately charge the vehicle at a nearby charging station.
- Drive energy efficiently following the "Tips for enhancing the distance to empty".
- When the battery level is 0 %, do not try to drive. Move to a safe place and call for help.

### ***Checking the real-time energy status (Charge/Power gauge)***

The Charge/Power gauge displays the charging and discharging status of the electric energy produced by the regenerative braking and the energy consumption of the electric motor.

Type A/Type B



- **CHARGE:** It shows the charging status of the battery, which is charged by the regenerative brakes, when depressing the brake pedal or decreasing the vehicle speed due to coasting. The more electric energy is charged, the more the gauge level turns counterclockwise.
- **POWER:** It shows the discharging status of the motor when the vehicle is accelerating. The more electric energy is discharged (used), the more the gauge level turns clockwise.

### ***Checking the State of Charge (SOC)***

The SOC indicator shows the charge level of the high voltage battery as a percentage. The lower the number, the more the vehicle needs to be charged, and 100 % indicates a full charge.



- When the remaining battery of the high voltage battery is lower than 20 %, the warning light is displayed.
- When the warning light is displayed, charge the vehicle.

## *i* Information

- To find a nearby charging station, refer to the "Searching for nearby charging stations" section in this chapter.
- Check if the SOC is enough before driving on highways or motorways.
- After the warning light is displayed, immediately charge the vehicle at a nearby charging station. The vehicle may not operate properly depending on the driving speed, weather, and other driving conditions.

### **Checking the warning and indicator lights**


The warning and indicator lights are displayed in the middle of the instrument cluster before or whilst driving, depending on the status of the electric vehicle. Understand the meaning of the warning and indicator lights referring to the instructions below and drive safely.




### CAUTION

If the warning light illuminates whilst driving or does not go off, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **Checking the warning lights**


Check the cause of the warning lights referring to the table below and take appropriate measures.


Warning light	Cause	Measure
<b>Service warning light</b>  	This warning light illuminates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.</li> <li>• When an actuator, electric compressor for air conditioning, etc. malfunctions.</li> </ul>	In a normal condition, it illuminates for about 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position and then goes off. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the warning light illuminates whilst driving, or does not go off after starting the vehicle, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> </ul>

Warning light	Cause	Measure
<b>Power down indicator light</b> 	<p>This indicator light illuminates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing. (Output limit occurs when the charge level is insufficient.)</li> <li>When the temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low.</li> <li>When the driving system temperature is overheated and requires protection.</li> </ul>	<p>If it illuminates alone, it is not failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If both power down indicator light and service warning light illuminate at the same time, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> <li>When the indicator is illuminating, immediately charge the vehicle. The driving speed may be limited and the vehicle may not properly drive uphill.</li> </ul>
<b>High voltage battery level warning light</b> 	<p>This warning light illuminates when the high voltage battery level is low.</p>	<p>Immediately charge the vehicle. The vehicle can drive an additional 13-26 miles (25-50 km).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The actual distance to empty depends on the driving conditions.</li> </ul>
<b>Regenerative brake warning light</b> 	<p>This warning light illuminates when the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well due to the malfunction of the brake system.</p>	<p>We recommend that your vehicle be inspected and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The operation of the brake pedal may feel deeper than normal or the braking distance may increase.</li> </ul>

### Checking the indicator lights


Check the meaning of the indicator lights referring to the table below and take appropriate measures if necessary.



Indicator light	Meaning
<b>Charging indicator light</b> 	<p>Indicates the charging connector is connected to the high voltage battery.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the charging connector is connected, it turns green.</li> </ul>

Indicator light	Meaning
<b>Ready indicator</b>  	<p>Illuminates when the electric vehicle is ready to be driven, and indicates that the vehicle is operable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the vehicle malfunctions, the indicator goes off or blinks.</li> <li>If the indicator is turned off or blinks, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> </ul>

### Checking warning messages

Check the meaning of the warning messages referring to the table below and take appropriate measures.

 <b>WARNING</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not drive with a warning message displayed.</li> <li>If a warning message does not go off after taking measures, we recommend that you have the vehicle immediately inspected and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> </ul>

Warning message	Cause	Measure
<b>Low EV battery</b>	<p>The high voltage battery level reaches below 20 %.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The  warning light on the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.</li> </ul>	Charge the vehicle immediately.
<b>Charge immediately. Power limited</b>	<p>The high voltage battery level reaches below 10 %.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The  warning light on the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.</li> <li>The vehicle's power may be reduced to minimise the energy consumption of the high voltage battery.</li> </ul>	Charge the battery immediately.
<b>Check electric vehicle system</b>	There is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not drive when the warning message is displayed.</li> <li>We recommend that you immediately tow the vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products and have it inspected and repaired.</li> </ul>

Warning message	Cause	Measure
<b>Power limited</b>	<p>This warning message is displayed when the power of the vehicle is limited to ensure the safety of high-powered components for the reasons below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing.</li> <li>• The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low.</li> <li>• When the driving system is overheated and requires protection.</li> </ul>	<p>If it illuminates alone, it did not fail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Charge the vehicle if the charge level is low.</li> <li>• If both power down indicator light and service warning light illuminate at the same time, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> <li>• Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the warning message is displayed.</li> <li>• Be careful when the power down indicator is displayed. The vehicle may not properly drive uphill and roll back on a slope.</li> </ul>
<b>Power limited. Low battery temperature</b>	<p>If you start or turn off the vehicle when the outside temperature is low, warning message is displayed to protect electric vehicle system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the high voltage battery charge level is low and parked outside for a long time, vehicle power could be limited due to the low battery temperature.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.</li> <li>• If this warning message is still displayed even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> </ul>
<b>Battery overheated! Stop safely</b>	<p>The high voltage battery temperature is too high.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the Start/Stop button and wait until the battery temperature decreases.</li> <li>• If these warning messages are still displayed even after turning off the vehicle and waiting for a sufficient time, we recommend that you immediately tow the vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection and repair.</li> </ul>

Warning message	Cause	Measure
<b>Stop safely and check power supply</b>	A failure occurs in the power supply system.	Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. We recommend that you tow the vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection and maintenance.
<b>Unplug vehicle to start</b>	You started the vehicle with the charging connector plugged in.	Unplug the charging cable and start the vehicle.
<b>Charging door open</b>	You started the vehicle with the charging door opened.	Check if the charging door is completely closed after charging the vehicle.
<b>Charging stopped. Please check the AC(DC) charger</b>	<p>These warning messages are displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger.</li> <li>• The external AC charger stopped the charging.</li> <li>• The charging cable is damaged.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable.</li> <li>• Charge the vehicle with an AC charger that has been approved for proper operation or a genuine Genesis portable charger.</li> <li>• If the same problem occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> </ul>
<b>Charging Stopped. Please check the cable connection.</b>	<p>These warning message is displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet.</li> <li>• The unlock button on the charging connector is pressed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Separate the charging connector from the vehicle and reconnect it.</li> <li>• Check whether there is any problem, such as external damage, foreign substances, etc., with the charging connector and charging inlet.</li> <li>• Charge the vehicle with a charger that has been approved for proper operation or a genuine Genesis portable charger.</li> <li>• If the same problem occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.</li> </ul>

## Countermeasures for accidents or fire

When an accident occurs whilst driving the electric vehicle, turn on the hazard warning flasher, move the vehicle to a safe place, and do not let other people approach the site.

### **WARNING**

When an accident occurs, and the high voltage battery is damaged, harmful gas and electrolytes may leak.

- Be careful not to touch the leaked liquid.
  - When you suspect leakage of inflammable gas and other harmful gases, open the windows and immediately evacuate to a safe location.
  - If any leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes or skin, immediately clean the affected area thoroughly with tap water or saline solution and have doctors inspect it as soon as possible.
- 

## If the electric vehicle catches fire

If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and do not let other people approach the site.

- Contact the fire department, report an electric vehicle fire, and then follow its instructions.

### **CAUTION**

- If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and wait until the firefighters arrive.
  - If the lower part of the vehicle where the high voltage battery is located catches fire, large amount of water must be supplied continuously for a long time to completely extinguish the fire. It is hard to extinguish the fire without sufficient water and appropriate fire extinguishers. If you approach the vehicle carelessly, it may cause accidents, such as electric shock, and result in serious injury.
- 

## If the electric vehicle is submerged

If the electric vehicle is submerged whilst driving, follow the instructions below:

- Immediately turn off the vehicle and evacuate to a safe place with your key.
- Contact the emergency rescue service such as a fire department, or an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **WARNING**

Never touch the submerged electric vehicle. This may lead to an accident such as an electric shock or fire.

---

## If the electric vehicle needs towing

If towing is required, lift all wheels to tow. Towing with the wheels on the ground may damage the vehicle's motor components.

### CAUTION

Contact the fire department when towing the vehicle after a fire. When a vehicle fire occurs due to the battery, there is a risk of a second fire.



## Other precautions for electric vehicle accidents

### CAUTION

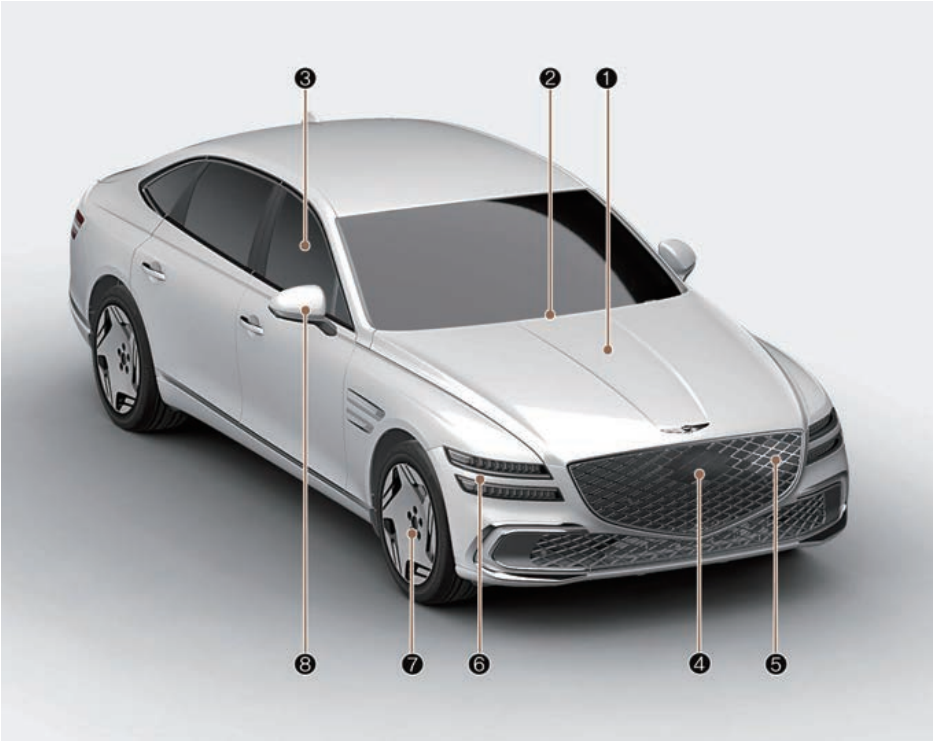
- Be extremely cautious for electricity safety. An electric shock accident may occur due to a short circuit in high voltage power.
- When you paint or apply heat treatment to the vehicle as a result of an accident, the performance of the high voltage battery can be reduced. If heat treatment is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Use or install only genuine parts. Third-party parts or modified parts may damage the electric power system.



## 2. Vehicle information

Exterior overview (Front view).....	2-2
Exterior overview (Rear view).....	2-3
Interior overview.....	2-4
Centre console overview .....	2-5
Steering wheel control overview.....	2-7
Motor compartment overview .....	2-8
Dimensions .....	2-9
Electric vehicle specifications .....	2-9
Bulb wattage.....	2-10
Tyres and wheels .....	2-11
Load and speed capacity tyres (for Europe).....	2-12
Air conditioning system .....	2-12
Vehicle weight and luggage volume.....	2-12
Recommended lubricants and capacities .....	2-13
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).....	2-14
Vehicle certification label .....	2-14
Tyre specification and pressure label .....	2-14
Motor number.....	2-15
Air conditioner compressor label .....	2-15
Refrigerant label .....	2-15
Declaration of conformity.....	2-16
Importer Information (for Europe) .....	2-16
Importer Information For United Kingdom .....	2-16
Open Source Software Notice .....	2-16

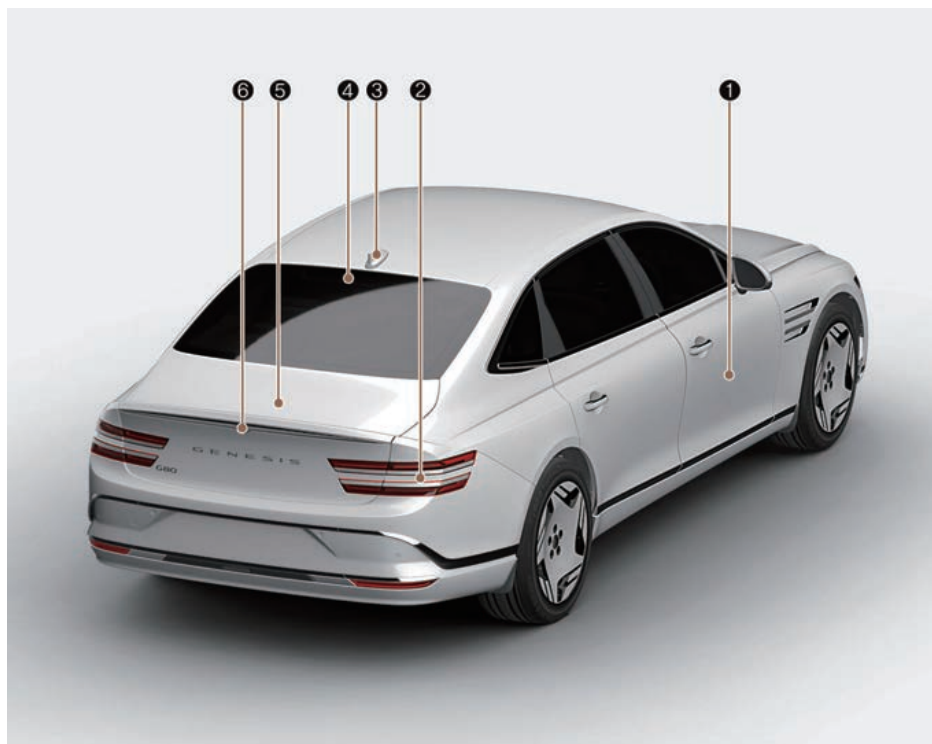
## Exterior overview (Front view)



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

(1) Bonnet .....	5-51
(2) Front windscreen wiper blades .....	5-81, 9-17
(3) Windows .....	5-48
(4) Front radar .....	7-5
(5) Electric charging door .....	5-61
(6) Headlight .....	5-67, 9-49
(7) Tyres and wheels .....	9-22
(8) Outside rearview mirror .....	5-45

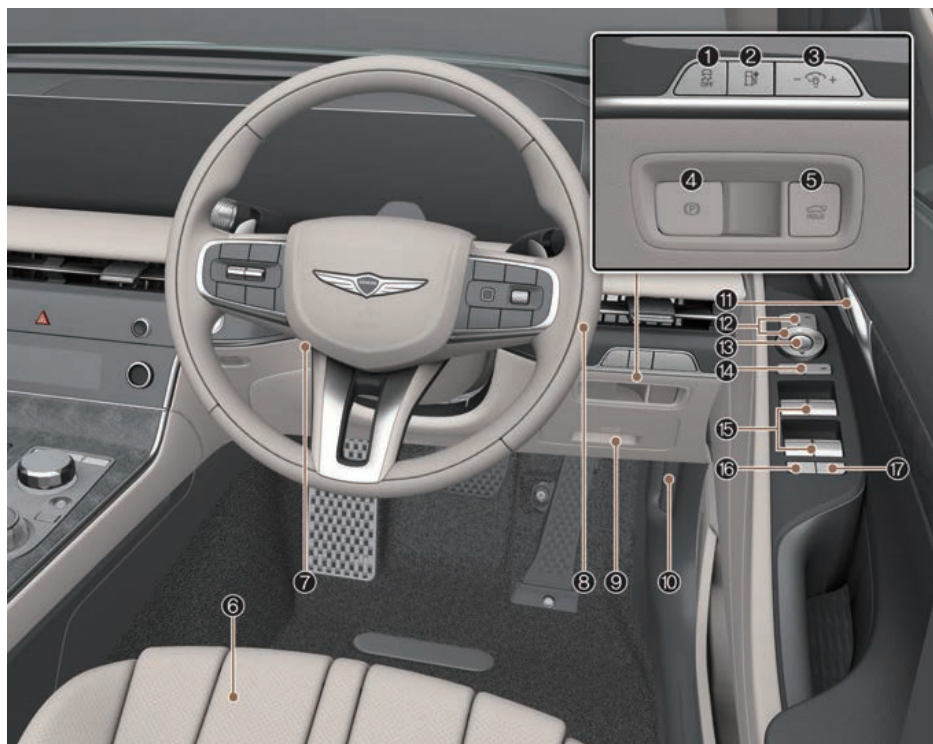
## Exterior overview (Rear view)



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

(1) Door.....	5-25
(2) Rear combination light.....	9-52
(3) Antenna .....	5-116
(4) High mounted stop light.....	9-53
(5) Boot .....	5-52, 5-54, 5-59
(6) Wide-rear view camera.....	7-4

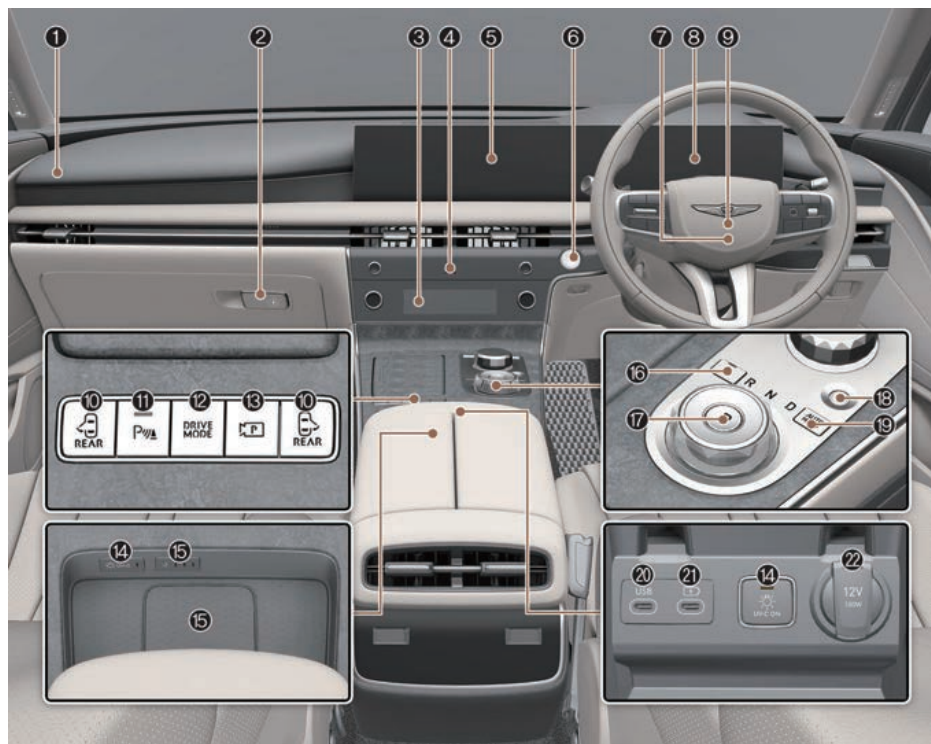
## Interior overview



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

(1) ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF button.....	6-29
(2) Electric charging door open button .....	5-61
(3) Instrument panel illumination control switch .....	4-3
(4) EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch.....	6-23
(5) Power boot open/close button .....	5-55
(6) Seat.....	3-5
(7) Steering wheel tilt/telescopic switch.....	5-41
(8) Steering wheel .....	5-40
(9) Fuse box .....	9-29
(10) Bonnet release lever.....	5-51
(11) Inside door handle .....	5-26
(12) Outside rearview mirror control switch .....	5-46
(13) Outside rearview mirror folding button .....	5-46
(14) Central door lock switch .....	5-28
(15) Power window switches .....	5-48
(16) Rear window sunshade button.....	5-114
(17) Power window lock button, Electronic child safety lock button .....	5-50, 5-31

## Centre console overview



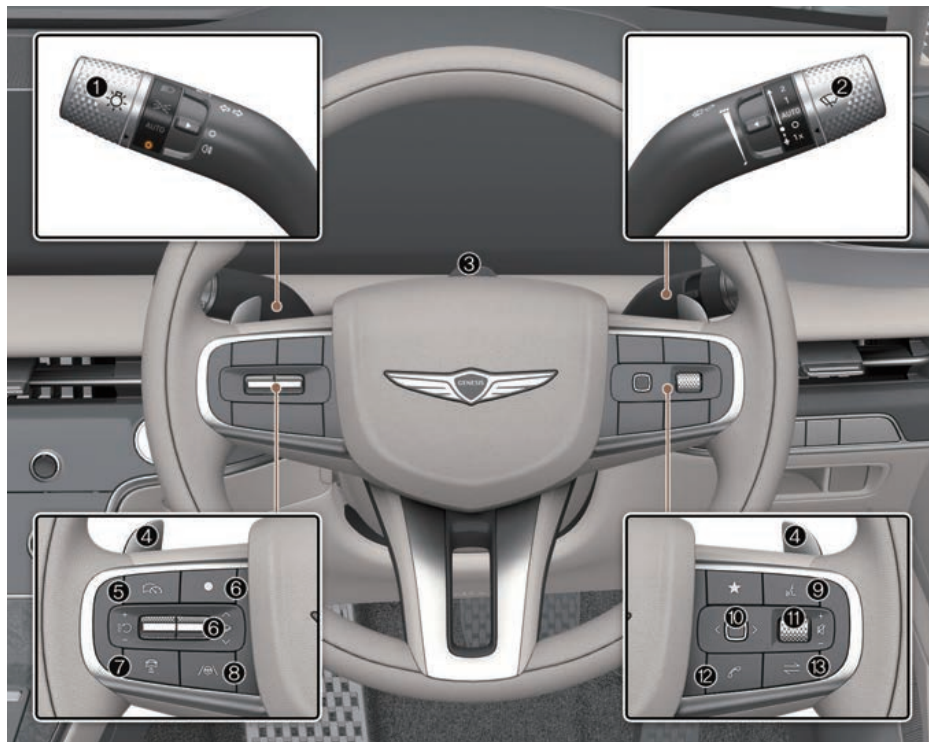
The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

(1) Passenger's front airbag .....	3-49
(2) Glove box .....	5-105
(3) Automatic climate control system .....	5-83
(4) Hazard warning flasher button .....	8-2
(5) Infotainment system .....	5-116
(6) Start/Stop button .....	6-4
(7) Driver's front airbag .....	3-49
(8) Instrument cluster .....	4-2
(9) Horn .....	5-42
(10) Easy Door close button .....	5-29
(11) Parking Safety button .....	7-107
(12) Drive mode button .....	6-40
(13) Parking/View button .....	7-91, 7-95, 7-123
(14) UV-C sterilizer system .....	5-107
(15) Wireless charging system .....	5-111
(16) P release cap cover .....	6-8
(17) Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial) .....	6-8
(18) Fingerprint authentication system .....	5-21
(19) Auto Hold button .....	6-26
(20) USB port .....	5-116

(21)USB charger ..... 5-110

(22)Power outlet ..... 5-109

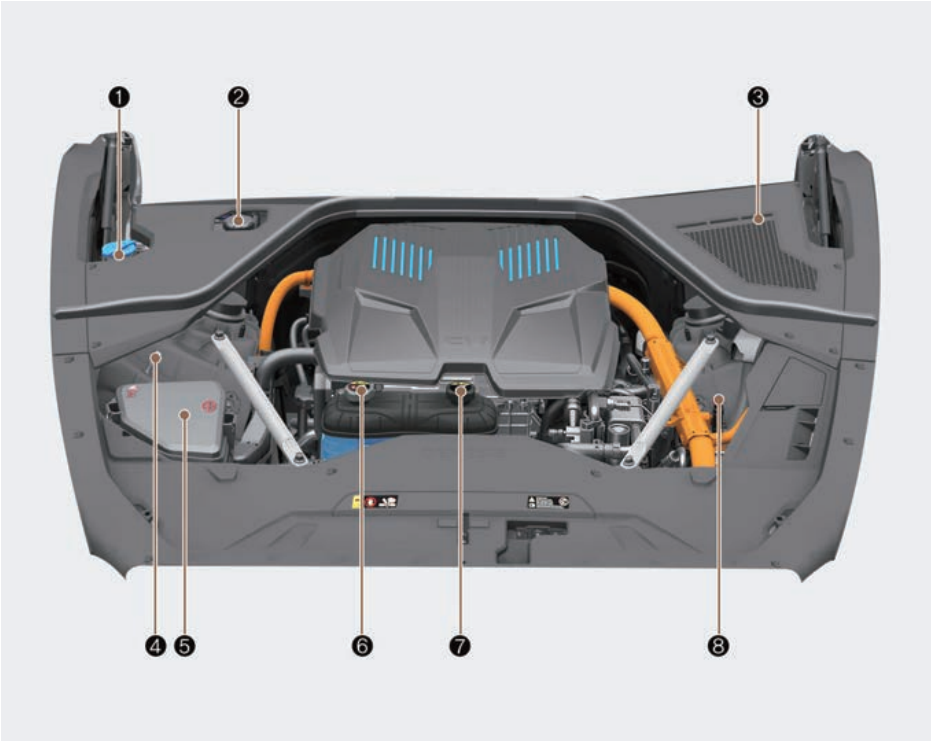
## Steering wheel control overview



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

(1) Lighting control lever .....	5-67
(2) Wiper and washer control lever.....	5-81
(3) Forward Attention Warning camera.....	7-57
(4) Paddle shifter .....	6-13
(5) Driving Assist button .....	7-63
(6) Cluster display control .....	4-23
(7) Vehicle Distance button.....	7-64
(8) Lane Driving Assist button .....	7-28, 7-79
(9) Voice recognition button .....	5-118
(10) Optical mouse .....	4-23
(11) Audio remote control buttons .....	5-116
(12) Bluetooth® hands-free phone button .....	5-118
(13) Mode button .....	5-116

# Motor compartment overview



The actual motor compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) Windscreen washer fluid reservoir.....	9-15
(2) Brake fluid reservoir .....	9-14
(3) Cabin air filter.....	9-15
(4) Jump-start negative (chassis) terminal .....	8-4
(5) Fuse box .....	9-28
(6) Low conductivity coolant reservoir.....	9-12
(7) Coolant reservoir .....	9-12
(8) Emergency cable .....	1-19

## Dimensions

Items		in (mm)	
Overall length		202.17 (5,135)	
Overall width		75.79 (1,925)	
Overall height		58.27 (1,480)	
Tread	Tyre size	Front	Rear
	19 in.	64.13 (1,629)	64.41 (1,636)
Wheelbase		123.62 (3,140)	

## Electric vehicle specifications

Items			AWD
Motor (Front/Rear)	Max. power (kW)		Front 136 / Rear 136
	Max. torque (Nm)		Front 350 / Rear 350
Battery (Lithium-ion)	Capacity (kWh)		94.5
	Power output (kW)		307
	Voltage (V)		522.7
Charger (OBC)	Max. output (kW)	5P	10.9
		7P	7 (single-phase) / 10.5 (three-phase)

OBC: On-Board Battery Chargers

# Bulb wattage

Light bulb			Bulb type	Wattage
Front	Headlight	Low	LED	LED
		High	LED	LED
	Turn signal light		LED	LED
	Position light		LED	LED
	Daytime Running Light (DRL)		LED	LED
	Charge indicator lamp		LED	LED
	Puddle light		LED	LED
Rear	Stop light		LED	LED
	Tail light		LED	LED
	Turn signal light		LED	LED
	Reverse guide light		LED	LED
	License plate light		LED	LED
	Fog light		LED	LED
	High mounted stop light		LED	LED
Interior	Front light (map lamp, room lamp)		LED	LED
	Room lamp		LED	LED
	Vanity mirror lamp		LED	LED
	Glove box lamp		LED	LED
	Inner door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Mood lamp		LED	LED
	Door courtesy lamp		Bulb	5W
	Boot lamp		LED	LED
	Boot emergency lamp		LED	LED

## Tyres and wheels

Items	Tyre size	Wheel size	Inflation pressure kPa (psi)				Wheel bolt torque lbf·ft (kgf·m, N·m)
			Normal load		Maximum load		
			Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre	245/45 ZR19	8.5J X 19	250 (36)	-	250 (36)	-	101-116 (14-16, 137-157)
	275/40 ZR19	9.5J X 19	-	250 (36)	-	250 (36)	

### NOTICE

- It is permissible to add 20 kPa (3 psi) to the standard tyre pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon. Tyres typically lose 7 kPa (1 psi) for every 7 °C (12 °F) temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, recheck your tyre pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.
- Tyre inflation pressures may vary depending on changes in elevation. If driving in areas of higher or lower elevation, be sure to check and adjust for proper tyre inflation.
- Do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure, as found on the sidewall of the tyre(s).
- No spare tyre is provided as this vehicle provides Tyre Mobility Kit (TMK).

### CAUTION

When replacing tyres, ALWAYS use the same size, type, brand, construction, and tread pattern supplied with the vehicle. If not, it can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

## Load and speed capacity tyres (for Europe)

Items	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load capacity		Speed capacity	
			LI <sup>*1</sup>	lbs. (kg)	SS <sup>*2</sup>	mph (km/h)
Full size tyre	245/45 ZR19	8.5J X 19	102	1,874 (850)	Y	186 (300)
	275/40 ZR19	9.5J X 19	105	2,039 (925)	Y	186 (300)

\*1 LI: Load Index

\*2 SS: Speed Symbol

## Air conditioning system

Items		Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	Type A	32.62±0.88 oz. (925±25 g)	R-1234yf
	Type B	37.51±0.88 oz. (980±25 g)	R-134a
Compressor lubricant		6.34±0.35 oz. (180±10 g)	POE RB100EV

We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for more details.

## Vehicle weight and luggage volume

Items	Value
Gross vehicle weight	6,393 lbs. (2,900 kg)
Luggage volume (VDA)	11.8 cu ft (334 ℓ)

### *i* Information

Elevator type automated parking is not possible due to the weight of the vehicle.

## Recommended lubricants and capacities

To help achieve proper vehicle performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Reduction gear fluid	AWD	Front	2.55-2.64 Imp. qts (2.9-3.0 ℓ)	HK ATF 65 SP4M-1
		Rear	2.46-2.55 Imp. qts (2.8-2.9 ℓ)	
Coolant			5.65 Imp. qts (6.42 ℓ)	Designated coolant water for electric vehicles
Low conductivity coolant			11.11 Imp. qts (12.631 ℓ)	
Brake fluid			As required	SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, FMVSS 116 DOT-4, ISO 4925 CLASS-6

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Frame number



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the right front seat. To check the number, open the cover.

VIN label (if equipped)



The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

## Vehicle certification label



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

## Tyre specification and pressure label

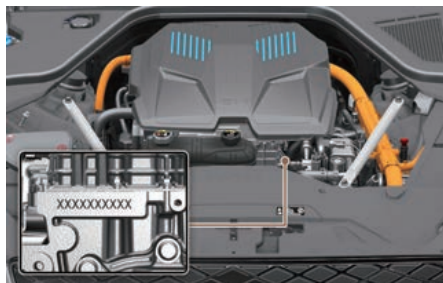


The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## Motor number

Front

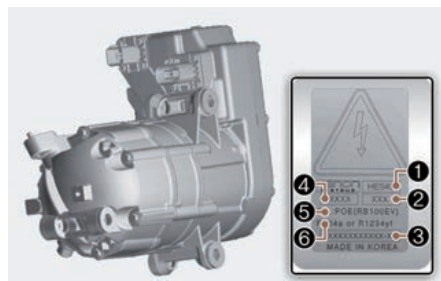


Rear



The motor number are stamped as shown in the drawing.

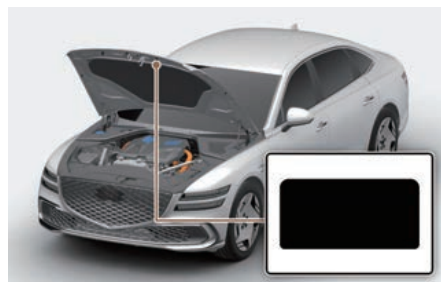
## Air conditioner compressor label



A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model (1), serial number (2), supplier part number (3), lot number (4), refrigerant oil (5) and refrigerant (6).

## Refrigerant label

if equipped



You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

## Declaration of conformity

 If equipped

Example



CE CE 0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Genesis Branded Vehicle website as follows:

<http://service.hyundai-motor.com>

## Importer Information (for Europe)

Genesis Motor Deutschland GmbH  
Strahlenbergerstraße 110-112, 63067  
Offenbach am Main, Germany  
T +49 800 724 4161  
[genesis.com/de](http://genesis.com/de)

## Importer Information For United Kingdom



UK  
CA

Name: Genesis Motor UK Limited

Address: Lantern House, 1 Marlow Road,  
Maidenhead, SL6 7AA, UK

## Open Source Software Notice

This vehicle contains software with open source licenses.

Open source software information including the source code, copyright notices and referred license terms may be obtained on the website  
<https://www.genesis.com/worldwide/en/opensource.html>.

Hyundai Motor Company will provide the open source code to you in storage medium such as CD-ROM for minimum charge covering the cost of performing source distribution upon email request to [opensource@genesis.com](mailto:opensource@genesis.com) within a period of 3 years from the date of product purchase.

# 3. Safety system

Important safety precautions .....	3-3
Always wear your seat belt.....	3-3
Restrain all children .....	3-3
Airbag hazards.....	3-3
Driver distraction .....	3-3
Never drink or take drugs and drive .....	3-3
Control your speed .....	3-4
Keep your vehicle in safe condition.....	3-4
Seats .....	3-5
Safety precautions .....	3-8
Front seats .....	3-9
Rear seats .....	3-14
Head restraint.....	3-20
Seat warmers .....	3-23
Air ventilation seats .....	3-25
Seat belts.....	3-28
Seat belt safety precautions .....	3-28
Seat belt warning light.....	3-29
Seat belt restraint system.....	3-30
Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB).....	3-34
Additional seat belt safety precautions.....	3-34
Care of seat belts .....	3-36
Child restraint system (CRS).....	3-37
Our recommendation: Children always in the rear .....	3-37
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	3-38
Installing a Child Restraint System .....	3-39
Supplemental restraint system - airbags.....	3-46
SRS components.....	3-48
Where are the airbags?.....	3-49
How does the airbags system operate? .....	3-53
What to expect after an airbag inflates .....	3-55
SRS warning light.....	3-55
Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat.....	3-56
Why didn't my airbag go off in a collision? .....	3-56
SRS care.....	3-59
Additional safety precautions .....	3-60
Airbag warning labels .....	3-60

Active bonnet lift system.....	3-61
System activation .....	3-61
System limitation.....	3-62
System malfunction .....	3-62

## Important safety precautions

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

### Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, always make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

### Airbag hazards

Whilst airbags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction and an accident:

- Set up your mobile devices (for example, MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email whilst driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

### Never drink or take drugs and drive

Drinking alcohol or taking drugs can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies. Do not drink or take drugs and drive, and do not let your friends drink or take drugs and drive.

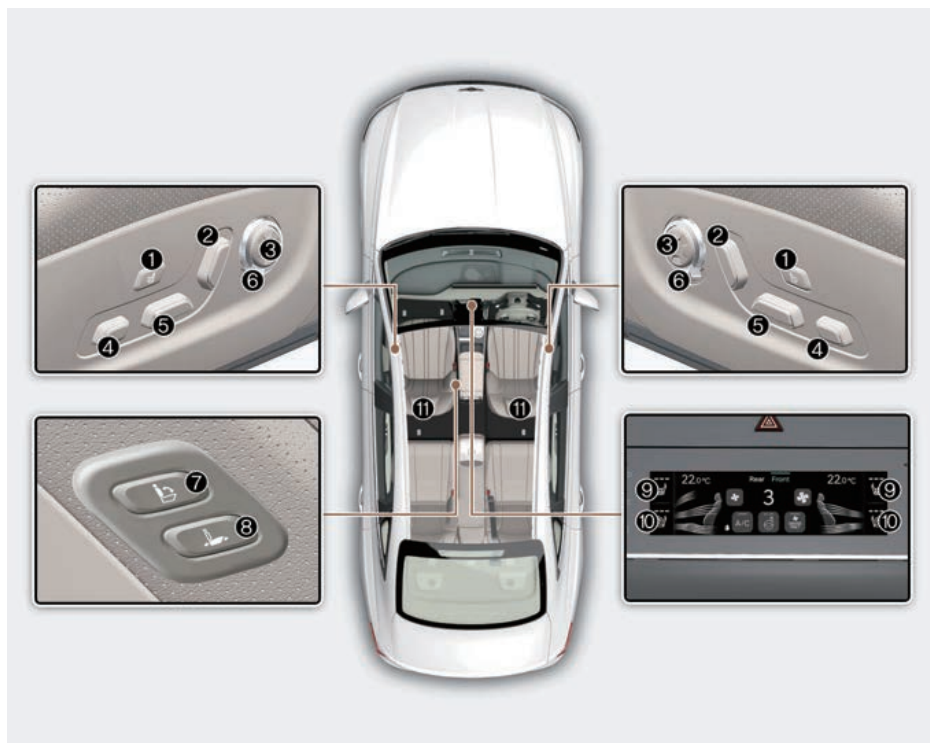
## **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

## **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of a tyre hazard whilst driving, check your tyre pressures regularly and also inspect the condition of your tyres (tread depth, uneven wear, etc.). Be sure to perform all regularly scheduled maintenance as indicated in your Owner's Manual.

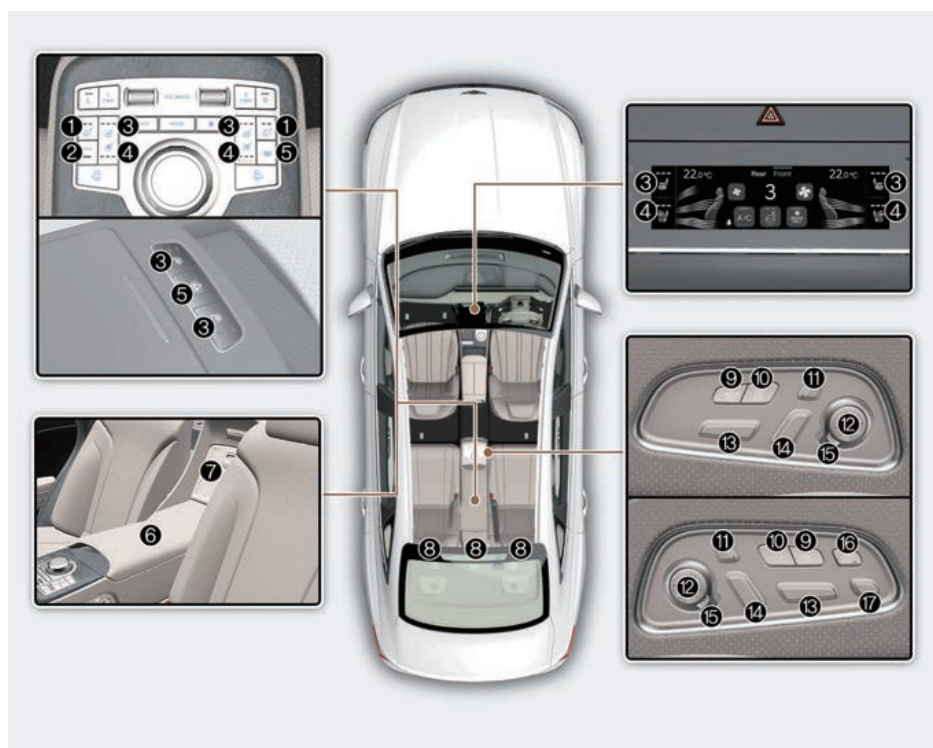
## Seats



The position of the switches may vary depending on the feature available to your vehicle.

### Front seat

- (1) Comfortable stretch
- (2) Seatback angle
- (3) Lumbar support
- (4) Seat cushion extension/Seat cushion support
- (5) Seat sliding forward or rearward/Seat cushion tilt/Seat height
- (6) Seatback bolster
- (7) Walk-in seat switch (Seatback angle)
- (8) Walk-in seat switch (Sliding forward or rearward)
- (9) Seat warmer
- (10) Air ventilation seat
- (11) Head restraint

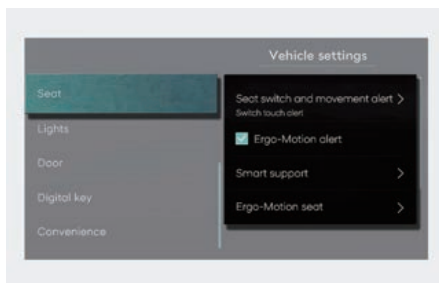


The position of the switches may vary depending on the feature available to your vehicle.

### **Rear seat**

- (1) Comfortable stretch
- (2) LOCK button
- (3) Seat warmer
- (4) Air ventilation seat
- (5) Rear window sunshade control
- (6) Armrest
- (7) Ski through
- (8) Head restraint
- (9) Rest mode switch
- (10) Return mode switch
- (11) Head restraint adjustment
- (12) Lumbar support
- (13) Seat sliding forward or rearward/Seat cushion tilt
- (14) Seatback angle
- (15) Seatback bolster
- (16) Walk-in switch
- (17) Leg support

## Infotainment system



Select **Setup > Vehicle > Seat** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, you may use various convenience functions.

- **Seat switch and movement alert:** Detailed information of the seat switch and image is displayed when the switch is touched or the switch is moved.
- **Smart support:** The driver's seat bolster is increased when SPORT mode is selected or when driving at high speed.
- **Ergo-Motion seat**
  - **Comfortable stretch:** The operation intensity and operation time for Comfortable Stretch may be selected.
  - **Smart posture assist:** The seat is adjusted to assist the driver's posture after driving for an hour.
- **Heating/Ventilation**
  - **Automatic controls linked to climate control settings** (for driver's seat): The seat temperature is automatically controlled.
  - **Seat heater balance:** When the seat heater is on, you may lower the seat heater (warmer) setting, or may turn the seat heater off for either the seatback or seat cushion.
- **Seating easy access**
  - **Steering wheel easy access:** Moves the steering wheel when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle.
  - **Driver seat easy access:** The distance (Normal/Extended/Off) the seat automatically moves when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle may be selected.
  - **Passenger seat easy access:** Moves the passenger seat when the passenger enters or leaves the vehicle.
  - **Rear left seat easy access:** Moves the rear left seat when the passenger exits the vehicle.
  - **Rear right seat easy access:** Moves the rear right seat when the passenger exits the vehicle.

### Information

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
  - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
- 

## Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats to sit in a safe and comfortable position plays an important role for the safety of the driver and passengers. Proper seating positions, secured seat belts, and protection from airbags work together to provide a measure of safety in the event of a collision.

### WARNING

Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and the passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

---

### *Airbags*

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. Sitting too close to an airbag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the airbag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating airbag:

- Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible whilst maintaining your ability to control the vehicle.
  - Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.
  - Hold the steering wheel with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.
  - Never place anything or anyone between you and the airbag.
  - Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the dashboard to minimise the risk of leg injuries.
- 

### *Seat belts*

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip. At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained with a seat belt. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems.

### WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never use one seat belt for more than one occupant.
  - Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.
  - Never allow children or small infants to ride on a passenger's lap.
  - Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.
  - Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.
-

## Front seats

### WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- Never attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision
- Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects, including unsecured floor mats, in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals.
- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.
- Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat.
- Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.
- If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat.
- Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.

## Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is moving can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

### WARNING

Never ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

Driver and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During a collision, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

## Power seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion.

### WARNING

NEVER allow children to remain in the vehicle unattended. The power seats are operable when the vehicle is turned off.

## NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.
- Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.
- Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.

### Forward and rearward



To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### Seatback angle



To recline the seatback:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.

### Seat cushion tilt/Seat height



#### • Seat cushion tilt (1)

To change the angle of the front part of the seat cushion:


1. Push the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

#### • Seat height (2)

To change the height of the seat:

1. Push the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### Seat cushion extension

 If equipped



To move the front part of the cushion forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.

2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

### Seat cushion support

 if equipped



To adjust cushion support:

1. Push the control switch up to increase cushion support or down to decrease cushion support.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion support reaches the desired position.

### Lumbar support

 if equipped

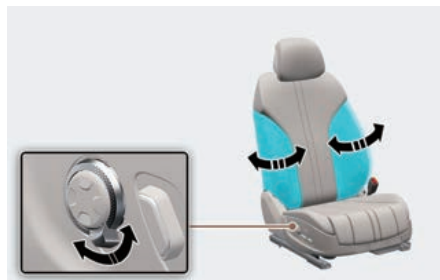


To adjust the lumbar support:

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
2. Press switch (3) or (4) to move the support position up or down.
3. Release the switch once the lumbar support reaches the desired position.

### Seat bolster


 if equipped



To adjust seat bolster:

1. Push the adjustment lever clockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted inward. Push the lever counterclockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted outward.
2. Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

### Ergo-Motion seat

 if equipped

Select **Setup > Vehicle > Seat >**

**Ergo-Motion seat** from the infotainment system's Settings menu to select and set up supplemental functions.

### WARNING

Before actually using each function, try the functions with the vehicle parked.

### Comfortable stretch

Comfortable stretch is a function that helps relieve fatigue of the pelvis and lower back due to driving.



Every time you press the button, you may select a mode or turn off the function in the following order.

- Pelvic stretching: The cushion portion moves, helping the left and right movement of the pelvis.
- Lumbar stretching: The seatback portion moves, helping back and forth movement of the lower back.
- Whole Body stretching: The cushion and seatback moves in sequence, helping the whole body reduce fatigue.
- Off: Turns off Comfortable Stretch.

Also, you can change the operation intensity and operation time from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Intensity: **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion seat > Comfortable stretch > Intensity > High/Moderate**
- Time: **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion seat > Comfortable stretch > Session length > Long (20 min)/Medium (15 min)/Short (10 min)**

### Smart posture assist

After driving for an hour, Smart Posture Assist automatically adjusts the pelvis and back portion of the seat to assist the posture.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Posture Assist function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion seat > Smart posture assist**

### Smart support

The seat bolster support increases when SPORT mode is selected for Drive Mode and when driving at high speed.

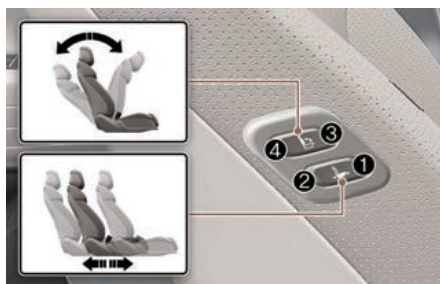
You can activate or deactivate Smart Support function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion seat > Smart support**

## *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### Walk-in switch



The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:  
Press the switch (1) or (2) to move the front passenger seat forward or rearward.
- Seatback angle:  
Press the switch (3) or (4) to recline the front passenger seatback forward or rearward.

### **WARNING**

The rear passenger should not adjust the front seat when a passenger is seated.

### **Seatback pocket**




The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.

### **CAUTION**

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In a collision, they can come loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

### **Pre-active Safety Seat (PSS)**

 if equipped

Pre-active Safety Seat enhances crashworthiness and driving stability by pulling up the backrest before collision and hazardous situations when the passenger seat is reclined.

### **WARNING**

Pre-active Safety Seat is a supplementary device. The drivers should keep their eyes on the road and verify that there are no obstructions ahead. If there is not a passenger or the seatbelt is not fastened, the system does not work. In addition, the seat belt interval is increased whilst a passenger's seat is reclined so that its performance might be degraded.

### **System Operation**

#### • Crashworthiness

Pre-active Safety Seat limits passenger's movement and decreases the chance of injury from the early stage of collision by reducing the seat belt interval with putting the seat in the upright position. The operation conditions are as follows.

- It is considered as a risky situation due to emergency braking.
- It is considered as a dangerous situation due to the difficulties of vehicle operation.
- It is considered as a hazardous situation due to vehicle distance detection sensor.

#### • Driving stability

Pre-active Safety Seat pulls up the backset whilst sudden braking or rapid turning to boost the tightness of seat belt in order to prevent leaning forward or laterally and increase driving stability. The operation conditions are as follows.

- There is a leaning forward of the upper body due to sudden braking.
- There is a lateral leaning of the upper body because of rapid turning.
- Driving on the slippery frozen road
- Driving on the unpaved road
- High risk of rollover

### **WARNING**

Whilst the system operates automatically, please do not be surprised or misunderstand it as a system failure.

- Inoperative status

If the passenger adjusts the seat manually, the system stops immediately. However, it restarts to operate after 5 seconds when the hazardous signal continues.

- Malfunction

If the Pre-active Safety Seat system does not operate properly, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Rear seats

### WARNING

NEVER adjust the rear power seats when a Child Restraint System is installed in that seat.

### WARNING

To prevent injury:

- Do not adjust your seat whilst wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.
- Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.

### NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.
- Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary drain of the battery.
- Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.


## Seat sliding adjustment

 If equipped



Push the control switch to slide the seat to the desired position.

## Seatback angle

 If equipped



Push the control switch to adjust seatback angle.

### Rear switches operating limitation

**+** if equipped



You can activate or deactivate the rear seat control by using the LOCK button on the rear armrest.

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

Deactivate the switch operation by pressing the LOCK button, when a child occupies a rear seat.

### Lumbar support

**+** if equipped



To adjust the lumbar support:

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
2. Press switch (3) or (4) to move the support position up or down.
3. Release the switch once the lumbar support reaches the desired position.

### Seat bolster

**+** if equipped



To adjust seat bolster:

1. Push the adjustment lever clockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted inward.  
Push the lever counterclockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted outward.
2. Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

### Seat easy access

**+** if equipped

The seats can automatically move backward by opening the rear door with the rear seats moved forward.

To use these features, it can be enable the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:


- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Left rear seat/Right rear seat**

### VIP seat

**+** if equipped

The rear seat occupant can adjust the VIP seat and front passenger seats for VIP convenience.

### VIP seat mode switches

 if equipped



You can automatically adjust the seat for comfort or various in-vehicle activities.

#### Relax mode (1)

The front and rear passenger seats are automatically adjusted for comfort.

Press the REST button (1) on the rear armrest. Each seat is adjusted automatically as below.

- Rear left seat
  - Seatback tilts rearward → Head restraint moves downward → Head restraint moves rearward
  - Seat position moves forward → Front part of the cushion rises → Lumbar support protrudes
- Rear right seat
  - Seatback tilts rearward → Head restraint moves downward → Head restraint moves rearward
  - Seat position moves forward → Front part of the cushion rises → Lumbar support protrudes
  - Leg support moves to set position
- Front passenger seat
  - Front part of the cushion moves lowers → Seat height moves to set position
  - Seat position moves forward → Seatback moves to set position
  - The entire seat moves downward

- Once adjusted to Relax mode, a sound rings to inform that the adjustment is completed.

### NOTICE

Any items, which occupy the front passenger's seat, may get damaged whilst automatically adjusting the seat positions for the relax mode.

Do not put any items on the front passenger's seat.

### i Information

- Relax mode for adjusting the front passenger's seat do not operate in the following situations when:
  - The Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.
  - A passenger occupies the front passenger's seat.
  - An item occupies the front passenger's seat.
  - The front passenger's door is open.
  - The front passenger's seatbelt is fastened.
- Relax mode for rear left seat is unavailable under the following circumstances when:
  - The driver's seat is positioned back too far.
  - The driver's seatback is reclined back too much.
- Operating range of the relax mode of the rear left seat may vary depending on the position of the driver's seat.

### *i* Information

- Whilst being adjusted for the relax mode, pressing the REST button will stop the seats from moving.
- The forward and rearward position for the rear seats are adjusted based on its current position. The starting position may differ.
- Operating the seat control switch whilst the seat is being adjusted for relax mode stops the seats from moving.  
To adjust the seats again, use the control switch and adjust manually.

### Return mode (2)

Return all passenger seats to the regular position suited for driving after using the relax mode. Press the return mode button (2) on the rear armrest.

- Rear left seat
  - Seat position moves rearward → Front part of the cushion moves downward → Lumbar support moves rearward
  - Seatback tilts forward → Head restraint moves downward → Head restraint moves rearward
- Rear right seat
  - Leg support moves downward
  - Seat position moves rearward → Front part of the cushion lowers → Lumbar support moves rearward
  - Seatback tilts forward → Head restraint moves downward → Head restraint moves rearward
- Passenger seat
  - Seat position moves to set position → Seatback moves to set position
  - Seat height moves to set position
- Once adjusted to return mode, a sound rings to inform that the adjustment is completed.

### *i* Information

Return mode for adjusting the front passenger's seat do not operate in the following situations when:

- The Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.
- A passenger occupies the front passenger's seat.
- An item occupies the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger's door is open.
- The front passenger's seatbelt is fastened.

### *i* Information

- Whilst being adjusted for the return mode, pressing the return mode button (2) will stop the seats from moving.
- Operating the seat control switch whilst the seat is being adjusted for return mode stops the seats from moving.  
To adjust the seats again, use the control switch and adjust manually.

### Leg support (calf support) adjustment

 if equipped



Place your leg on the leg support and adjust its angle to relax.

### *i* Information

Opening the door will return the leg support to its original position.

### CAUTION

Do not sit or place heavy objects on the leg support. It may damage the system.

### WARNING

- When lowering or raising the leg support, be careful not to have your hands or legs caught under the front seats or other surrounding parts of the leg support. Unexpected injuries may occur.
- Do not allow children to adjust the switch. Unexpected injuries may occur.

### Walk-in switch

 if equipped



Seating position, seatback angle and cushion angle of the front passenger seat can be adjusted by operating the rear seat control switches.

1. Press the walk-in device switch on the rear armrest.
  - Indicator light on the walk-in device switch illuminates.
2. Operate the rear seat control switch to adjust the front passenger seat.

- Press the switch again to turn off the walk-in device.
- If you do not adjust the front passenger seat within 15 seconds after pressing the walk-in switch, the front passenger seat adjustment function automatically turns off.

### WARNING

Do not adjust the passenger seat when a passenger is seated.

### *i* Information

For more information refer to the "Front seats" section in this chapter.

### Rear seat massage function

 if equipped

Use massage seat to relax after a long drive, or when resting inside the vehicle.



1. Whilst the Start/Stop button is in DRIVE READY position or whilst the vehicle is being charged, press the massage button on the rear armrest to start the function.
  - The light indicating massage intensity level illuminates, and the massage function will start.
  - The massage lasts 20 minutes and operates based on a full body stretching logic.

2. Press the button again to set the intensity level.

- Each time you press the button, the intensity setting of the Massage is changed as follows:  
High → Low → Off
- To stop the function, press the button multiple times until the indicator light does not illuminate.

### Armrest



The armrest is located in the centre of the rear seat.

Grab the handle on the upper end of the armrest. Then, pull down the handle to use the armrest.

#### NOTICE

Do not put any items on the rear centre seat. Those items may get damaged, when the armrest is pulled down.

Do not attempt to fold back the armrest, when the cup holder is extended out.

### Ski through



Additional cargo space is provided to accommodate long/narrow cargo (skis, poles, etc.) not able to fit properly in the boot when closed.

1. Pull the armrest down.
2. Pull the cover down whilst pushing the release lever down.

#### NOTICE

Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.

When both the armrest and the panel, which located between the rear seatback and the boot for long-item storage, are folded down, put back the panel first, before folding back the armrest. If not, the panel knobs and the armrest knobs may interfere with each other and get damaged.

#### CAUTION

Make sure the vehicle is off, the vehicle is shifted to P (Park) and the parking brake is applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. The vehicle may move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

When cargo is loaded through the rear passenger seats, ensure the cargo is properly secured to prevent it from moving whilst driving.

### **WARNING**

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

## Head restraint

The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable head restraints. The head restraints are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during a collision, especially a rear impact collision. When there are no occupants in the rear seats, adjust the rear head restraints to the lowest height to improve the driver's visibility.

### **WARNING**

To help reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your head restraints:

- Always adjust the head restraints properly for all passengers BEFORE starting the vehicle.
- Never let anyone ride in a seat with the head restraint removed or reversed.
- Adjust the head restraints so that the middle of the head restraint is at the same height as the top of the eyes.

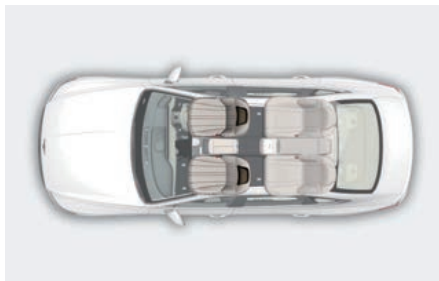


- Never adjust the driver's head restraint when the vehicle is moving.
- Adjust the head restraint as close to the passenger's head as possible.
- Make sure the head restraint is locked in place after adjustment.

### **WARNING**

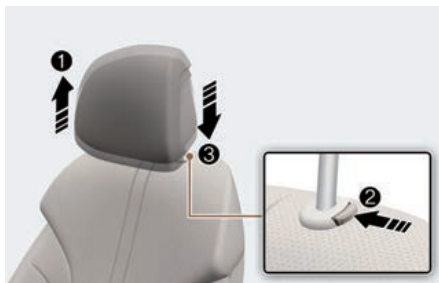
When passengers are sitting on the rear seats, always raise the head restraints above the lowest stored position.

## Front seat head restraints



The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable head restraints for passenger safety and comfort.

## Height adjustment



To raise the head restraint:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the head restraint:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the head restraint support.
2. Lower the head restraint to the desired position (3).

#### Forward and rearward adjustment



The head restraint may be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the head restraint forward to the desired detent. To adjust the head restraint to its furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

#### NOTICE



If you recline the seatback towards the front with the head restraint and seat cushion raised, the head restraint may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.

#### Removal/Reinstall



To remove the head restraint:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the seatback angle switch (1).
2. Raise the head restraint as far as it can go.
3. Press the head restraint release button (3) whilst pulling the head restraint up (4).



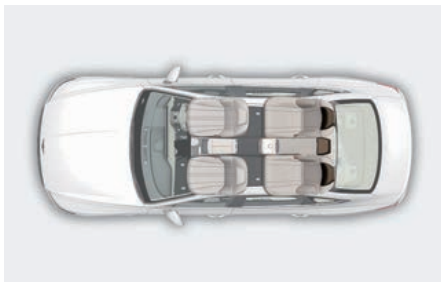
To reinstall the head restraint:

1. Recline the seatback.
2. Put the head restraint poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
3. Adjust the head restraint to the appropriate height.
4. Return the seatback (4) with the seatback angle switch (3).

#### ⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the head restraint is locked in place and properly adjusted for the passenger.

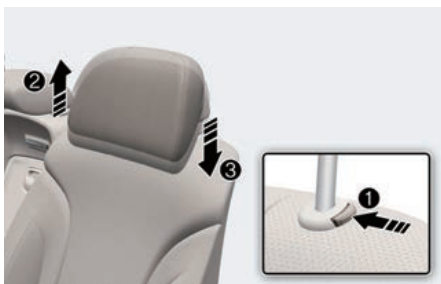
## Rear seat head restraints



The rear seats are equipped with head restraints in all the seating positions for the passenger's safety and comfort.

### Manual adjustment

if equipped



To raise the head restraint:

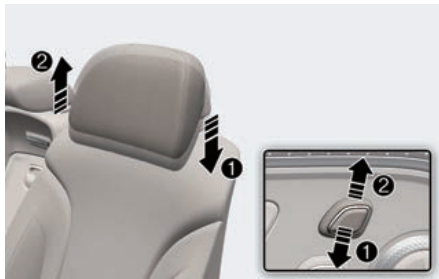
1. Pull it up to the desired position (2).

To lower the head restraint:

1. Push and hold the release button (1) on the head restraint support.
2. Lower the head restraint to the desired position (3).

### Power adjustment

if equipped



To adjust the head restraint up and down: Push the control switch up (2) or down (1) to adjust the head restraints up and down.

### WARNING

Do not remove the head restraint. Removing the head restraint on your own might damage the adjustment motor connector. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer Genesis Branded products.

### Wing-out head restraint adjustment

if equipped



Whilst driving, the wing-out head restraint supports the passenger's head from shaking. Hold both ends of the wing-out head restraint with your hands, and pull out or push in to adjust its position.

## *i* Information

When the wing-out head restraint is not in use, hold both ends of the head restraint and pull out to return it to its original position.

## Seat warmers

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the seat warmers off.

## WARNING

The seat warmers may cause serious burns, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:

- Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.
- People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.
- Fatigued individuals.
- Intoxicated individuals.
- People taking medication that may cause drowsiness or sleepiness.

## WARNING

Never place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is operating, such as a blanket or seat cushion.

## NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:

- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol, or petrol to clean the seats.
- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.
- Do not change the seat cover.

## Front seat warmers



1. Whilst the vehicle is running, press **Front** on the upper part of the climate control information screen.
  - The climate control information screen for the front seats are displayed.
2. Press the button to warm the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.
  - The seat warmer temperature changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.
  - When pressing the button for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn off.

## *i* Information

- The seat warmer is automatically turned off if the seat temperature goes above a certain level. The seat warmer turns on again if the temperature is low.
- The armrest warmer automatically turns on when the function is enabled from the infotainment system and the seat warmer turns on. (if equipped)

- Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The seat warmer automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

To use this function, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heating/Ventilation > Automatic controls linked to climate control settings > Seat heating/ventilation**
- Seat Heater Balance

The seat warmer temperature can be adjusted or turned off for the seatback or seat cushion, when the seat warmer is on.

To use this function, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heating/Ventilation > Seat heater balance**
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position. However, if the Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings function is on, the driver's seat warmer turns on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

## Rear seat warmers

if equipped

Type A



Type B



Whilst the vehicle is running, press the button to warm the rear seats.

- The seat warmer temperature changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.
- When pressing the button for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn off.

## *i* Information

- The seat warmer temperature is lowered automatically after a certain time to prevent low temperature burn.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

### Operating the rear seat warmer from the front seat

 if equipped



Rear seat heaters can be turned on or off from the front seats.

1. Press **Rear** on the upper part of the climate control information screen whilst the vehicle is running.
  - The climate control information screen for the rear seats are displayed.
2. Press the button next to the seat which requires heating from the climate control information screen.
  - The temperature changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.
  - When pressing the button for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn off.

### Air ventilation seats

The air ventilation seats cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

When air ventilation is not desired, keep the air ventilation seats off.

#### NOTICE

To prevent damage to the air ventilation seats:

- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.
- Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents not to work properly.
- Do not change the seat covers.
- If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Front air ventilation seats

 if equipped



1. Whilst the vehicle is running, press **Front** on the upper part of the climate control information screen.
  - The climate control information screen for the front seats are displayed.
2. Press the button to cool the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.
  - The fan speed changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.
  - When pressing the button for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn off.

## *i* Information

- If the air ventilation seat is positioned to high, fan speed increases depending on the vehicle speed and driving time.
- Use the air ventilation seat with the air conditioning on for more effective ventilation.
- After the air ventilation seat is turned on, it takes 3-5 minutes for the passengers to notice the temperature change.
- Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)
 

The air ventilation seat automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

To use this function, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

  - **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heated/Ventilated features > Automatic controls linked to climate control settings > Seat heating/ventilation**
- The air ventilation seats default to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position. However, if the Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings function is on, the driver's air ventilation seat turns on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

### Rear seat air ventilation seats

 if equipped




Whilst the vehicle is running, press the button to cool the seat.

- The fan speed changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.
- When pressing the button for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn off.

### Information

- If the air ventilation seat is positioned to high, fan speed increases depending on the vehicle speed and driving time.
- Use the air ventilation seat with the air conditioning on for more effective ventilation.
- After the air ventilation seat is turned on, it takes 3-5 minutes for the passengers to notice the temperature change.
- The air ventilation seat defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

### Operating the rear ventilation seat from the front seat

 if equipped



Rear seat air ventilation can be turned on or off from the front seats.

1. Press **Rear** on the upper part of the climate control information screen whilst the vehicle is running.
  - The climate control information screen for the rear seats are displayed.
2. Press button next to the seat which requires ventilating from the climate control information screen.
  - The fan speed changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.
  - When pressing the button for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn off.

## Seat belts

### Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Airbags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.

#### **WARNING**

Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained in the rear seats.
- Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. And the child must always be restrained in the seat properly.
- Never allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.
- Never ride with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.
- Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.
- Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly in an accident.
- Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles intended for other seating positions.
- Never unfasten the seat belt whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

- Make sure there is nothing in the buckle that could interfere with the seat belt latch mechanism from fastening securely.
- Never modify seat belt or install devices that may prevent seat belt assembly from removing slack.
- Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged. We recommend that the seat belt be replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

#### **WARNING**

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies do not operate properly. Always replace:

- Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.
- Damaged hardware.
- The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.

## Seat belt warning light

Instrument cluster



### Driver's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light illuminates for about 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt and you drive below 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning light illuminates.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt and you drive above 12 mph (20 km/h), the seat belt warning chime sounds for a certain period of time and the warning light blinks.

### Front passenger's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning light illuminates for about 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the passenger continues to not fasten their seat belt or unfasten their seat belt and you drive below 12 mph (20 km/h), the seat belt warning light illuminates.

If the passenger continues to not fasten their seat belt or unfasten their seat belt and you drive above 12 mph (20 km/h), the seat belt warning chime sounds for a certain period of time and the warning light blinks.


## WARNING

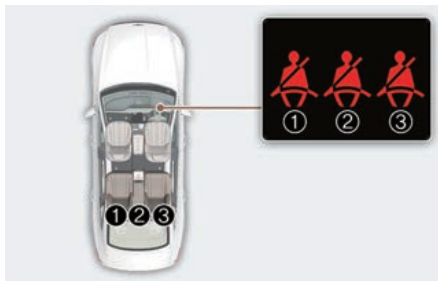
Riding in an improper position may adversely affect the front passenger's seat belt warning system. Instruct the passenger to properly be seated when the vehicle is moving.

## *i* Information

- If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light blinks or illuminates for 6 seconds.
- The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.

### Rear passenger's seat belt warning

 if equipped



#### Rear seat seatbelt (1, 3)

As a reminder to the rear seat passengers, the corresponding seat belt warning lights illuminate for about 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the seat belt is still not fastened whilst driving, or unfastened whilst driving, it will operate as follows depending on vehicle speed.

Below 12 mph (20 km/h):

The corresponding seat belt warning light illuminates until the seat belt is fastened.

Above 12 mph (20 km/h):

The corresponding seat belt warning light blinks and the warning chime sounds for about 35 seconds, and then the warning light continues to illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

### Rear centre seatbelt (2)

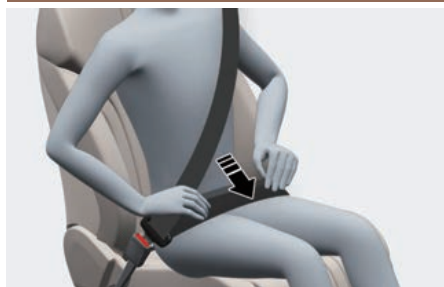
With the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position, if the second row centre seat passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the seat belt warning light illuminates for 70 seconds. But, if the seat belt is fastened after 6 seconds, the seat belt warning light immediately turns off.

If the seat belt is fastened, and then unfastened when you are driving below 12 mph (20 km/h), the seat belt warning light illuminates for 70 seconds.

If the seat belt is fastened, and then unfastened when you are driving above 12 mph (20 km/h), the seat belt warning light blinks and the warning chime sounds for about 35 seconds.

## Seat belt restraint system

### WARNING



Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

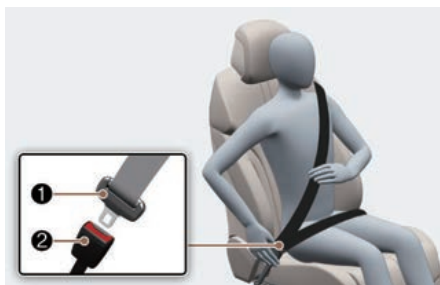
- Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to

absorb the force of a collision, reducing the chance of internal injuries.

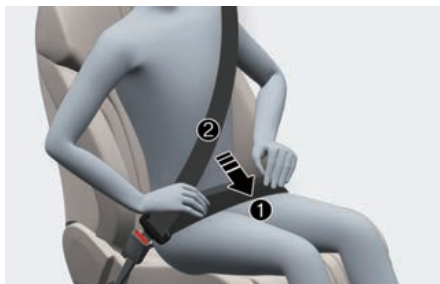
- Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.
- Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at an appropriate height.
- Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.

### Lap/shoulder belt

To fasten your seat belt:



Pull the seat belt out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). An audible "click" sounds when the tab locks into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.



Place the lap belt (1) portion across your hips and the shoulder belt (2) portion across your chest.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is

adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt extends and moves with you.

If there is a sudden stop or collision, the belt is locked in place. It also locks if you try to lean forward too quickly.

### NOTICE

If you cannot smoothly pull the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, the belt may be pulled out smoothly.

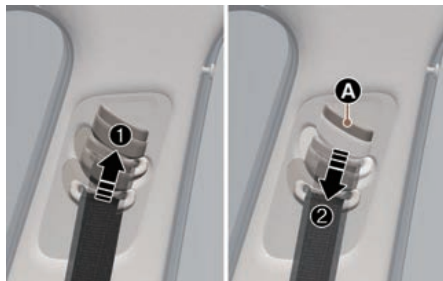
### Height adjustment

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor:

Pull it up (1) to raise the height. To lower it, push it down (2) whilst pressing the height adjuster button [A].

Front seat



Release the button to lock the anchor in place. Try pushing the height adjuster down to make sure that it is locked in place.

### To release your seat belt:

Press the release button [A] in the locking buckle.



The belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

### Rear webbing guide

if equipped

Webbing guides are provided to prevent the shoulder belt from passing over the neck or face.

Install the separately provided webbing guide on the side of the rear seat backrest.



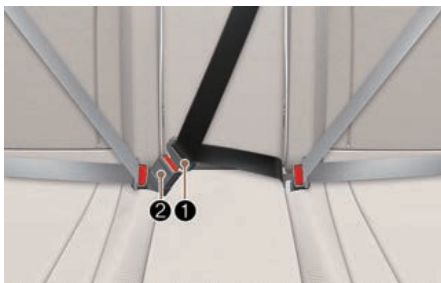
Locate the webbing guide button to face downward. Otherwise, the seatbelt may not protect you properly.



### WARNING

Avoid wearing seatbelt too loose. If seatbelt does not fit tightly, it may not protect you from an accident.

### *Rear centre seat belt*



Insert the tongue plate (1) into the buckle (2) until an audible "click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Pull the shoulder portion of the belt to snug the belt across your hips and remove slack. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

When using the rear centre seat belt, use the buckle with the "CENTRE" mark.

### *i* Information

If you cannot pull out the safety belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. After release, pull out the belt smoothly.

### WARNING

Make sure the seatback is locked in place when using the rear centre seat belt.

If not secure, the seatback may move if there is a sudden stop or collision and result in serious injury or death.

### *Pretensioner seat belt*



Your vehicle is equipped with driver's, front passenger's and rear passengers' (except for the rear centre seat) pretensioner seat belts (retractor pretensioner). The pretensioner makes sure the seat belts fit tightly against your body in certain frontal or side collision(s). The pretensioner seat belts may be activated in some crashes where the frontal or side collision(s) is severe enough, together with the airbags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if you try to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor locks in place. In some frontal collisions, the pretensioner activates and pulls the seat belt against your body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pretensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pretensioner releases some of the pressure on the driver's or passenger's seat belt. (for vehicles equipped with load limiter)

### WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

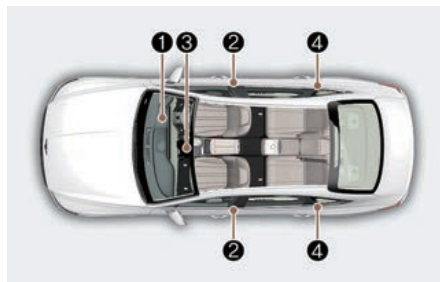
- Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.
- Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted.
- Do not place anything near the buckle.
- Always replace your pretensioner after activation or an accident.
- We recommend that the pretensioner be inspected, serviced, repaired, or replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.

### WARNING

Do not touch the pretensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pretensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pretensioner can become hot and can burn you.

### WARNING

We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Body work on the front of the vehicle may damage the pretensioner seat belt system.



The Pretensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

- (1) SRS airbag warning light
- (2) Front retractor pretensioner
- (3) SRS control module
- (4) Rear retractor pretensioner

### NOTICE

The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pretensioner seat belts. The SRS airbag warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates for about 3-6 seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, and then it turns off.

If the pretensioner is not working properly, the warning light illuminates even if the SRS airbag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate when starting the vehicle or stays illuminated or illuminates whilst driving, we recommend the pretensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

### *i* Information

- The pretensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor).
- When the pretensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment.
- Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pretensioner seat belts were activated.

### Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB)

 if equipped

The purpose of the Pre-Active Seat Belt is to tighten the seat belt when a collision is sensed, during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is sensed.

### NOTICE

Pre-Active Seat Belt is a supplementary system. Pre-Active Seat Belt activates only when the passenger is wearing his/her seat belt.

### Pre-Active Seat Belt operation


In order to maximise the safety of the passenger, Pre-Active Seat Belt system operates as below:

- Full retraction  
The seat belt is tightened when:
  - Emergency braking situation occurs
  - Losing control of the vehicle
  - The vehicle detects a collision
  - Driving on a slippery frozen road
  - Unstable rolling of the vehicle occurs

- Slack removal  
Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is fastened.
- Belt parking  
Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is unfastened.

### Warning message

The "**Check PSB (Pre-active Seat Belt)**" warning message appears if there is a problem with your Pre-Active Seat Belt.

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products if the warning message comes on whilst the vehicle is moving. When the Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message disappears, the master () warning light illuminates.

### Additional seat belt safety precautions

#### Seat belt use during pregnancy

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, routed between your breasts and away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your belly and pull the shoulder portion so that it fits SNUGLY across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of your belly.

### WARNING

- Pregnant women and patients are more vulnerable to any impacts on the abdomen during an abrupt stop or collision. If you are in an accident whilst pregnant, consult your doctor.
- To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should NEVER place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.

## ***Seat belt use and children***

### **Infant and small children**

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws that require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System may be different, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country where you are travelling, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat.

For more information, refer to the "Child restraint system (CRS)" section in this chapter.

### WARNING

Always properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers. Never hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. Violent forces created during a collision will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior or to be ejected from the vehicle.

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets the applicable Safety Standard.

The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. Refer to the "Child restraint system (CRS)" section in this chapter.

### **Larger children**

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should be snug against the hips and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. A child's squirming could move the belt out of position. Adults should frequently check belt fit. In a collision, the safest place for children is in the rear seats, using a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available seat belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, the child needs to return to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.

### **WARNING**

- Always make sure larger children's seat belts are buckled and properly adjusted.
  - Never allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.
  - Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.
- 

### ***Seat belt use and injured people***

A seat belt should still be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

### ***One person per belt***

When two people (children or adults) are sitting together, never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in a collision.

### ***Do not lie down***

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is moving, can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During a collision, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.

### **WARNING**

- Never ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.
  - Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.
  - The driver and all passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.
- 

### **Care of seat belts**

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

### ***Periodic inspection***

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

### ***Keep belts clean and dry***

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents, or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

### ***When to replace seat belts***

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

## Child restraint system (CRS)

### Our recommendation: Children always in the rear

#### WARNING

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in a collision, sudden stop, or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have child restraint regulations that require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

Child Restraint Systems are generally designed to be secured in a vehicle seat by a lap/shoulder seat belt, or by a top tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage in the rear seats of the vehicle.

### *Child Restraint System*

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seats of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

#### WARNING

Do not use an improperly secured Child Restraint System. It may increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. When using a Child Restraint System:

- Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.
- Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.
- Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback. It may not provide adequate protection in an accident.
- After an accident, we recommend that an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products check the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages, and top tether anchorages.

## Selecting a Child Restraint System

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country. A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44 or ECE-R129.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it is to be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

### *Child Restraint System types*

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing, and booster seat Child Restraint Systems. They are classified according to the child's age, height, and weight.

#### Rearward-facing Child Restraint System



With a rearward-facing Child Restraint System, the collision forces are absorbed by its shell instead of the child's body. The shell also supports the system's cradles

and protects the head, neck and spine of the child. All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Continue using the Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as the child is within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer. It's the best way to keep them safe. Once your child has outgrown the rearward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness.

#### Forward-facing Child Restraint System



A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

### Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snug across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop, or sudden manoeuvre.

## Installing a Child Restraint System

### WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System, always read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System and in this manual to prevent serious injury or death if a collision occurs.

### WARNING

If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System (as described in the Child Restraint System manual), readjust or remove the head restraint for that seating position.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly in a seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with a support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forwards and backwards and from side to side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. Install a Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt as tightly as possible. Some side-to-side movement can be expected.
- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

### CAUTION

Check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System to prevent burns. A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot.

### ***Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems according to UN regulations***

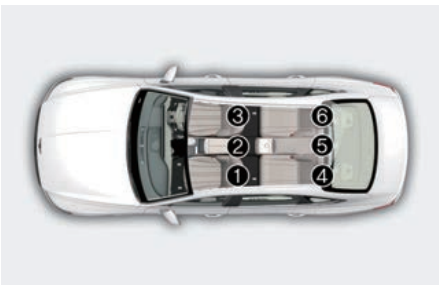
(Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)

- Yes: Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No: Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-": Not applicable
- **F**: Forward facing
- **R**: Rearward facing
- The table is based on left-hand drive vehicle. Except for the front passenger seat, the table is valid for right-hand drive vehicle. For right-hand drive vehicle front passenger seat, use information for the seating position number 3.

CRS categories		Seating positions					
		1, 2	3		4	5	6
			Airbag ON	Airbag OFF			
Universal belted CRS	All mass groups	-	No	Yes <sup>*1</sup> F, R	Yes F, R	Yes <sup>*2</sup> F, R	Yes F, R
i-Size CRS (with support leg)	ISOFIX (F2, F2X, R1, R2)	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
ISOFIX infant CRS (for example, CRS for a baby)	ISOFIX (R1)	-	No	No	Yes R	No	Yes R
Carry cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX (L1, L2)	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX (F2, F2X, R2, R2X)	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
ISOFIX toddler CRS - large* (*: not booster seats)	ISOFIX (F3, R3)	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
Booster seat-Reduced width	ISOFIX (B2)	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Booster seat-Full width	ISOFIX (B3)	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

<sup>\*1</sup> To install Universal CRS, 1st row passenger seat height should be at its highest position.

<sup>\*2</sup> The seating position (number 5) is not suitable for fitment of child restraint system with support leg.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle	Seating positions
1	Front left	
2	Front centre	
3	Front right	
4	Second row left	
5	Second row centre	
6	Second row right	

### *i* Information

- Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the passenger airbag is deactivated.
- For semi-universal or vehicle specific CRS (ISOFIX or belted CRS), please see the vehicle list provided in the manual of CRS.

### ***Recommended Child Restraint Systems for Vehicle according to UN regulations (Information for use by vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)***

Mass group	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation
Group 0-1	iZi Combi X4 ISOfix	BeSafe	ISOFIX mounted with support leg Rearward facing, SIP+ NOT used
Group 1	King II LS	Britax Romer	Belt mounted
Group 2	Solution T i-Fix	Cybex	Forward-facing with ISOFIX and vehicle belt
Group 3	Junior 3 Booster Basic	Graco	Forward-facing with ISOFIX and vehicle belt

#### **CRS Manufacturer information**

BeSafe: <https://www.besafe.com>

Britax: <https://www.britax.com>

Cybex: <https://www.cybex-online.com>

Graco: <https://www.gracobaby.com>

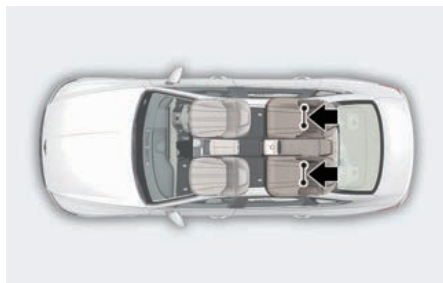
### **ISOFIX anchorage and top tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children**

The ISOFIX system connects a Child Restraint System to the vehicle during driving and in a collision. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that accommodates a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, install a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments.

The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.

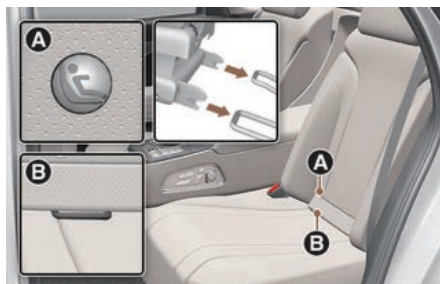


ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for the centre rear seating position.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the

rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Do not use the outboard seat anchors for the centre seat. It may damage the anchorages that may break or fail in a collision resulting in serious injury or death.



[A] ISOFIX Anchorage Position Indicator  
[B] ISOFIX Anchorage

The ISOFIX anchorage position indicator symbols are located on the left and right rear seatbacks to identify the positions of the lower anchors in your vehicle.

Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as corresponding top tether anchorage on the package tray.

The ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Before installing the Child Restraint System, make sure that there are no objects (for example, toys, pens, wires) near the ISOFIX anchorage area. Those objects may damage either the seat belt system or the Child Restraint System during installation. If necessary, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"***

To install an ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. The child can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.
- Never attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This may cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.
- Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after a collision. A collision can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.

### ***Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top Tether Anchorage" system***



First secure the child restraint with the ISOFIX anchorages or the seat belt. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether strap be attached, attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether strap anchorage.

Top tether anchorages are located on the package tray.



1. Route the Child Restraint System top tether strap over the seatback. Placing the top tether strap, follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top tether strap to the top tether anchorage, then tighten the top tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly secure the Child Restraint System.
3. Check the Child Restraint System is secure by pushing and pulling the seat forward and back and side-to-side.

### **WARNING**

Take the following precautions when installing the top tether anchorage:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- Never attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.
- Only attach the top tether strap to the correct top tether anchorage for that seating position.
- Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraint System.

Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

### **Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt**

When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat using the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.



### **Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt**

To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats:

1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.
2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.



### ***i* Information**

Position the release button so it is easy to access in an emergency.

3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.

4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.



If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top tether anchorage with the lap/shoulder belt, refer to the "Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top Tether Anchorage" system" section for more information.

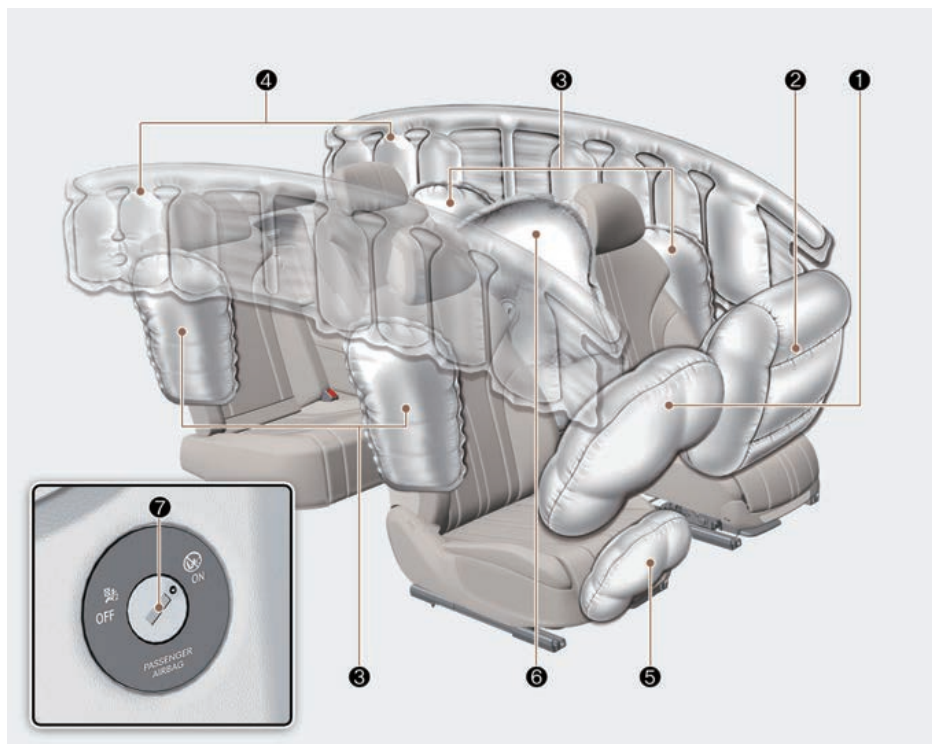
To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the seat belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

#### **WARNING**

If a child restraint is installed in the second row centre seat, move the second row seat far back as possible, to minimise contact with the front centre side airbag (if equipped with front centre side airbag).

---

## Supplemental restraint system - airbags



The actual airbags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

- (1) Driver's front airbag
- (2) Passenger's front airbag
- (3) Side airbag
- (4) Curtain airbag
- (5) Driver's knee airbag
- (6) Front centre side airbag
- (7) Front passenger airbag ON/OFF switch

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Airbag System for the driver's seat and front passenger's seats.

The front airbags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these airbags to provide protection, the seat belts must be properly worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Airbags are built into the vehicle as a supplementary system. They are not intended as a replacement for wearing 3-point seat belts. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.

### **WARNING**

#### **AIRBAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

Always use seat belts and Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with airbags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly belted or not wearing your seat belt when the airbag inflates.

NEVER place a child in any Child Restraint System or booster seat in the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated. An inflating airbag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.

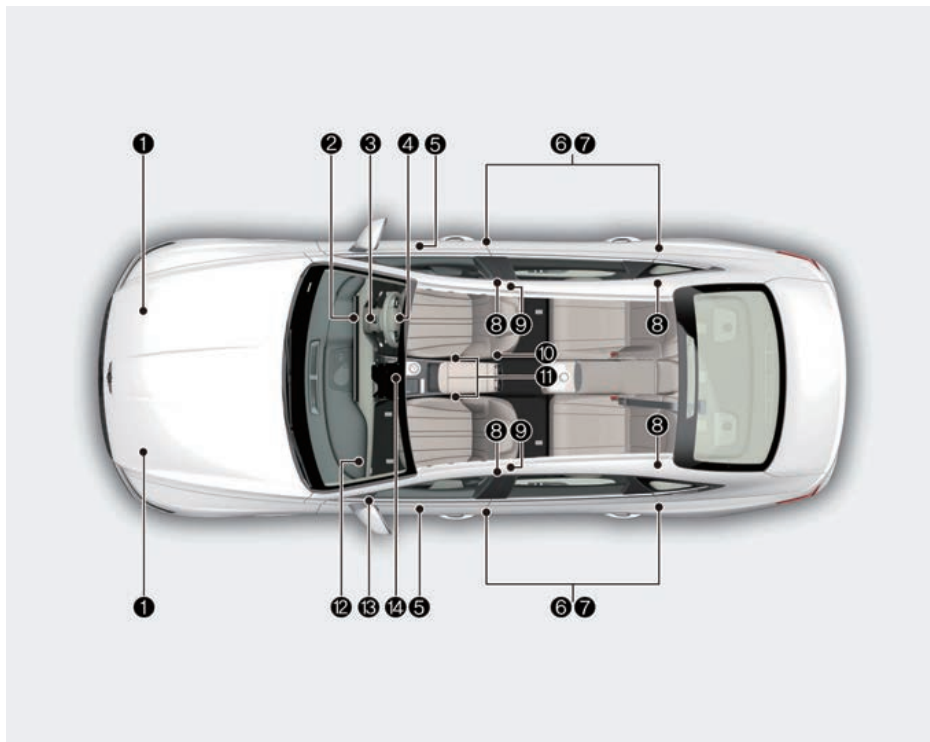
ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

Make sure that all occupants sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended, and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the vehicle is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying airbag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

Never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbags or lean against the door or centre console.

Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

## SRS components



The SRS consists of the following components:

- (1) Front impact sensors
- (2) Airbag warning light
- (3) Driver's knee airbag module
- (4) Driver's front airbag module
- (5) Side impact sensors (pressure)
- (6) Side impact sensors (acceleration)
- (7) Retractor pretensioner
- (8) Side air bag modules
- (9) Curtain air bag modules
- (10) Front side airbag modules
- (11) Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckle sensors
- (12) Passenger's front air bag module
- (13) Front passenger's airbag ON/OFF switch
- (14) SRS control module (SRSCM)/Rollover sensor

### *i* Information

Front passenger's airbag ON/OFF indicator is located on the overhead console.

## Where are the airbags?

### *Driver's and passenger's front airbags*

Driver's front airbag



Driver's knee airbag



Passenger's front airbag



The SRS consists of airbags located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the driver's side lower crash pad below the steering wheel, and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The airbag location are embossed with the letters "AIRBAG".

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passengers with additional supplemental protection than that the seat belt system does not provide in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

### **⚠ WARNING**

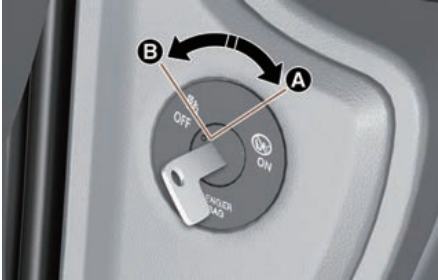
To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from inflating front airbags:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
- Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.
- Never lean against the door or centre console.
- Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.
- Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the dashboard.
- Never place any objects (such as dashboard cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects may cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.
- Do not attach any objects on the front windscreen and inside mirror.

### **Passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch**

The purpose of the switch is to disable the passenger's front airbag in order to transport occupants who are at increased risk for airbag-related injury due to age, size, or medical condition.

**To deactivate the passenger's front airbag:**



[A] Passenger airbag ON  
[B] Passenger airbag OFF



Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position. The passenger airbag OFF (⚠️) indicator will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front airbag is reactivated.

**To reactivate the passenger's front airbag:**



Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger airbag ON (Ⓢ) indicator will illuminate.

### **i Information**

The passenger's front airbag ON/OFF indicator generally illuminates for about 4 seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. But, if the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON position within 3 minutes after the vehicle was turned off, the indicator will not illuminate.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Never allow an adult passenger to ride in the front passenger seat when the passenger airbag OFF indicator is illuminated. During a collision, the airbag will not inflate if the indicator is illuminated. Turn on the passenger's front airbag or have your passenger move to the rear seat.

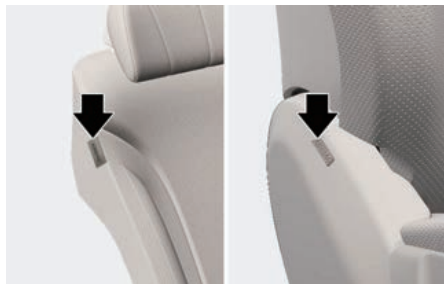
### **WARNING**

If the passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the following conditions may occur:

- The airbag (⚠) warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate.
- The passenger airbag OFF (OFF) indicator will not illuminate and the ON (ON) indicator will come on. The passenger's front airbag will inflate in a frontal impact even though the passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.
- We recommend that an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products inspect the passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch and the SRS airbag system as soon as possible.

### **Side airbags and front centre side airbag**

Side airbag (Front row, Second row)



Front centre side airbag



Side airbags are located in each front and outboard second row seats. Additionally, a front centre side airbag is located in the inboard side of the driver seatback.

The side airbags and front centre side airbag are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the front centre side airbag, side and/or curtain airbags and pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side airbags and front centre side airbag are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

### **WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side airbag:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
- Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
- Do not use any accessory seat covers. It may reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.
- Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when airbag is inflated.

- Do not place any objects over the airbag or between the airbag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the airbag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.
  - Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side airbag inflates.
  - Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side airbags.
  - Do not cause impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position as this may cause the side airbags to inflate.
  - If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- 

### *Curtain airbags*



Curtain airbags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain airbags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain airbags and pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The curtain airbags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

### **WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain airbag:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
  - Properly secure Child Restraint System as far away from the door as possible.
  - Do not place any objects over the airbag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the airbag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, and roof side rail.
  - Do not hang other objects except clothes, especially hard or breakable objects near airbag locations. In an accident, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
  - Do not open or repair the side curtain airbags yourself. If necessary, we recommend that the airbag be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

## How does the airbags system operate?

The SRSCM (Supplemental Restraint System Control Module) continually monitors all SRS components whilst the Start/Stop button is DRIVE READY to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require airbag deployment or pretensioner seat belt deployment.

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the SRSCM inflates the front airbags with the force needed.

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side airbags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Airbags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position, and it can be activated within about 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned off.
- Airbags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- The front airbags completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the airbags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you simply see the deflated airbags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain airbags and front centre side airbag inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.

When a rollover is detected, curtain airbags remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts.

- To help provide protection, the airbags must inflate rapidly. The speed of airbag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which the airbag inflates between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of airbag design.

However, the rapid airbag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises, and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the airbags to expand with great force.

- There are even circumstances under which contact with the airbag may cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the airbag.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the airbag. An airbag needs space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers sit as far as possible between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Driver's front airbag (1)



When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it automatically deploys the front airbags.

Driver's front airbag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seam in the pad cover separates from the expansion of the airbags.

A fully inflated airbag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the front passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

Driver's front airbag (3)



Passenger's front airbag



After complete inflation, the airbag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

### **WARNING**

To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the passenger's airbag inflates:

- Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's airbag is located.
- Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.

## What to expect after an airbag inflates

After a frontal or side airbag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Airbag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer. Curtain airbags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.

### WARNING

After an airbag inflates, take the following precautions:

- Open your windows and doors as soon as it is safe to do so after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating airbag.
- Do not touch the airbag storage area's internal components immediately after an airbag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating airbag may be very hot.
- Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.
- We recommend that an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products replace the airbag immediately after deployment. Airbags are designed to be used only once.

## Noise and smoke from inflating airbag

When the airbags inflate, they make a loud noise and may produce smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the airbag inflator. After the airbag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the airbag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience breathing

problems after an airbag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

## SRS warning light



The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag warning light on the instrument panel displays the airbag symbol in the illustration. The light indicates if there is a potential problem with your airbag system, which could include your side and/or curtain airbags used for rollover protection.

### WARNING

If your SRS malfunctions, the airbags may not inflate properly during a collision increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

Your SRS malfunctions in the following conditions:

- The light does not turn on for about three to six seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position.
- The light stays on after illuminating for about three to six seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is moving.
- The light blinks when the vehicle is running.

We recommend that an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products inspect the SRS as soon as possible.

## Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat



### **WARNING**

NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

### ***Vehicles without passenger airbag ON/OFF switch***

Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat.

### ***Vehicles with passenger airbag ON/OFF switch***

Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated

## Why didn't my airbag go off in a collision?

There are certain types of accidents in which the airbag would not deploy including rear impacts and second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an airbag should have inflated.

## ***Airbag collision sensors***

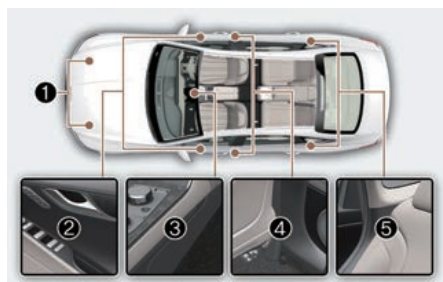
### **WARNING**

To reduce the risk of an airbag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where airbags or sensors are installed.
- Do not perform maintenance on or around the airbag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the airbags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy.
- Do not install bumper guards with non-genuine Genesis or non-equivalent parts. It may adversely affect the collision and airbag deployment performance.

To ensure correct function of the airbag system, we recommend to replace the bumper with genuine Genesis part or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.

- Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF or POWER ON position and wait for 3 minutes when the vehicle is being towed to prevent unintended airbag deployment.
- We recommend that all airbag repairs be performed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



- (1) Front impact sensor
- (2) Side impact sensor (Pressure)
- (3) SRS control module/Rollover sensor
- (4) Side impact sensor (Acceleration)
- (5) Side impact sensor (Acceleration)

### ***Airbag inflation conditions***

#### **Front airbags**



Front airbags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity of impact.

#### **Side and curtain airbags and front centre side airbag**



Side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions and side and curtain airbags and front centre side airbag are designed to inflate in side impact collisions, airbags may inflate in other types of collisions if the sensors detect a sufficient impact.

Also, the side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the airbags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended airbag deployment.

### ***Airbag non-inflation conditions***



In certain low-speed collisions, the airbags may not deploy. The airbags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.



Front airbags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated airbags would not provide any additional benefit.



Front airbags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front airbag

deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

Side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag may inflate depending on the severity of impact.



In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the airbags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any airbags.



Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to "ride" under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Airbags may not inflate in this "underride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such "underride" collisions.



Front airbags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front airbag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

The side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag may inflate in a rollover situation, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.



Airbags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

## SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS airbag warning light does not illuminate when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats, and roof rails should be performed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury or death.

### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.
- Do not place objects over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.
- Clean the airbag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the airbag covers and proper deployment of the system.
- We recommend that inflated airbags be replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- If components of the airbag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, observe safety precautions. We recommend that you consult an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.

### Additional safety precautions

**Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a collision or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

**Do not use any accessories on seat belts.**

Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a collision.

**Do not modify the front seats.**

Modification of the front seats may interfere with the operation of the Supplemental Restraint System sensing components or side airbags.

**Do not place items under the front seats.**

Placing items under the front seats may interfere with the operation of the Supplemental Restraint System sensing components and wiring harnesses.

**Do not cause impact to the doors.**

Impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position may cause the airbags to inflate.

### *Adding equipment to or modifying your airbag equipped vehicle*

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal, or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's Supplemental Restraint System.

### Airbag warning labels



Airbag warning labels are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the airbag system. Be sure to read all of the information about the airbags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owner's Manual.

## Active bonnet lift system

 if equipped

The active bonnet lift system can reduce a risk of injury to pedestrians by raising the bonnet in certain accident situations. The active bonnet lift system has the additional deformation space under the bonnet, which is made available for subsequent head impact.

### System activation

#### *Prerequisite for activation*

The Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position and the vehicle speed is between about 15.5 mph (25 km/h) and 31 mph (50 km/h).

#### Information

Active bonnet lift system repair

- If the active bonnet lift system has been activated, do not place the bonnet back by yourself. We recommend that the system be repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If you change or repair the front bumper, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

#### *System activation*

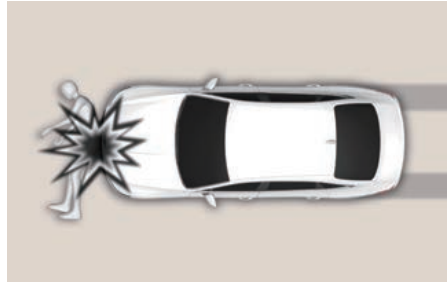
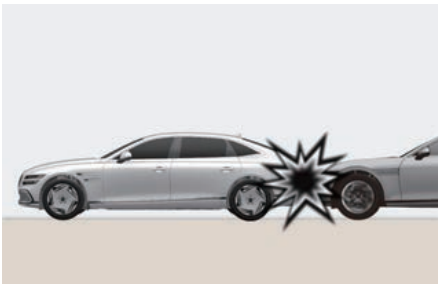
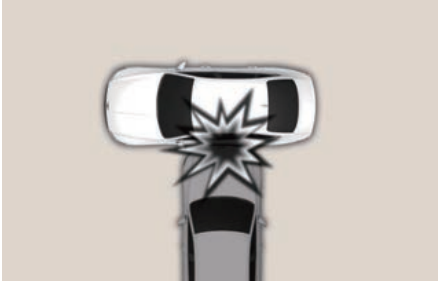
The active bonnet lift system is designed to work in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.



The system may activate when:

- The vehicle falls in the gutter or from a high place.
- An impact is detected by a frontal collision without pedestrians in front.
- Certain high-speed frontal or angled collision with a vehicle or barrier.

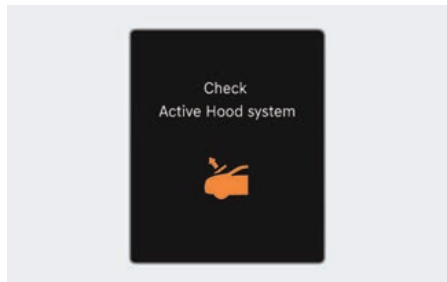
## System limitation



The system will not activate when:

- On side collisions, rear collision, and rollover accident. The vehicle can detect only frontal collision.
- The front bumper is damaged or modified.
- The vehicle is in an angled frontal collision with pedestrians.
- A pedestrian is laying on the road.
- A pedestrian has an object to absorb the shock such as a suit case, buggy or cart.

## System malfunction



If there is a problem with the system a message will appear on the cluster display. This warning message means that the protection of pedestrians by the active bonnet lift system is not working properly. If the warning message is displayed, we recommend that the system be checked as soon as possible by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

---

### *i* Information

- Do not remove or change the components and the wiring of the active bonnet system.
- Do not change the front bumper or the body structure.
- Do not install or assemble any aftermarket accessory on the front bumper or cover.
- When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres. If you drive with different tyre or wheel sizes, the active bonnet lift system may not work normally.

The above situations may cause a malfunction of the active bonnet lift system.

---

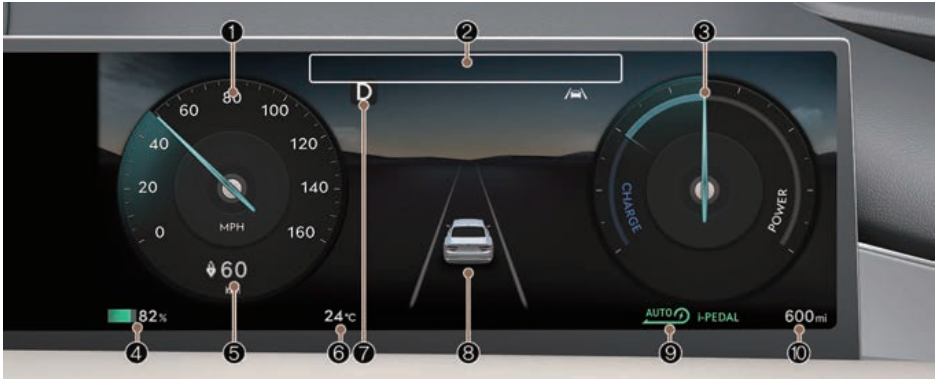


## 4. Instrument cluster

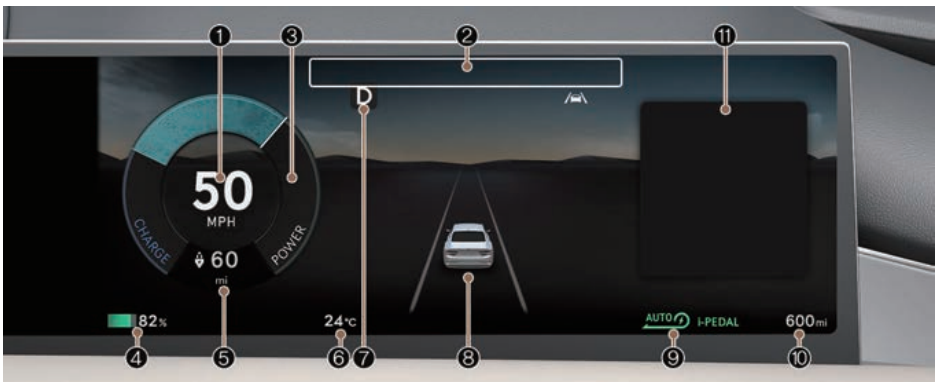
Instrument cluster .....	4-2
Instrument cluster control.....	4-3
Gauges and meters.....	4-3
Warning and indicator lights.....	4-6
Cluster display messages.....	4-18
Cluster display .....	4-23
Cluster display control.....	4-23
View modes.....	4-24
Vehicle settings (infotainment system) .....	4-27
Setting your vehicle.....	4-27

## Instrument cluster

Type A



Type B



The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.  
For more information, refer to the "Gauges and meters" section in this chapter.

- (1) Speedometer
- (2) Warning indicator light
- (3) Charge/Power gauge
- (4) Battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge
- (5) Distance to empty
- (6) Outside temperature gauge
- (7) Reduction gear shift indicator
- (8) Cluster display
- (9) Recuperative braking level indicator
- (10) Odometer
- (11) Widget

## *i* Information

Press the mode (⬢) button on the steering wheel to select between instrument cluster Type A or Type B.

## Instrument cluster control

### *Instrument panel illumination*

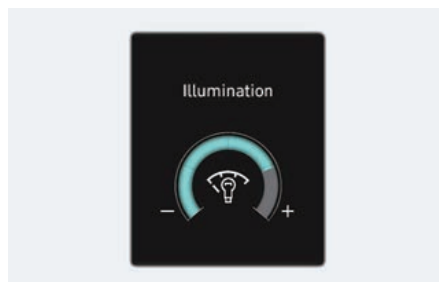


Press the illumination control switch to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

When pressing the illumination control switch, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.

## WARNING

Never adjust the instrument panel illumination whilst driving to prevent death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.

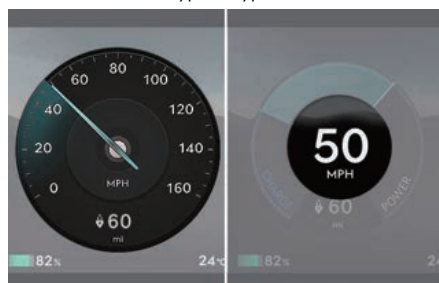


- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- When the brightness setting reaches either the minimum or maximum level, a chime sounds.

## Gauges and meters

### *Speedometer*

Type A/Type B



The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in miles per hour (MPH).

## Charge/Power gauge

Type A/Type B




The Charge/Power Gauge shows the energy consumption and recovery status of the electric motor.


- **CHARGE:** It shows the charging status of the battery, which is charged by the regenerative brakes, when depressing the brake pedal or decreasing the vehicle speed due to coasting. The more electric energy is charged, the more the gauge level turns counterclockwise.
- **POWER:** It shows the discharging status of the motor when the vehicle is accelerating. The more electric energy is discharged (used), the more the gauge level turns clockwise.

## State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery



- The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.
- The low percentage number on the indicator indicates that there is not enough energy in the high voltage battery. 100 % indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.
- When driving on highways or motorways, make sure to check in advance if the driving battery is charged enough.

When the remaining battery is lower than 20 % on the SOC gauge, the  warning light turns ON to alert you of the battery level.

When the  warning light turns ON, the vehicle can drive an additional 13-26 miles (25-50 km) depending on the driving speed, heater/air conditioner, weather, driving style, and other factors. Charging is required.

### NOTICE

When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down indicator light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON.

### Outside temperature gauge



The outside ambient temperature appears in the lower portion of the cluster display. The temperature reads in Celsius or Fahrenheit depending on the units selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

The temperature indicated on the instrument cluster may not change as quickly as the outside temperature.

Select:

- **Setup > General > Units > Temperature unit > °C/°F**

Both the temperature unit on the instrument cluster and climate control information screen is changed.

### NOTICE

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### Odometer



The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and is used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

### Distance to empty



- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining electric energy.
- The distance to empty differs depending on which drive mode (ECO/COMFORT/SPORT/SNOW) is selected.
- For more detail information, refer to "Checking electric vehicle driving information" in chapter 1.

### *i* Information

- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance because it is only an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The distance to empty may differ significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.

### *Reduction gear shift indicator*



The reduction gear shift indicator in the upper corner of the cluster display indicates the current gear or P (Park).

### *Recuperative braking level indicator*



The recuperative brake indicates the level of the regenerative braking that you set. And it also indicates Smart regenerative system's operation status.

For more details, refer to the "13" and "16" in chapter 6.

### *Warning and indicator lights*

#### *i* Information

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the vehicle. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

### *Ready indicator light*

**READY**

#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON: Normal driving is possible.
- OFF: Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking: Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***Service warning light***



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position.
  - It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates whilst driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***Power down indicator light***



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

For the safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited due to the following reasons. (Unless both Service warning light and Power down indicator light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)

- The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
- The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
- The temperature of the motor is high

### ***NOTICE***

- Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down indicator light is ON.
- When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.

### ***Charging indicator light***



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

When charging the high voltage battery.

### ***High voltage battery level warning light***



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the high voltage battery level is low.
- When the warning light turns ON, charge the battery immediately.

### ***Seat belt warning light***



This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

For more information, refer to the "Seat belt warning light" section in chapter 3.

### **Airbag warning light**



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for 3-6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

If the Airbag warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **Regenerative brake warning light**



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well. This causes the Brake warning light (red) and Regenerative brake warning light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

In this case, drive safely and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance can increase.

### **Parking brake & Brake fluid warning light**



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for 3 seconds and then goes off once the parking brake is released.
- Whenever the parking brake is applied.
- Whenever the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

#### **If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the vehicle stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. For more information, refer to the "Brake fluid" section in chapter 9. After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with the dual-diagonal braking system. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal force are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle does not stop in as short a distance if only a portion of the brake system is working.

If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional vehicle braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### WARNING

If the Parking brake & Brake fluid warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ABS.

The hydraulic braking system still operates even if there is a malfunction with the ABS.

If the ABS warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light



These two warning light illuminate at same time whilst driving:

When the ABS warning and Parking Brake warning lights are on simultaneously, it may indicate a problem with the Electronic Brake Force Distribution system.

If both the ABS warning light and the Parking Brake warning light remain illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### WARNING

When both ABS and Parking brake & Brake fluid warning lights are on, the braking system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

Avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

## NOTICE

When the ABS warning light is on or both ABS and Parking brake & Brake fluid warning lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the MDPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

### **Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) warning light**



This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the Motor Driven Power Steering.

If the MDPS warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **Master warning light**



This warning light illuminates:

If a malfunction is detected in any of the following:

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked
- LED headlight malfunction (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction
- Smart Cruise Control radar blocked
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction
- Rear Wheel Steering (RWS) system malfunction (if equipped)

If the issue is resolved, the Master warning light turns off.

### **Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light**



This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with EPB.

If the EPB warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## **i Information**

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly. This does not indicate malfunction of EPB.

### 12 V Battery charging system warning light



#### This warning light illuminates:

When there is a malfunction with electrical charging system.

#### If there is a malfunction with electrical charging system:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the vehicle off and check the electrical charging system.

If the Charging system warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Low tyre pressure warning light



#### This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more tyres are significantly underinflated. (The location of the under-inflated tyre appears on the cluster display.)

For more information, refer to the "7" section in chapter 8.

This warning light remains ON after blinking for about 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF at 3 second intervals:

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

For more information, refer to the "7" section in chapter 8.

#### **WARNING**

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

### Forward Safety warning light



#### This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Forward Safety of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when the Forward Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle


be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **This warning light blinks:**

- Red: When Forward Safety or Forward Cross-Traffic Safety function is operating.

For more information, refer to the "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

### **Emergency steering warning light**

 if equipped



### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, the yellow warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Continuously Yellow: When Forward/Side Safety is deselected or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is disabled or a malfunction is detected.
- Blinking Red: When Forward/Side Safety of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating.

If the yellow warning light is still on even after removing foreign material from the front of the sensors after Forward Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

### **Lane Safety indicator light**



### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- Green: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are satisfied.
- Grey: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.
- Yellow: When Lane Safety is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when Lane Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in chapter 7.

### **Inattentive Driving warning light**



### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Driver Attention Warning is disabled or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow indicator light remains on after the front view camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**This warning light blinks:**

- Yellow: When Driver Attention Warning recommends to take a break.

For more information, refer to the "Driver Attention Warning (DAW)" section in chapter 7.

### **Forward Attention Warning light**

 if equipped



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Red: When Forward Attention Warning is disabled or a malfunction is detected.

If the red warning light remains on after the in-cabin camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**This warning light blinks:**

- Red: When Forward Attention Warning warns the driver to keep eyes on the road.

For more information, refer to the "Forward Attention Warning (FAW)" section in chapter 7.

### **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist indicator light**

 if equipped



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is off, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow indicator light remains on after the front view camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the "Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)" section in chapter 7.

### **Lane Following Assist indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Green: When Lane Following Assist is operating.
- Grey: When Lane Following Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- White: When the steering wheel assist is cancelled.

For more information, refer to the "Lane Following Assist (LFA)" section in chapter 7.

**All Wheel Drive (AWD) warning light**



**This warning light illuminates:**

Whenever a malfunction with the AWD system is detected.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the "All Wheel Drive (AWD)" section in chapter 6.

**Intelligent Front-Lighting System warning light**

 If equipped


**AFS**

**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever a malfunction with the Intelligent Front-Lighting System is detected.

If this occurs, drive your vehicle to the nearest safe location, and turn the vehicle off and restart the vehicle. If the warning light remains on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**LED headlight warning light**

 If equipped



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with a LED headlight.

If the LED headlight warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

Driving with the LED headlight warning light on may reduce LED headlight life.

**Icy road warning light**

 If equipped



**This warning light illuminates:**

To warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the outside temperature on the outside temperature gauge is below 4 °C (40 °F), a single chime sounds, both the outside temperature gauge and Icy Road Warning indicator blink several times and then illuminates.

You can activate or deactivate the Icy Road Warning function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster > Content selection > Icy road warning**

## *i* Information

- If the Icy Road warning light appears whilst driving, avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking, or sharp turning.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the user's manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### **Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with ESC system.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**This indicator light blinks:**

Whilst ESC is operating.

For more information, refer to the "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

### **Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more information, refer to the "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

### **Immobiliser indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:**

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

- At this time, you can start the vehicle.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the vehicle.

**This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:**

When the smart key is not in the vehicle, you cannot start the vehicle.

**This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:**

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Start/Stop button is POWER ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**This indicator light blinks:**

Whenever there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**Door open indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When any door or boot is left open.

**⚠ WARNING**

Before driving the vehicle, confirm the door and boot are fully closed.

**NOTICE**

The 12 V battery may discharge if you leave the vehicle with the Door open indicator light or illuminated.

**Turn signal indicator light**



**This indicator light blinks:**

When you operate the turn signal lever.

If any of the following occur, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink.
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly.
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all.

If any of these conditions occur, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**High beam indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the headlights are on and the turn signal lever is moved to the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

**Low beam indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the headlights are on.

**Light ON indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the position lights or headlights are on.

**Rear fog indicator light**

+ if equipped



**This indicator light illuminates:**  
When the rear fog lights are on.

**High Beam Assist indicator light**

+ if equipped



**This indicator light illuminates:**  
When the high beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When High Beam Assist is ready to operate.
- Green: When High Beam Assist is operating.

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist switches the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more information, refer to the "High Beam Assist (HBA)" section in chapter 5.

**Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light**

+ if equipped



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the high beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is ready to operate.
- Green: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is operating.

If your vehicle detect oncoming or preceding vehicles, the Intelligent Front-Lighting system partially turns off the high beam LED lights.

For more information, refer to the "Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)" section in chapter 5.

### **AUTO HOLD indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- White: When you activate Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch.
- Green: When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with Auto Hold activated.
- Yellow: Whenever a malfunction with the Auto Hold is detected.

If the <sup>AUTO HOLD</sup> indicator light remains yellow whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the "Auto Hold" section in chapter 6.

### **Speed Limiter indicator light**



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the speed limiter is enabled.


For more information, refer to the "Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)" section in chapter 7.

## **Cluster display messages**

### **Low key battery**

When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position, a message may appear, indicating the internal battery of the smart key is low. Replace the smart key battery.

### **Press START button whilst turning wheel**

 if equipped

This message appears if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Press the Start/Stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

### **Check steering wheel lock system**

 if equipped

This message appears if the steering wheel does not lock normally whilst the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position.

### **Press brake pedal to start vehicle**

This message appears if the Start/Stop button changes to the POWER ON position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.

Start the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Start/Stop button.

### **Key not in vehicle**

This message appears if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you left the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position.

Always turn off the vehicle before leaving your vehicle.

**Key not detected**

This message appears if the smart key is not detected when you press the Start/Stop button.

**Press START button again**

If you cannot start the vehicle after the Start/Stop button is pressed, attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Start/Stop button, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**Press START button with key**

 if equipped

This message appears and the immobiliser indicator blinks if you press the Start/Stop button whilst the warning message, "Key not detected" appears.

**Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse**

This message appears if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

Replace the fuse before starting the vehicle.

If that is not possible, you can start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the OFF position.

**Shift to P to start vehicle**

This message appears if you try to start the vehicle in any other position except P (Park).

**i Information**

You can start the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral). But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the vehicle with the gear shifted to P (Park).


**Check virtual engine sound system**

This message appears when there is a problem with the Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**Authentication successful. The vehicle can now be started**

This message appears for 4 seconds when you place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, and it is verified whilst the vehicle is off.

You can start the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Start/Stop button. However, the vehicle starts when the Start/Stop button is pressed within 30 seconds after your fingerprint is verified and the immobiliser () indicator light is illuminated. If the immobiliser indicator light is off, your fingerprint must be verified again.

**Fingerprint authentication is locked out. Try again in XX min.**


 if equipped

This message appears for 4 seconds when fingerprint authentication has failed more than five times whilst the vehicle is off. Whilst the message is displayed, fingerprint authentication does not work even if you place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, and the vehicle does not start even if the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Try again after the time indicated in the message has passed. Start the vehicle with the smart key or digital key.

If fingerprint authentication still does not work, refer to the "Fingerprint authentication system" section in chapter 5.


### ***Place digital key on the wireless charger to keep the vehicle running***

 If equipped

If the vehicle is remotely started and Start Vehicle is deselected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system for Driver 1 and Driver 2, this message appears for up to 30 seconds when a door is opened after unlocking the doors with a digital key.

To drive your vehicle, place the registered digital key on the wireless charger, when this message appears.


### ***Scan an authorised fingerprint to keep the vehicle running***

 If equipped

If the vehicle is remotely started and **Start vehicle** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system for Driver 1 or Driver 2, this message appears for up to 30 seconds when a door is opened after unlocking the doors with a digital key or the Genesis Connected Services app.

To drive your vehicle, have an authorised fingerprint verified on the fingerprint sensor when this message appears.

### ***Place digital key on the wireless charger or scan an authorised fingerprint***

 If equipped

If the vehicle is remotely started and Start Vehicle is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system for Driver 1 or Driver 2, this message appears for up to 30 seconds when a door is opened after unlocking the doors with a digital key or the Genesis Connected Services app.

To drive your vehicle, place the registered digital key on the wireless charger, or have your fingerprint verified on the fingerprint sensor when this message appears.

### ***Vehicle is On (started by fingerprint)***


 If equipped

This message appears for up to 10 seconds if the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is not fastened after turning on the vehicle with a fingerprint. After the message appears, a warning sounds when the door is closed.

#### ***i Information***

Since the vehicle was started with a fingerprint, if the vehicle is turned off, and there is no smart key, digital key or a registered fingerprint in the vehicle, it may be difficult to start the vehicle again.

### ***Check user authentication system***

 If equipped

This message appears if there is a problem with the Digital Key or Fingerprint Authentication System. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***Battery discharging due to external / additional electrical devices***

This message appears if the 12 V battery voltage is low or if a current draw is detected that could drain the vehicle battery. Do not connect any external electronic devices to the battery system or battery discharge may occur.

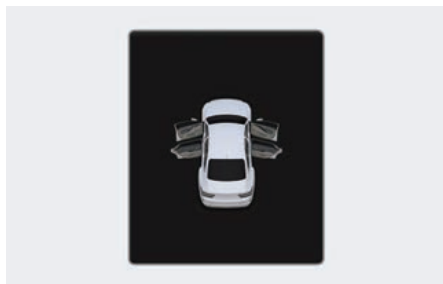
If this message appears on the cluster display and there are no other external electronic devices connected to the vehicle, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Check Rear Wheel Steering system

 if equipped

This message appears if there is a problem with the Rear Wheel Steering system or related devices. If the message still appears after the vehicle is restarted, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Door, Bonnet, Boot open indicator

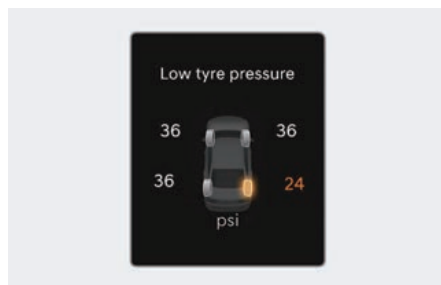


This warning appears if any door, bonnet or boot is left open. The warning will indicate which door is open on the cluster display.

#### CAUTION

Before driving the vehicle, confirm that the door, bonnet and boot are fully closed.

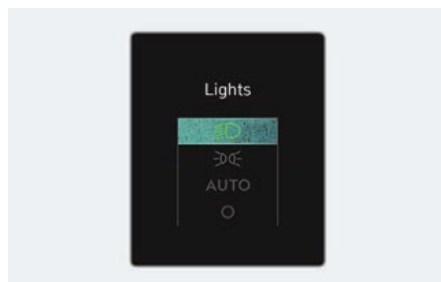
### Low tyre pressure



This warning message appears if the tyre pressure is low. The corresponding tyre on the vehicle illuminates.

For more information, refer to the "7" section in chapter 8.

### Lights

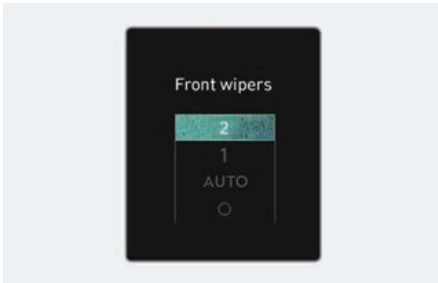


This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster > Content selection > Wiper/lights display**

### **Wiper**



This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster > Content selection > Wiper/lights display**

### **Low washer fluid**

This message appears if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.

Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

### **Check haptic steering wheel system**

This message appears if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **Check headlight**

This message appears if the headlights are not operating properly.

Replace the burned out bulb with a new one with the same wattage rating.

### **Check turn signal**

This message appears if the turn signal lights are not operating properly.

Replace the burned out bulb with a new one with the same wattage rating.

### **Check headlight LED**

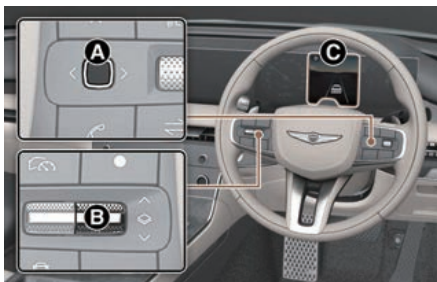
This message appears if there is a problem with the LED headlight. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.




### **Check regenerative brakes**

This message appears when the regenerative brake system does not work properly. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Cluster display

### Cluster display control

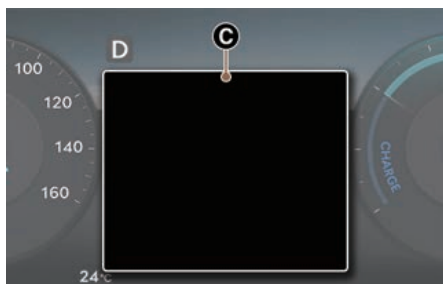


Switch		Operation	Function
[A]	 (SELECT/RESET, Optical mouse)	Press	SELECT/RESET switch for selecting pop up. SELECT/RESET switch for entering or exiting widget navigation mode.
		Press and hold	SELECT/RESET switch for selecting certain pop up. SELECT/RESET switch for hiding or showing widget mode.
		Press 2 times	SELECT/RESET switch for resetting the selected Normal view mode.
		Tap up, down, left, right	When in widget mode, the switch is used to navigate the widgets. When not in widget mode, the switch is used to change to previous or next song.
[B]	 (MODE)	Press	MODE button for changing gauge mode.
	 (UP, DOWN)	Press	UP, DOWN switch for changing View modes.

View modes

View modes	Explanation
Normal view	Show trip computer or widget on centre without background information.
Driving Assist view	Driving Assist view displays the status of the vehicle's Driver Assistance systems.
Map view	Show map and navigation related information.
Wide Map	Show map and navigation related information.
AR view	Show AR navigation and navigation related information.


The information provided may differ depending on which functions are available on your vehicle.



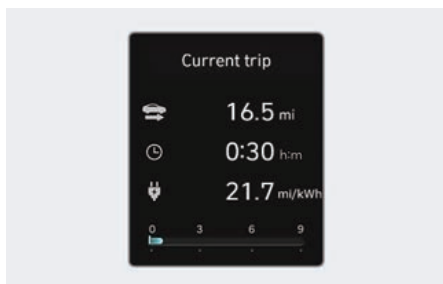
Normal view, Driving Assist view, Map view, Wide Map view, and AR view mode are displayed in the instrument cluster [C].

Normal view is also shown in the widget mode.

### Normal view


In the Normal view, using the  (Optical mouse), you may change through items in the following order.

### Current trip

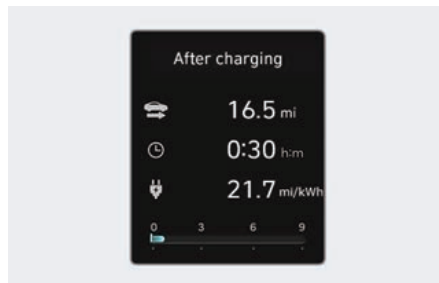


Trip distance, total driving time, average energy consumption, and instant energy consumption are displayed.


The information is combined for each ignition cycle. However, when the vehicle has been OFF for 3 minutes or longer the Drive Info screen is reset.

To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when "**Current trip**" appears.

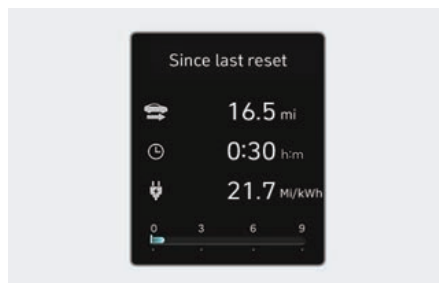
### After charging



Trip distance, total driving time, average energy consumption, and instant energy consumption after the vehicle has been recharged are displayed.


To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when "**After charging**" appears.

### Since last reset



Accumulated trip distance, total driving time, average energy consumption, and instant energy consumption are displayed.

The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

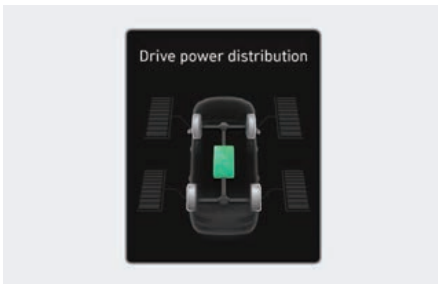
To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when "**Since last reset**" appears.

### Tyre pressure



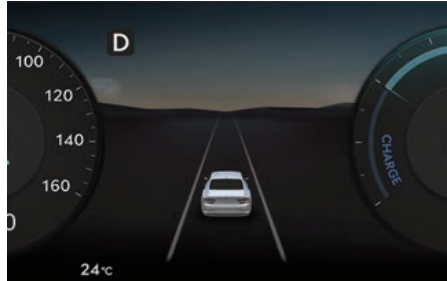
The tyre pressure of each tyre is displayed.  
For more information, refer to the "7" section in chapter 8.

### Drive power distribution



Displays information related to AWD driving force distribution.  
For more information, refer to the "All Wheel Drive (AWD)" section in chapter 6.

### Driving Assist view



Displays the state of Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, Lane Keeping Assist, Highway Driving Assist, etc., when Driving Assist view is selected.  
For more information, refer to each system information section in chapter 7.

## Vehicle settings (infotainment system)



Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provide user options for the settings including door lock/unlock features, convenience features, driver assistance, etc.

### Vehicle Settings menu

- Driver Assistance
- Drive Mode
- Active Sound Design
- Head-Up Display
- Cluster
- Climate
- Seat
- Lights
- Door
- Digital key
- Convenience

### **WARNING**

Do not operate the Vehicle Settings whilst driving. You may be distracted from the driving task and could collide.

## Setting your vehicle



1. Press the **SETUP** button on the main keyboard.
2. Select **Vehicle** and change the settings for features.

### *i* **Information**

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.



## 5. Convenience features

Accessing your vehicle.....	5-6
Smart key.....	5-6
Immobiliser system.....	5-11
Genesis digital key.....	5-11
Digital key (Smartphone).....	5-11
Digital key (Card key).....	5-17
Used vehicle/Digital key maintenance.....	5-20
Limitations of the system .....	5-21
Fingerprint authentication system.....	5-21
Fingerprint authentication system settings.....	5-22
Fingerprint authentication system operation .....	5-23
Limitations of the system .....	5-24
When purchasing a used vehicle .....	5-24
Door locks .....	5-25
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle .....	5-25
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle.....	5-26
Rear seat easy door close.....	5-29
Automatic door lock and unlock features.....	5-31
Deadlocks.....	5-31
Electronic child safety lock .....	5-31
Theft alarm system.....	5-33
Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) .....	5-34
System setting.....	5-34
System operation .....	5-34
Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) .....	5-35
System setting.....	5-35
System operation .....	5-35
Advanced Rear Occupant Alert precautions .....	5-36
Declaration of Conformity.....	5-36
Integrated memory system .....	5-37
Storing memory positions.....	5-38
Recalling memory positions.....	5-38
Resetting the system.....	5-38
Seat easy access .....	5-39
Steering wheel .....	5-40

Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) .....	5-40
Rear Wheel Steering (RWS) .....	5-40
Tilt / Telescopic steering .....	5-41
Horn .....	5-42
Heated steering wheel .....	5-42
Steering wheel grip sensor .....	5-43
Haptic warning / Steering Wheel Vibration Warning .....	5-44
Mirrors .....	5-44
Inside rearview mirror .....	5-44
Outside rearview mirrors .....	5-45
Reverse parking aid .....	5-47
Windows .....	5-48
Power windows .....	5-48
Remote window opening/closing feature (Remote Window Control) .....	5-50
Bonnet .....	5-51
Opening the bonnet .....	5-51
Closing the bonnet .....	5-52
Non-Powered Boot .....	5-52
Opening the boot .....	5-52
Closing the boot .....	5-53
Emergency boot safety release .....	5-53
Power boot .....	5-54
Power boot operating conditions .....	5-54
Operating the power boot .....	5-55
Setting the power boot .....	5-58
Resetting the power boot .....	5-58
Emergency boot safety release .....	5-58
Smart boot .....	5-59
Using smart boot .....	5-59
Deactivating smart boot .....	5-60
Detecting area .....	5-60
Electric charging door .....	5-61
Opening the electric charging door .....	5-61
Head-up Display (HUD) .....	5-62
Head-up display settings .....	5-62

## 5. Convenience features

Head-up display information .....	5-63
Precautions whilst using the head-up display .....	5-63
OTA software update .....	5-64
Downloading software .....	5-64
Approving software update .....	5-64
Preparing software update .....	5-65
Updating software .....	5-65
Exterior lights .....	5-67
Lighting control .....	5-67
High beam operation .....	5-68
Turn signals and lane change signals .....	5-69
Rear fog light .....	5-69
Battery saver function .....	5-69
Headlight delay function .....	5-70
Headlight levelling device .....	5-70
Headlight moisture removal function .....	5-70
Reverse guide light .....	5-70
Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS) .....	5-71
System settings .....	5-71
System operation .....	5-71
System malfunction and limitations .....	5-72
High Beam Assist (HBA) .....	5-74
High Beam Assist setting .....	5-74
High Beam Assist operation .....	5-74
High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations .....	5-75
Welcome system .....	5-76
Puddle light and door handle light .....	5-76
Dynamic welcome light .....	5-77
Interior light .....	5-77
Interior lights .....	5-77
Interior light AUTO cut .....	5-77
Front lights .....	5-77
Rear room lamp .....	5-78
Vanity mirror lamp .....	5-78
Rear mirror lamp .....	5-78
Glove box lamp .....	5-78

Door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Door courtesy lamp .....	5-79
Mood lamp .....	5-79
Interior lights always on .....	5-79
Boot lamp .....	5-80
Boot emergency lamp .....	5-80
Puddle light .....	5-80
Wipers and washers .....	5-81
Front windscreen wipers .....	5-81
Front windscreen washers .....	5-82
Automatic climate control system .....	5-83
Automatic heating and air conditioning .....	5-86
Manual heating and air conditioning .....	5-86
System operation .....	5-96
System maintenance .....	5-97
Windscreen defrosting and defogging .....	5-99
To defog inside windscreen .....	5-99
To defrost outside windscreen .....	5-99
Rear window defroster .....	5-100
Climate control additional features .....	5-101
Air conditioning auto-drying .....	5-101
Auto defogging system .....	5-101
Auto dehumidify .....	5-102
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used .....	5-102
Automatic controls linked to climate control settings (for driver's seat) .....	5-103
Recirculating air when entering a tunnel .....	5-103
Rear climate auto Off .....	5-104
Storage compartment .....	5-104
Centre console storage .....	5-104
Rear console storage .....	5-105
Glove box .....	5-105
Sunglass holder .....	5-105
Interior features .....	5-106
Cup holder .....	5-106
Ashtray .....	5-106
Armrest warmer .....	5-107
UV-C sterilizer system .....	5-107

## 5. Convenience features

Sunvisor .....	5-109
Rear mirror.....	5-109
Power outlet .....	5-109
USB charger.....	5-110
Wireless smartphone charging system .....	5-111
Clock .....	5-113
Coat hook .....	5-113
Floor mat anchor(s).....	5-113
Rear side window sunshades.....	5-114
Rear window sunshade .....	5-114
Luggage net holder.....	5-115
Infotainment system .....	5-116
USB Port.....	5-116
Antenna .....	5-116
Steering wheel remote controls .....	5-116
Infotainment system.....	5-117
Voice recognition.....	5-118
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology .....	5-118
BANG & OLUFSEN sound system .....	5-118

## Accessing your vehicle

### Smart key

Your Genesis Branded Vehicle uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock the all doors and the boot, and start the vehicle.



- (1) Boot open/close
- (2) Door unlock
- (3) Door lock
- (4) Remote start
- (5) Remote Smart Parking Assist (Forward/Backward) (if equipped)

### Locking your vehicle



To lock:

1. Close all doors, bonnet, and boot.
2. Have the smart key with you.
3. Touch the door handle touch sensor or press the Door lock button (3) on the smart key. The hazard warning lights blink.
4. Make sure the doors are locked by pulling the door handle.

### *i* Information

- The outside rearview mirror will unfold if **On Door Unlock** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror/light > On door unlock**
- The door handle touch sensor only operates when the smart key is within 40 in. (1 m) from the outside door handle.
- If you lock the doors using the door handle button or touch sensor, the doors are not locked under the following circumstances:
  - The smart key is in the vehicle.
  - The Start/Stop button is in POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
  - Any door is open.

If this occurs, a chime sounds for a few seconds. Check the vehicle before attempting to lock the vehicle again.

### WARNING

Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with children that are unattended or unsupervised. Children could unintentionally press the Start/Stop button or could operate the power windows or other vehicle controls or even cause the vehicle to move. This may result in serious injury or death.

## Unlocking your vehicle



To unlock:

1. Have the smart key with you.
2. Put your hand in the door handle or press the Door unlock button (2) on the smart key. All doors unlock and the hazard warning lights blink two times.

### *i* Information

- The outside rearview mirror will fold if **On Door Unlock** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror/light > On door unlock**
- The door handle touch sensor only operates when the smart key is within 40 in. (1 m) from the outside door handle.
- After unlocking the doors, the doors are locked automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### Setting the door lock/unlock prevention feature

The doors may lock or unlock if the touch sensor of the outside door handle is recognised whilst washing your car or due to heavy rain.

To prevent unintentional door lock or unlock, press the lock button on the smart key and immediately press the unlock button along with the lock button for more than 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights blink four times.

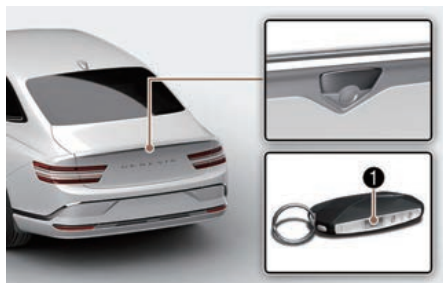
At this time, the doors are not lock or unlock even though the touch sensor is touched on the outside door handle.

To deactivate the function, press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key.

### *i* Information

- During a car wash or rain, in order to minimise unintentional operation of the touch sensor, the touch sensor may become insensitive. This is not a malfunction.
- The doors may not lock or unlock in the following situations.
  - If the touch sensor is touched with gloves on
  - If the door is suddenly approached

## Opening the boot



To open the boot:

1. Have the smart key with you.
2. Press the boot open/close button on the vehicle or press and hold the Boot open/close button (1) on the smart key for more than one second. The hazard warning lights blink two times and the boot opens.

### *i* Information

The boot open/close button only operates when the smart key is within 40 in. (1 m) from the boot.

## Remotely starting vehicle

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button on the smart key within about 33 ft. (10 m) from the vehicle.
2. Press and hold the Remote start button (4) on your smart key within 4 seconds from when you have pressed the door lock button. The vehicle starts.
3. To turn off the vehicle, press the Remote start button (4) once.

### *i* Information

- The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.
- The vehicle displays **"Smart key must be present to keep the vehicle running"** if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.
- The vehicle turns off if you do not get inside the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.
- The Remote start button (4) may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m (33 ft.) from the vehicle.
- The vehicle does not remotely start if the bonnet or boot is open.

## Remotely moving vehicle forward or backward

if equipped

Some models are equipped with the Remote Smart Parking Assist feature. With the smart key, the vehicle can be moved forward or backward remotely using the Forward or Backward button (5) on the smart key.

For more information, refer to the "Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)" section in chapter 7.

## Starting the vehicle

Your vehicle is equipped with a Start/Stop button instead of a key cylinder. You can leave your smart key in your pocket or purse when you start your vehicle.

For more information, refer to the "Start/Stop button" section in chapter 6.

### *i* Information

If the smart key is not moved for some time, the detection function for smart key operation will pause. Lift the smart key to activate the detection function again.

## NOTICE

To prevent damaging the smart key:

- Keep the smart key in a cool, dry place to avoid damage or malfunction. Exposure to moisture or high temperature may cause the internal circuit of the smart key to malfunction. This may not be covered under warranty.
- Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.
- Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.

### Using mechanical key

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.



1. Press the **GENESIS** text section of the Mechanical key to remove the case.
2. Remove the mechanical key from the case.



3. After use, reinstall the mechanical key in the reverse order of removal.

### Loss of a smart key

A maximum of two smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you should immediately take the vehicle and remaining keys to your authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or tow the vehicle, if necessary.

### Smart key precautions

The smart key may not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as radio station or airport that may interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- If your windows are tinted, especially with metallic window tint, it may cause frequency interference, reducing the smart key operating range.
- The vehicle battery is discharged.
- Connecting an external device to the power outlet and placing the smart key near the external device.
- If the smart key does not move for a certain period of time, the detection function for operating the smart key may be paused. Lifting the smart key will activate the detection function again.

If the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. To start the vehicle, press the Start/Stop button directly with the smart key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is specifically relevant when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. If possible, avoid keeping the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location such as pants or jacket pocket to avoid interference between the two devices.

### NOTICE

- Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.
- Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.

### Replacing the battery

If the smart key is not working properly, replace the battery.

Battery Type: CR2032

To replace the battery:

1. Press the button [A] to remove the keyring fixed appliance.



2. Insert a flat head screwdriver into the inner groove to remove the smart key cover.

3. Remove the old battery.

4. Install a new battery and reinstall the smart key cover in the reverse order of removal. Make sure the battery position is correct. An improperly positioned battery may discharged the battery, causing smart key failure.



If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ⚠ WARNING

This product contains a button battery.

If swallowed, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours. Keep batteries out of reach of children.

If you think batteries may have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

### *i* Information



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose used batteries in accordance with local law(s) or regulations.

## Immobiliser system

The immobiliser system helps protect your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the vehicle is disabled.

When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY, the immobiliser system indicator should come on for a moment, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognise the coding of the key.

Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY again.

In some circumstances, the vehicle system may not recognise your smart key if another smart key device is nearby or a metal object such as a key chain is causing interference with the smart key.

If this occurs, your vehicle may not start. Remove any metal objects or additional keys near the smart key before attempting to start the vehicle again.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of the key, it is recommended that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

### *i* Information

To prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential.

### NOTICE

Avoid exposing the key to moisture, static electricity, and rough handling. The immobiliser system may malfunction.

## Genesis digital key

if equipped

Genesis digital key provides convenience to the driver, which the driver can use to lock or unlock the all doors or the boot and turn on the vehicle.

## Digital key (Smartphone)

### *i* Information

- Genesis digital keys are only available on smartphone that support digital key functions, and digital key functions of smartphones are provide by smartphone manufacturers.
- Available smartphone brands and models can be found on smartphone manufactures' website or Genesis website (<https://owners.genesis.com>).
- Certain functions may not operate depending on whether the service is provided in the vehicle.
- Depending on the availability of service on the vehicle, some functions may not operated.

### Setting your smartphone

To use the digital key (smartphone), download the Genesis Intelligent Assistant App and sign up for a Genesis account and service.

### Registering your digital key (smartphone)



[A] Vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad)

1. Turn on the vehicle with a smart key and have your smart key with you in the vehicle.
2. Put the gear in P (Park), select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Pers. smartphone key** from the infotainment system.
3. After selecting **Digital key > Set up digital key** from the Genesis Intelligent Assistant App in the smart phone, register the digital key according to the guidance in the smart phone screen.
  - Ultra Wide Band unsupported smartphone
    - Place your smartphone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) with the screen facing up.
    - The NFC Antenna position on Samsung device can be found in the following path: **Setup > Connections > NFC and contactless payments**.
    - The NFC Antenna position on Google Pixel phone can be found in the following path: **Setup >**

### Connected devices > Connection preference > NFC.

- Ensure that the NFC Antenna position on the smartphone is in contact with the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
- The NFC Antenna position on Apple iPhone is located at the top of the rear [A] and Apple WATCH is located at the centre of the screen [B].



- The location of the NFC Antenna on the smartphone may vary by phone model, so please contact the smartphone manufacturer for details.
  - NFC communication may not work for some smartphones depending on the internal structure of the smartphone. Move the smartphone to the left or right of the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) to operate.
4. Press **Save** button in the infotainment system to start registration.

When the digital key (smartphone) is saved, a message appears on the infotainment system.

### *i* Information

- If you want to register a different digital key (smartphone), refer to "Deleting your digital key (smartphone)" and delete the digital key (smartphone) before re-registering. An active Digital Key can be shared through the Genesis Connected Services App with a different smartphone (Only for countries available with Genesis Connected Services).
- During the digital key saving process, the process may cancel when:
  - The smartphone is removed from the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad)
  - The infotainment system is changed
  - The vehicle is turned off
  - The gear is shifted
- The registering process does not start if a smart key is not in the vehicle.
- Some smartphones may not start the registering process depending on the internal structure. Move the smartphone to the left or right on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charger pad) and try registering the smartphone.
- Ultra Wide Band (UWB) is a radio technology that can use a very low energy level for short-range, high-bandwidth communications over a large portion of the radio spectrum.

### **Using the digital key (smartphone)**

#### **Digital key touch control**

The driver can lock or unlock the door by placing the smartphone on the outside door handle, and the vehicle can be started by placing the smartphone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).

### *i* Information

The location of the NFC Antenna on the smartphone may vary by phone model, so please contact the smartphone manufacturer for details.

#### **Digital key close proximity control**

- If you have the smartphone in possession, the doors can be locked or unlocked without touching the smartphone to the door handle, but by touching the door lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) on the door handle. Also, the vehicle can be started by pressing the Start/Stop button without placing the smartphone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
- When the smartphone and vehicle is connected by Bluetooth, the Door Lock/Unlock, Remote Start and Boot open functions are available using the App provided by the smartphone manufacturer.

### *i* Information

- The function is only available for Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital keys. To use the function, the smartphone's Bluetooth must be activated.
- The necessary distance between the smartphone and vehicle for Bluetooth connection may vary depending on the surroundings of the vehicle and smartphone.
- The Remote Start or Boot open function may not be available depending on the country or vehicle type (hybrid, plug-in hybrid or electric vehicle).

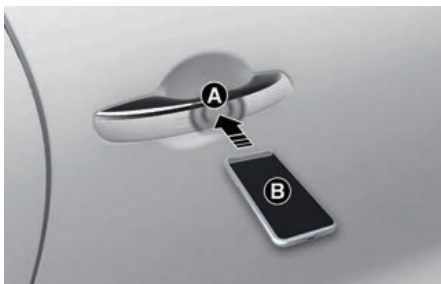
### Locking/Unlocking the doors

- Ultra Wide Band unsupported smartphone

Samsung smartphones



Apple iPhone



[A] Door handle authentication pad  
[B] NFC Antenna

- If the driver places the digital key (smartphone) NFC antenna [B] to the driver's or passenger's door handle authentication pad [A] for more than 2 seconds, the door locks or unlocks.
- Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone
  - If you touch the door lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) on the door handle with the smart phone in possession, the door locks or unlocks.

After unlocking the doors, the doors are automatically re-locked after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

If the smartphone digital key does not operate, try again after moving the smartphone away from the door handle authentication pad (more than 4 in. (0.1 m)).

### *i* Information

- You cannot lock your vehicle using the digital key (smartphone) if any of the following occurs:
  - The smart key is in the vehicle.
  - The Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
  - Any of the doors, bonnet, or boot are open.
- The door may not unlock automatically if you stay near the vehicle for several minutes with the Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone in possession.
- If the smartphone is kept in the back pocket or bag, it may cause poor Bluetooth connection, or the door lock/unlock or vehicle start-up operation may be delayed.

### Starting the vehicle

- Ultra Wide Band unsupported smartphone
  - After placing your registered digital key (smartphone) on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.
  - After starting the vehicle, the digital key (smartphone) may be removed from the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
  - NFC communication may not work for some smartphones depending on the internal structure of the smartphone. Move the smartphone to the left or right of the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) to operate.
- Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone
  - With the smartphone inside the vehicle, depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.
  - To start the vehicle remotely, use the App provided by the smartphone manufacturer to lock the vehicle with the door lock button, and press the remote start button within 4 seconds. The vehicle starts and the hazard warning lights blink.
  - Press the remote start button again to turn off the vehicle.

For more information on the basic way to start the vehicle, refer to the "Start/Stop button" section in chapter 6.

### *i* Information

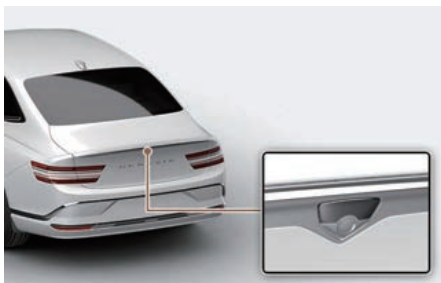
If a shared digital key (smartphone) is used for the first time, the activating time may take longer.

- Place the shared digital key (smartphone) on the door handle authentication pad until the vehicle door lock/unlock activates.
- If a shared digital key (smartphone) is first used on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charger pad), the initial start of the vehicle may fail.
- If the door lock/unlock is activated once with the shared digital key (smartphone) or the vehicle is started with the digital key (smartphone) on the vehicle authentication pad, the digital key (smartphone) is registered in the vehicle.

### WARNING

The vehicle can be started when the registered smartphone is placed on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad). Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered smartphone with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

### Operating the boot



- Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone
  - If the vehicle is locked, press the boot open button with the smartphone in possession to open the boot.
  - If you are in the detecting area behind the boot for more than 3 seconds with the smartphone in possession when **Smart Trunk** is set, the boot opens automatically.

### WARNING

The vehicle can be started when the registered smartphone is placed on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad). Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered smartphone with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

### Information

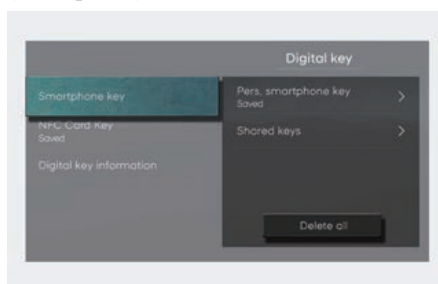
- The Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital key can be used only when the smartphone and vehicle are connected with Bluetooth.
  - The necessary distance between the smartphone and vehicle for Bluetooth connection may vary depending on the surroundings.
  - Window tinting substances may cause poor Bluetooth connection.

- If the smartphone is kept in the back pocket or bag, it may cause poor Bluetooth connection, or the door lock/unlock or vehicle start-up operation may be delayed.
- The Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital key can be used only for a certain amount of time to optimize the performance of the smartphone and vehicle battery. If you stay near the vehicle for several minutes with the Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone, the Auto Unlock feature may not operate.
- Check the smartphone's setting menu or the App provided by the smartphone manufacturer for the connection of the vehicle and smartphone.
- The Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital key can also use the NFC function.

### **Deleting your digital key (smartphone)**

Turn on the vehicle with a smart key. Have your smart key with you in the vehicle.

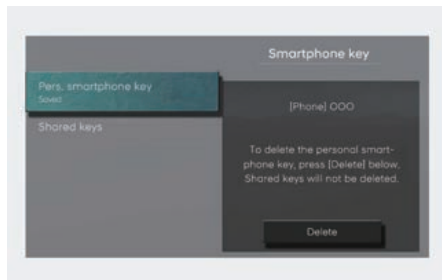
### **Deleting all registered digital key (smartphone)**



To delete all the registered digital key (smartphone), select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Delete all** from the infotainment system.

- The **Delete all** button is disabled if there is no registered digital key (smartphone).

## Deleting my registered digital key (smartphone)



To delete only my registered digital key (smartphone), select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Pers. smartphone key > Delete** from the infotainment system.

- If a shared digital key (smartphone) is registered, it cannot be deleted.
- A new smartphone can be registered after deleting the existing digital key (smartphone) from **Pers. smartphone key** menu.

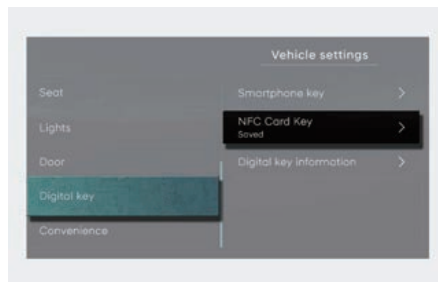
### *i* Information

- If the registered digital key (smartphone) is deleted, the digital key saved in the smartphone is also deleted.
- If the digital key is deleted from the smartphone, the digital key (smartphone) registered in the vehicle is also deleted.
- The shared digital key registered in the vehicle cannot be deleted individually.
- Even though the Genesis Connected Services App is deleted from the smartphone, the digital key saved in the smartphone is not deleted.
- Management of the digital key saved in the smartphone is available from the Digital Key App provided by the smartphone manufacturer.

## Digital key (Card key)

### *How to register Digital key (Card Key)*

To use the card key as a digital key, follow the following procedure.



[A] Vehicle authentication pad (Wireless charging pad)

1. Have both of your smart keys with you in the vehicle.
2. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > NFC Card Key**, and check whether "Use" is selected in the infotainment system.
3. Place your card key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) whilst the vehicle is on.
4. Register your card key by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > NFC Card Key > Save** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

### *i* Information

- Only one digital key (card key) can be registered to the vehicle. If it must be replaced, delete the existing card key before registering the new card key.
- To register a digital key (card key), both of your smart keys must be in the vehicle.
- Once a digital key (card key) is registered, it cannot be registered in another vehicle. It is possible to re-register it to the original vehicle.

#### **Using the digital key (card key)**

The driver can lock or unlock the door by placing the card key on the outside door handle, and the vehicle can be started by placing the card key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).



[A] Door handle authentication pad

#### **Locking/Unlocking the doors**

If the driver places the digital key (card key) to the driver's or passenger's door handle authentication pad [A] for more than 2 seconds, the door locks or unlocks.

After unlocking the doors, the doors are automatically re-locked after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

### *i* Information

You cannot lock your vehicle using the digital key (card key) if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
- Any of the doors, bonnet, or boot are open.

#### **Starting the vehicle**

After placing your registered digital key (card key) on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.

For more information on the basic way to start the vehicle, refer to the "Start/Stop button" section in chapter 6.

### **WARNING**

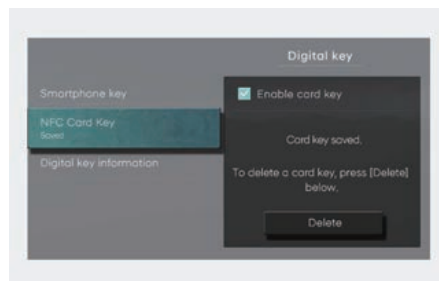
The vehicle can be started when the registered card key is placed on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad). Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered card key with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

## NOTICE

- The digital key (card key) may not work under the following conditions:
  - The digital key (card key) is not placed on the door handle authentication pad or vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) correctly.
  - The digital key (card key) is near NFC-enabled cards such as credit cards or smartphones.

If the digital key (card key) does not work, try again after moving the digital key (card key) away from the door handle authentication pad (more than 4 in. (0.1 m)).
- The digital key (card key) can be damaged by impacts. If the digital key (card key) is damaged, replace the digital key (card key) with a new one and register it again.
- Long-time exposure to high temperature may cause the digital key (card key) to malfunction. Be careful not to expose the digital key (card key) to direct sunlight or high temperature.
- Leaving the digital key (card key) on the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) whilst driving may cause the digital key (card key) to malfunction. Remove the digital key (card key) from the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) after starting the vehicle.
- Keep the digital key (card key) away from the smartphone when charging the smartphone. If the digital key (card key) is placed between the smartphone and the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) whilst the smartphone is being charged, the digital key (card key) may malfunction. For example, when charging smartphone whilst the digital key (card key) is attached to the back of the smartphone case.

## Deleting your digital key (card key)



1. Turn on the vehicle with a smart key. Have your smart key with you in the vehicle.
2. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > NFC Card Key > Delete** from the infotainment system.
  - The "Delete" button is disabled if there is no digital key (card key) registered.

## Personalized profile and vehicle settings

You can set the registered digital key (smartphone) profiles for Driver 1 and Driver 2. When you use the digital key (smartphone), the vehicle can be set to the user-defined personalized profile (includes items such as vehicle settings and audio preferences).

## Linking/Unlinking profile

### How to link user profile

1. Select **Setup > User profile > Profile settings > Link Digital Key (Smartphone)** from Settings menu in the infotainment system.
2. Select "**Link**" to connect the registered smartphone's digital key and the user's profile.
3. Follow the instructions according to the message on the infotainment system.

How to unlink user profile

Select **Setup > User profile > Profile settings**, and then deselect "**Link Digital Key (Smartphone)**" from Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Unlinking is possible only when user profile is linked.

*i* Information

- User profile cannot be linked to both Driver 1 and Driver 2 that are connected to single smartphone. Personalization operates with the recently linked user profile, and the previously linked user profile will be automatically cancelled.
- User profile link works only when the digital key is registered to the vehicle.
- Digital key (card key) cannot be linked with a user profile.
- If the user profile linked digital key in the smartphone is deleted, the digital key should be re-registered and personalized by linking the user profile again.

*Vehicle personalization operation*

- The personalization function linked with digital key works when the profile linked smartphone is placed on the outside door handle authentication pad to lock or unlock the doors.
- The profile set by the digital key can be changed manually from the infotainment system.
- The personalization function using the digital key can be operated after linking the digital key in the infotainment system profile menu.
- The personalization function works only when the vehicle is OFF or when the vehicle is started remotely. If the vehicle is not started remotely, the personalization function does not work with the digital key.

*i* Information

User profile operation according to door lock/unlock system is as follows:

Item	Personalization Operation
Initial value	Guest
Profile linked smartphone key	Linked profile
Profile unlinked smartphone key	Recently activated profile
NFC card key	
Smart key	

**Used vehicle/Digital key maintenance**

*Purchasing used vehicle*

When purchasing a used vehicle, make sure to delete the smartphone key and card key registered by the previous user.

If the card key comes with the vehicle, check whether it operates properly.

*Digital Key maintenance*

If you need to have your Digital Key system repaired or replaced, the registered smartphone key or card key can be deleted.

## Limitations of the system

- Genesis Digital Key may not operate if any of the following occurs:
  - Smartphone battery or the vehicle battery is discharged.
  - NFC or Bluetooth is turned off on the smartphone settings.
  - A credit card is near your smartphone, or a metal or thick smartphone case is used.
  - The card key is in a wallet or card holder, or overlapped with other cards.
  - There is electronic interference by other vehicles, objects, etc.
  - If you use a smartphone cover that uses wireless communication or is made of metal, remove the smartphone cover.
- The vehicle may not be controlled by the smartphone if any of the following occurs:
  - Other smartphone functions (calls, urgent calls, or audio), apps, or wireless earphones are operating.
  - The Genesis Connected Services App function such as basic setting or app launching is limited by the prior policy according to the manufacturer.

## Fingerprint authentication system

Fingerprint Authentication system provides features such as starting the vehicle, having access to personal information, unlocking profile, and exiting valet mode with a registered fingerprint.

A fingerprint must be registered in the User Profile Settings from the infotainment system to use the system.

The maximum of two fingerprints can be registered. Driver 1 and Driver 2 can register one fingerprint each.

### *i* Information

If no fingerprint is registered in the infotainment system, Fingerprint Authentication system does not operate.

## Fingerprint authentication system settings

You can set or delete a fingerprint through the infotainment system.

Follow the following procedure.

### Registering fingerprint



[A] Fingerprint sensor

1. Have both of your smart keys with you in the vehicle.
2. Turn on the vehicle and select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Fingerprint identification** from the infotainment system.
3. After entering the profile password, select **Set/Delete fingerprint > Set**.
4. Place your finger that you wish to register on the fingerprint sensor according to the instruction.
5. Following the instructions, place several parts of your fingerprint until the scanning process is complete.

When scanning is complete, the "**Saving fingerprint....**" appears and the fingerprint registering process is proceeded.

### *i* Information

- Remove all substances including protection film on the fingerprint sensor, and then register your fingerprint.
- The fingerprint registering process is cancelled when the following condition occurs:
  - The infotainment system screen is altered.
  - The Start/Stop button turns on or off.
  - The gear is shifted, and the vehicle is driven.

### Deleting fingerprint

1. Have one of your smart key with you in the vehicle.
2. Turn on the vehicle and select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Fingerprint identification** from the infotainment system.
3. After entering the profile password, select **Set/Delete fingerprint > Delete**.
4. Delete the registered fingerprint according to the message "**Delete all Driver 1 (or Driver 2) fingerprints?**".

### CAUTION

Do not participate in duplicating your fingerprint with anyone.

## Fingerprint authentication system operation

### Using features with touch control

The convenience features such as starting the vehicle, accessing personal information, unlocking profile, and exiting valet mode are available with the Fingerprint Authentication system.

When the fingerprint shape appears on the infotainment system screen, you should place your finger on the fingerprint sensor in the vehicle according to the instruction message for authorization and then you can operate the linked features without entering the password.

If the Fingerprint Authentication system does not work, pull your finger away from the fingerprint authentication sensor and then try again.

Fingerprint linked features can be turned on or off from the Settings menu.

Select: **Setup > User Profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Fingerprint Identification**

Fingerprint linked features	Characteristic
Starting vehicle	Start vehicle with fingerprint but without smart key.
Personal information access	Use features with fingerprint but without a password.
Profile unlock	
Valet mode exit	

### *i* Information

If the same fingerprint is registered for Driver 1 and Driver 2, the authentication result is linked to Driver 1, when authentication is successful.

### Starting the vehicle

Place your finger on the fingerprint sensor (1) to verify your fingerprint. After it is successfully verified, start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button (2) within 30 seconds.



Fingerprint authentication status	Light colour	Message on cluster
Standby	White	-
Succeed	Blue	"Authenticated. The vehicle can now be started"
Fail	Yellow	-
Restricted due to consecutive failure	Red	"Fingerprint authorization is locked out. Try again in XX min"

### **i** Information

- Fingerprint authorization is restricted for 1 minute, 3 minutes, or 5 minutes when failed every 5 times.
- For more information on how to start your vehicle with the Start/Stop button, refer to the "Start/Stop button" section in chapter 6.
- If you are in the vehicle for an extended period without starting the vehicle, the fingerprint sensor may turn off. If this occurs, depress the brake pedal and verify your fingerprint again when the fingerprint sensor illuminates.

### Limitations of the system

- Fingerprint Authentication system may not work when:
  - Fingerprint authentication is performed with an unregistered fingerprint.
  - The fingerprint is not placed on the centre of the fingerprint sensor.
  - The fingerprint sensor or fingerprint is wet or dirty.
  - The film on the sensor is not removed.
  - The registered fingerprint is wounded or swollen.
  - The hand is overly dry.
  - The sensor is touched shortly.
- If fingerprint authentication fails repeatedly, fingerprint recognition is temporarily restricted. You should try it later or try other methods such as inputting your password.
- All registered fingerprints may be deleted during repair due to a malfunction of the fingerprint authentication system or related parts. Have your smart key when you visit an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- You cannot use the fingerprint sensor when the vehicle is discharged.
- Gently place your finger on the fingerprint sensor. Fingerprint authentication attempts with excessive force may fail.

### **WARNING**

Do not register children's fingerprints in the vehicle.

If you register children's fingerprints and leave them in the vehicle, unexpected accidents may occur.

---

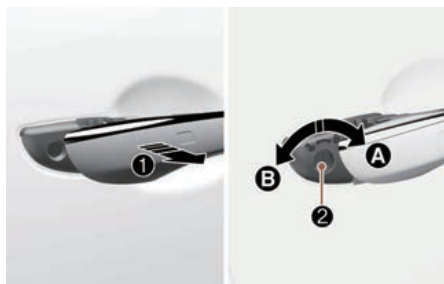
### When purchasing a used vehicle

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all of the registered fingerprints in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profile.

## Door locks

### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

#### Using mechanical key



[A] Lock  
[B] Unlock

1. Pull the door handle (1).
2. Insert the mechanical key into the key cylinder (2) and rotate counterclockwise to lock [A] the vehicle and clockwise to unlock [B] the vehicle.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

#### NOTICE

Do not apply excessive force to the door and door handle.

#### Using smart key

For more information, refer to the "Smart key" in the previous pages.

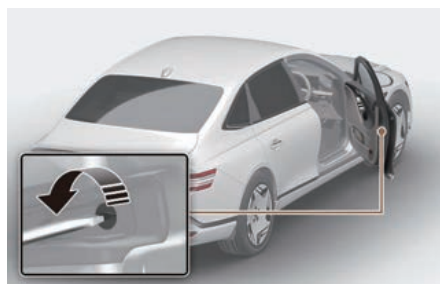
#### *i* Information

- In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and

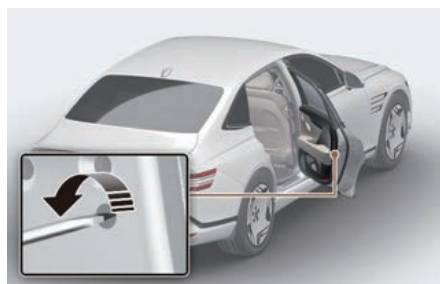
prevent damage to system components.

#### *In case of an emergency*

Front



Rear



Doors without an outside key hole can be locked as follows:

1. Open the door.
2. Insert a small blade tool (for example, screwdriver or similar) into the emergency door lock hole and turn it counterclockwise for left side door, or turn it clockwise for right side door.
3. Close the door securely.

#### *i* Information

If the electrical power door lock switch does not operate (for example, dead car battery) and the boot is closed, you will not be able to open the boot until power is restored.

### Power door latch

 if equipped



If a door does not close completely but is closed to the first detent position, the door closes automatically.

#### CAUTION

To reduce the risk of injury:

- Before closing the door, check there are no obstructions in the path of the door.
- Keep your fingers away from the edge of the door or they may become caught when the power door latch operates.

### Resetting the power door latch

The power door latch may need to be reset after the battery is discharged or disconnected or a related fuse has been replaced or disconnected.

To reset the power door latch, perform the following steps:

1. Close the door to the first detent position.
2. Open the door.

When this is complete, the power door latch is reset.

If the power door latch do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

### With the door inside handle



#### Front door

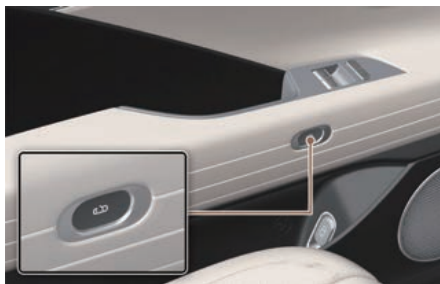
If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door is unlocked and opened.

#### Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door is unlocked. If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door is opened.

### With the rear door inside button

#### Using the door open button



Press the door open button from inside the vehicle to open the door.

- Always close and lock the doors when the vehicle is moving. Locking the doors prevent others from entering the

vehicle whilst the vehicle is stopped or moving slowly.

- If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the central door lock switch is pressed.

### NOTICE

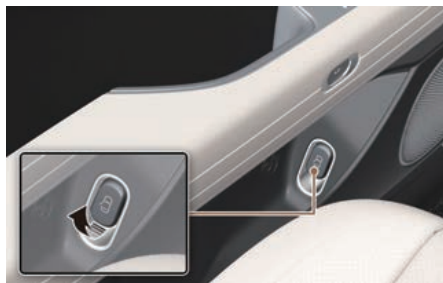
- Do not open the door excessively multiple times using the door open button. It may engage the protection circuit and temporarily disable the button.
- If equipped with the Easy Door Close feature, the door will open about 7.9 in. (20 cm). Check for any obstacles before opening the door.

### ⚠ WARNING

Only open the door with the door open button when the vehicle has completely stopped.

The door may open whilst the vehicle is in motion if you press the button.

### Opening the door manually



If the door does not open with the door open button due to battery discharge or vehicle breakdown, pull up the emergency open lever as much as possible under the door pocket twice to open the door. You may use the emergency open lever even if there is no problem with the door open button.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Do not apply excessive force on the door, door handle and emergency open lever to avoid damage.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.  
Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury.
- If you depress the Start/Stop button or press the door lock button whilst the smart key is located inside the vehicle, all the doors can be locked. Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death.
- Do not leave the elderly, children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to the elderly, unattended children or animals who cannot escape from the vehicle.  
Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.
- Do not pull the emergency open lever whilst the vehicle is in motion.  
If a door opens whilst driving, it may lead to a serious injury or death.

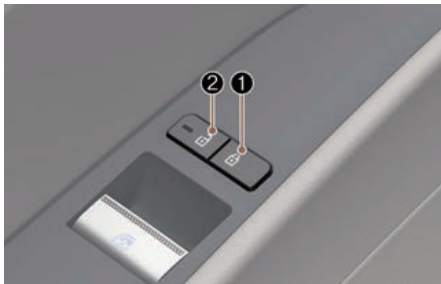
## With the central door lock/unlock switch


### Driver and passenger door

Driver's door




Front passenger's door



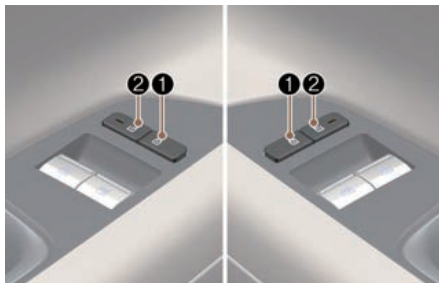
When pressing the  portion (1) on the switch, all vehicle doors are locked.

- If any door is opened, the doors are not locked even though the lock switch (1) of the door is pressed.
- If the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened, the doors are not locked even though the lock switch (1) of the door is pressed.

When pressing the  portion (2) on the switch, all vehicle doors are unlocked.

When all vehicle doors are locked, the indicator lights on the driver's door and passenger's door turn off. If any door is unlocked, the indicator turns on.

### Rear door



When the lock switch (1) is pressed, the corresponding door will lock.

When the unlock switch (2) is pressed (door indicator light ON), the corresponding door will unlock.

### Information

If all doors are locked with the front door lock button, and the electronic child safety lock button (if equipped) in the driver's seat is turned ON (indicator light ON), the rear doors cannot be opened. If you want to open the rear doors:

- Unlock the door with the smart key from outside.
- Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then unlock the doors with the driver's or passenger's central door lock switch. (Electronic child lock OFF → Door unlocked)
- Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then pull the rear inner door handle twice.

### **WARNING**

- Always close and lock the doors whilst the vehicle is moving. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a collision increases.
- Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door whilst the vehicle is moving.

### **WARNING**

Do not leave the elderly, children, or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot and the elderly, unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle may be seriously injured or killed.

### **WARNING**

Always park your vehicle properly.

Depress the brake, shift the gear to the P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the key with you.

### **WARNING**

Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians approaching the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.

## Rear seat easy door close

 if equipped



Rear door closes automatically with a door open button or sensor.

### **Information**

If the vehicle is equipped with the easy door close feature, pressing the door open button whilst the door is closed will automatically open the door about 7.9 in. (20 cm).

### ***Closing door with button or sensor***

Rear door handle/Front centre console



Rear door trim/Rear armrest console



Touch the lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) of the rear door handle from the outside, or press the open button from the rear door trim, or press the close button on the console.

### ***Resetting rear seat easy door close***

To reset the rear seat easy door close feature, close the door to the second detent position and open the door again.

Reset the rear seat easy door close feature in the following conditions.

- The discharged battery is recharged.
- The disconnected battery is reconnected.
- Related fuses are disconnected and reinstalled.

### **CAUTION**

If the rear seat easy door close feature does not work properly after reset, we recommend that you contact an

authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **i Information**

- The following situations are normal and may happen when using the rear seat easy door close feature.
  - Before resetting rear seat easy door close, opening and closing the door manually may require more strength.
  - When the door opens about 7.9 in. (20 cm) and stops, or is automatically opened or closed, a sound may occur due to motor rotation.
  - If the door is repeatedly opened and closed manually, a noise may sound due to the motor brake.
  - When the battery is low, starting the vehicle whilst the door is open may cancel the initial setting of the rear seat easy door close feature. When cancelled, manually opening and closing the door requires more force. Pressing the door close button or closing the door manually will normalize the setting of the rear seat easy door close feature.
- During cold weather, opening and closing the door manually may require more strength due to low lubrication. If the door can be automatically closed with the door button or key, the doors are working properly.

### **WARNING**

If you stay in the vehicle for a long time whilst the weather is very hot or cold, there are risks of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when someone is in the vehicle.

## Automatic door lock and unlock features

Your vehicle is equipped with features that will automatically lock or unlock your vehicle based on settings you select in the infotainment system.

### *Auto Lock Enable on speed*

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle exceeds 9 mph (15 km/h).

### *Auto Lock Enable on shift*

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

### *Auto Unlock On shift to P*

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is shifted back into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

### *Auto Unlock Upon vehicle off*

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is turned off.


## *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## *Additional unlock safety feature airbag deployment*

As an additional safety feature, all doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the airbags to deploy.

## Deadlocks

 if equipped

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlock system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked by using the smart key. To unlock the vehicle, the smart key must be used again.

## Electronic child safety lock



When the electronic child safety lock button is pressed and the indicator light on the button illuminates, the rear doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

- The rear door window cannot be opened or closed whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON).

For more information, refer to the "Windows" section in this chapter.

- Electronic child safety lock does not automatically turn on unless the driver presses the electronic child safety lock button.

- If 3 minutes passes after the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position, the indicator on the button turns off, and the driver cannot turn off electronic child safety lock by pressing the button. To turn off the function, press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position, and then press the electronic child safety lock button.
- If the power is supplied again after removing the battery or battery is discharged whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position, press the button once more to match the state of the indicator on the electronic child safety lock button and the actual state of the electronic child safety lock function.
- If the airbag is activated whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON), the rear doors will unlock automatically.
- Vehicles equipped with the electronic child safety lock feature is not provided with a manual child safety lock.

### **WARNING**

Never allow children to open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is moving. They may fall out of the vehicle. Be sure to use the electronic child safety lock whenever children are in the vehicle.

---

### **NOTICE**

#### **Child safety lock error**

When electronic child safety lock does not work even though the button is pressed, the message "**Child safety lock error**" may be displayed and an alarm sounds. If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

---

### ***Safe Exit Assist (with electronic child safety lock)***

Safe Exit Assist helps prevent the rear occupant from opening the rear door. When an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after the vehicle stops, the rear doors will not unlock even when the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button.

For more information, refer to the "Safe Exit Assist (SEA)" section in chapter 7.

## Theft alarm system

This system helps protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn sounds and the hazard warning lights blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The boot is opened without using the smart key.
- The bonnet is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the boot. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the boot from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by touching the touch sensor on the outside of the door handle with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, boot, or bonnet without using the smart key causes the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System is not set if the bonnet, boot, or door is not fully closed. If the system is not set, check the bonnet, boot, or doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to modify this system or add other devices to it.

### *i* Information

- Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If a door is opened after the system is armed, the alarm is activated.
- If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the vehicle by directly pressing the Start/Stop button with the smart key.
- If the system is disarmed by unlocking the vehicle, but a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked and the system is rearmed automatically.

### *i* Information



Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:

- WARNING
- SECURITY SYSTEM

## Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)

Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

### System setting

To use Rear Occupant Alert, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Rear occupant alert**

#### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### System operation

When you turn off the vehicle and open the driver's door after opening and closing the rear door, the "**Check rear seats for passengers and belongings**" warning message appears on the cluster display.

#### *i* Information

To turn the warning message off, press the **OK** button.



#### **WARNING**

Always check the rear seats before you leave the vehicle.

The Rear Occupant Alert system does not actually detect the presence of objects or occupants in the rear seat but just informs you to check the rear seat by using the record of the rear door opening and closing.

#### *i* Information

The record of the rear door opening and closing resets only when the driver turns the vehicle off and locks the vehicle door.

Even if the rear door has not been reopened, an alert may occur if the door record is not reset. For example, if the driver opens the door and exits the vehicle again without locking the door after the Rear Occupant Alert operates, the alert may occur again.

## Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)

 if equipped

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

### System setting

To use Advanced Rear Occupant Alert, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Rear occupant alert**

### Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### System operation

- First alert

When you turn off the vehicle and open the driver's door after opening and closing the rear door, the "**Check rear seats for passengers and belongings**" warning message appears on the cluster display.

- Second alert

After the first alert, the second alert operates when any movement is detected in the vehicle after the driver's door is closed and all the doors are locked. The horn will sound for about 25 seconds. Also, a text message is sent to members of Genesis Connected Services (if equipped). If the system continues to detect a movement, the alert operates up to 8 times.

Unlock the doors with the smart key to stop the alert.

- The system detects movement in the vehicle for 10 minutes after the door is locked.

### Information

- The second alert is available for vehicles equipped with the ROA sensor.
- The second alert is activated only after the prior activation of the first alert.
- If you do not want to use Advanced Rear Occupant Alert, press the **OK** button on the steering wheel when the first alert is displayed on the cluster display. Doing so deactivates the second alert one time.



[A] Cluster  
[B] Steering wheel

- If the vehicle is started remotely (if equipped with Remote Start), inside movement detection will stop.
- Members of Genesis Connected Services can stop the alert through the app.

### Advanced Rear Occupant Alert precautions

- Make sure that all the windows are closed. If any window is open, the alert may occur when the sensor has detected any movement (for example, wind or bugs).
- Movement is not detected in areas other than the rear seats.
- If all doors are locked with a passenger in the vehicle, the alert may occur.
- The alert may occur if there is an impact on the vehicle.
- If boxes or objects are stacked in the vehicle, the system may not detect passengers. The alert may occur if the boxes or objects fall off or move.
- The alert may occur with the doors locked if the vehicle is pushed or shaken, or washed, or if there is sufficient external vibration or noise.
- The alert may occur when there are metallic or liquid objects in the vehicle.



#### WARNING

Even if your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA), always check the rear seats area before you leave the vehicle.

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) may not operate when:

- Movement does not continue for a certain period of time or the movement is small.
- A child is not seated in a child restraint system.
- The detection signal is weak because the signal is obscured by a seat or CRS (for example, child is restrained in the forward-facing CRS).
- The rear passenger is a child over 6 years.
- The rear passenger is covered with a fabric containing metallic substance such as a blanket.

- An object in the vehicle blocks the sensor.
- The sensor is contaminated by foreign material.
- Attaching objects or modifying the interior ceiling, or the interior ceiling is deformed or damaged.
- There are electronic interference around the vehicle.
- Other environmental reasons that may affect the system.

### Declaration of Conformity

The radio frequency components (ROA Radar Sensor) complies:

- For Europe and CE certified countries



Trade mark or Trade name : Hyundai Mobis  
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 06141,  
Republic of Korea

M/Name : ICR010

Frequency : 60-64 GHz  
Maximum Output Power : 5 dBm

The antenna(s) must be installed such that a minimum separation distance of at least 20 cm is maintained between the radiator (antenna) and all persons at all times. This device must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Hereby, Hyundai Mobis Co.,Ltd declares that the radio equipment type ICR010 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:  
[http://www.mobis-as.com/product\\_certificate.do](http://www.mobis-as.com/product_certificate.do)

- For United Kingdom

# UK CA

MOBIS Parts Europe N.V.  
Ansley Hall Drive, Birch Coppice Business Park  
Dordon, Tamworth. B78 1SQ, UK

M/Name : ICR010

Frequency : 60-64 GHz  
Maximum Output Power : 5 dBm

Simplified UK Declaration of Conformity

Hereby, Hyundai Mobis Co.,Ltd declares that the radio equipment type ICR010 is in compliance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:  
[http://www.mobis-as.com/product\\_certificate.do](http://www.mobis-as.com/product_certificate.do)

## Integrated memory system

 if equipped



The Integrated Memory System for the seat allows the occupant to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's seat
  - Seat position
  - Steering wheel position (power adjustment)
  - Outside rearview mirror position
  - Head-Up Display (HUD) position (if equipped)
- Passenger's seat
  - Seat position (if equipped)
- Rear seat
  - Seat position (if equipped)

### WARNING

Never attempt to operate the Integrated Memory System whilst the vehicle is moving to prevent serious injury or death.

### Information

- If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings are erased.
- If Integrated Memory System does not operate normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Storing memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
2. Adjust the seat position, outside rearview mirror, steering wheel, and head-up display to the desired position.
3. Press the **SET** button. The system beeps once and "**Press button to save settings**" appears on the infotainment system.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds. The system beeps twice when successfully stored.
5. "**Settings 1 (or 2) saved**" appears on the infotainment system.

## Recalling memory positions

1. Make sure the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position and the gear is in P (Park).
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system beeps once, and then the seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position, and head-up display position are automatically adjusted to the stored positions.
3. "**Settings 1 (or 2) applied**" appears on the infotainment system.

### *i* Information

- If you press the **SET** button or the corresponding IMS memory (1 or 2) for which the settings are being recalled, the IMS temporarily deactivates.  
If you press the **SET** button or the number 1 button with the number 1 setting in operation, the IMS temporarily deactivates.  
If you press the number 2 button, the IMS memory settings activate according to number 2.

- If you adjust the seat whilst IMS is adjusting the seat and the mirror, the system stops the adjustments.

## Resetting the system

Take the following procedures to reset integrated memory system, when it does not operate properly.

### *Resetting the Integrated Memory System*

1. Make sure that the gear is in P (Park) and the vehicle is DRIVE READY, and then open the corresponding door of the seat.
2. Adjust the corresponding seat and seatback to the foremost position.
3. Press the number 1 button and push forward the seat movement switch over 2 seconds simultaneously.
4. Release the number 1 button and the seat switch when a beep sounds.

### *Whilst resetting the Integrated Memory System*

A notification sound is heard and the seat is adjusted to the most reward position. Then the seat and seatback move to the default centre position.

The resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop if:

- The memory button is pressed.
- The seat control switch is operated.
- The gear is shifted out of P (Park).
- The driving speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h).
- The corresponding door is closed.

## NOTICE

- If the seat movement or notification sound stops before the process is complete, restart the resetting procedure.
- Before resetting the IMS, make sure there are no objects on or around the seat.

## Seat easy access

The system moves the seat, steering wheel and seat bolster automatically as follows:

- Exiting the vehicle:

The driver's seat and steering wheel move as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park), and the driver's door open.

- Driver seat: Moves rearward depending on the distance selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
- Steering wheel: Moves upward
- Seat bolster (if equipped): Adjusted to the default position.

## i Information

- On a regular basis, the steering wheel moves forward to adjust its location by itself.
- The driver's seat or the front passenger's seat may not move rearward if there is not enough space between the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat and the second row seats.

- Entering the vehicle:

The driver's seat and steering wheel move back to its original position when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position or whilst carrying the smart key, the driver's door is closed with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

- The passenger seat moves forward or rearward when the passenger side door is closed or opened. (if equipped)
- The rear seat moves rearward when each door is opened. (if equipped)
- You can set the Seat Easy Access function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- Driver seat

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Driver seat easy access > Normal/Extended/Off**

- Steering wheel

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Steering easy access**

- Passenger seat (if equipped)

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Front passenger seat**

- Left rear seat (if equipped)

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Left rear seat**

- Right rear seat (if equipped)

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Right rear seat**

## i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Steering wheel

### Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)

The system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the vehicle is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you can still steer the vehicle, but it requires increased steering effort.

If you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

#### NOTICE

If Motor Driven Power Steering (⚠) warning light and the message "**Check motor driven power steering**" appear on the instrument cluster, you can continue to steer the vehicle, but it requires increased effort. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

#### *i* Information

During normal vehicle operation:


- The steering effort may be high immediately after pressing the Start/Stop button to the DRIVE READY position.

This happens as the system performs the MDPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel effort returns to its normal condition.

- When the battery voltage is low, you may have to use more effort to steer. This is a temporary condition and returns to normal condition after charging the battery.

- A click noise may be heard from the MDPS relay after the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY or OFF position.
- Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at low speeds.
- When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. When the temperature rises, the noise disappears.
- When an error is detected from MDPS, the steering effort assist function is not activated. Instrument cluster warning lights may illuminate or the steering effort may be high. If these symptoms occur, drive the vehicle to a safe location as soon as possible. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

### Rear Wheel Steering (RWS)

 if equipped

The Rear Wheel Steering system helps increase vehicle manoeuvrability and improve vehicle stability by using an electric motor to control the steering angle of the rear wheels according to the driving speed of the vehicle and the steering angle of the front wheels.

When driving at low speed, turning radius is reduced by steering the rear wheels in the opposite direction of the front wheels to increase manoeuvrability. At high speeds, the rear wheels are steered in the same direction as the front wheels to improve stability when turning and changing direction.

## NOTICE

When using snow chains, be sure to turn off the Rear Wheel Steering by selecting **"Snow chains installed"** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to protect the vehicle. After removing the snow chain, deselect **"Snow chains installed"** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. If it is not deselected, Rear Wheel Steering will not operate. For more details on setting the menu, refer to "Winter driving" section in Chapter 6.

## CAUTION

- If there is a problem with the Rear Wheel Steering system, a warning light and warning message appears on the instrument cluster and Rear Wheel Steering system stops working. If the warning light and warning message are still displayed even when the vehicle is stopped and the vehicle is restarted, have the vehicle checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If the Rear Wheel Steering system operation is stopped whilst the rear wheels are not straight, the vehicle may lean to one side whilst driving.

## i Information

With no warning light on the instrument cluster, the following conditions are normal:

- Immediately after starting the vehicle, Rear Wheel Steering system performs diagnostics and operates normally after about 2 seconds.
- When turning the vehicle on or off, Rear Wheel Steering system can operate for about 2 seconds even though the steering wheel is not steered to check system condition.

- Motor noise may be heard when you steer the vehicle whilst stopping or driving at low speed.
- In driving conditions in which the rear wheels are steered in the same direction as the front wheels when (⊕) is on the instrument cluster by pressing the Lane Following Assist button on the steering wheel or Highway Driving Assist function is activated, keep the rear wheels straight to improve Lane Keeping Assist performance.
- When the Remote Smart Parking Assist function is activated, the Rear Wheel Steering system will stop and the rear wheels will remain straight.
- If **'Snow chains installed'** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the Rear Wheel Steering system stops operating, and the rear wheels are straightened.

## Tilt / Telescopic steering

Adjust the steering wheel toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel up and down to be in the locked position.

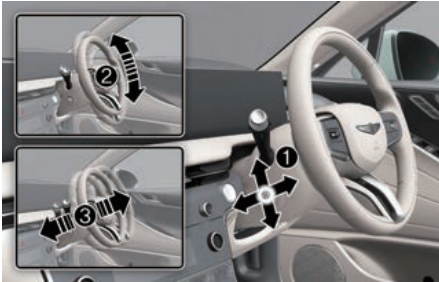
## WARNING

Never adjust the steering wheel whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

## NOTICE

Whilst adjusting the steering wheel height, please do not push or pull it hard since the fixture can be damaged.

### Power adjustment



To adjust:

- Push the switch (1) up and down to adjust the angle (2).
- Push the switch (1) forward or rearward to adjust the height (3).

#### NOTICE

Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.

### Resetting the steering wheel power adjustment

If adjustment is no longer possible within the operable range whilst adjusting the steering wheel position (angle or height), reset as follows:

1. From the position the steering wheel has stopped, push the control switch (1) for 10 seconds in the direction you were adjusting the steering wheel. The steering wheel moves in the direction the control switch is pushed.
2. Continue pushing the switch (1) for at least 2 seconds after the steering wheel has stopped. Resetting is completed after the operational range is recognised.

If the adjustment is still not possible after resetting the steering wheel power adjustment, we recommend that the system be inspected by

authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Horn



To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn operates only when this area is pressed.

#### NOTICE

Do not strike the horn severely or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

### Heated steering wheel

 if equipped



Whilst the vehicle is running, touch the heated steering wheel icon to warm the steering wheel.

### **Manually adjusting temperature**

Each time you press the heated steering icon, the temperature changes as follows:

- Off → High → Low
- Pressing the icon when temperature is low, the heated steering wheel turns off.

### **Automatically adjusting temperature**

- When high is manually selected, the heated steering wheel automatically changes to the low position after 30 minutes. You can turn off the heated steering wheel by pressing the icon to the OFF position.
- When low is manually selected, the heated steering wheel is not be controlled manually.

### **Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings**

The heated steering wheel automatically controls the steering wheel temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

- To use this feature, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heating/Ventilation > Automatic controls linked to climate control settings > Steering wheel heating**

- If you press the heated steering wheel icon when the feature is set, you must control the heated steering wheel manually.
- The heated steering wheel defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the DRIVE READY position. However, if the Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings feature is ON, the heated steering wheel turns on and off depending on the outside temperature.

### **i Information**

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the user's manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### **NOTICE**

- Do not install any cover or accessories on the steering wheel to prevent damage to the heated steering wheel system.
- Do not strike the steering wheel grip surface with sharp sharp-pointed objects. This may damage the heating element in the steering wheel.
- Do not clean the steering wheel surface using the following products.
  - Organic solvents such as thinner, alcohol, and petrol
  - Chemical products such as leather cleaner, coating agent, and wax

### **Steering wheel grip sensor**

Whilst driving the vehicle with the Driver Assistance system on, it detects whether the driver is holding the steering wheel and displays the Hands-off warning when the driver is not holding the steering wheel. Refer to "Hands-off warning" from "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)", "Lane Following Assist (LFA)", and "Highway Driving Assist (HDA)" sections in chapter 7 for details.

In the following situations, the sensor may fail to detect the driver's hands although the driver is holding the steering wheel.

- When the driver is wearing gloves.
- When accessories such as a cover is attached on the steering wheel.
- When electronic device is touching the steering wheel.

- When the steering wheel is wet.

### **CAUTION**

The steering wheel sensor may not work properly if the following precautions are not followed.

- Do not modify the steering wheel cover.
- Do not attach accessories on the rim of the steering wheel.
- Do not touch the steering wheel with electronic devices. (for example, laptop, tablet PC, etc.)
- Do not touch the steering wheel with metallic or conductive objects. (for example, tumbler, soda can, etc.)
- Do not excessively wet the steering wheel. (for example, spilled water, wet tissue, vapour from steam wash)

## Haptic warning / Steering Wheel Vibration Warning

If equipped with haptic steering wheel, the Driver Assistance system vibrates the steering wheel to warn the driver when the system indicates hazardous situations.

### *Setting haptic warning*

Whilst the vehicle is running, select:

**Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Haptic warning** in the infotainment system.

See description of each function from "Driver assistance system" in chapter 7 for details.

## Mirrors

### Inside rearview mirror

Before driving your vehicle, check to see that your inside rearview mirror is properly positioned. Adjust the rearview mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centred.

### **WARNING**

Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects on the rear seat or in the boot that may interfere with your vision through the rear window.

### **WARNING**

To prevent serious injury during a collision or deployment of the airbag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.

### **WARNING**

Never adjust the mirror whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.

### **NOTICE**

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as this may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

### Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM)



[A] Sensor

When the vehicle is running, the glare from vehicle headlights behind you is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the mirror automatically goes to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

### Outside rearview mirrors



Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the mirror adjustment control switch. Adjust the outside rearview mirrors to your desired position before driving.

#### WARNING

The left and right outside rearview mirror are convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use the inside rear view mirror or turn your head and look directly to determine the actual distance of other vehicles prior to changing lanes.

#### WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

#### NOTICE

- Do not scrape ice off the mirror face. This may damage the surface of the glass.
- If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.
- Do not clean the mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel, or other petroleum based cleaning products.

### Adjusting the rearview mirrors



1. Press the L (Left side) or R (Right side) button (1) to select the rearview mirror you want to adjust.
2. Use the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left, or right.
3. After adjustment, press both L and R button off (indicator light off) to prevent unintended adjustment.

#### NOTICE

- The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, because this can damage the motor.
- Do not adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand to prevent damage to the motor.

### Folding the rearview mirrors

#### Folding button

Press the button to fold or unfold the outside rearview mirrors.



#### Infotainment system setting

- Enable on door unlock  
If **Setup > Vehicle > Welcome mirror/light > Enable on door unlock** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system,
  - The mirror folds or unfolds when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
  - The mirror folds or unfolds when the door is locked or unlocked by the touch sensor on the outside door handle.
- Enable on driver approach  
If **Setup > Vehicle > Welcome mirror/light > Enable on driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the mirror unfolds when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

#### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

**NOTICE**

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the vehicle is not running.

**NOTICE**

Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. It could cause motor failure.

**Reverse parking aid**

 if equipped



When the gear is shifted to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirror(s) rotates downward to aid with driving in reverse.

The state of the outside rearview mirror button (1) determines whether or not the mirrors move:

**How it works**

- When the L or R button (1) is pressed (indicator lights ON), both outside rearview mirrors move.
- If the L and R buttons (1) are not pressed (indicator lights OFF), both outside rearview mirrors does not move.

The outside rearview mirrors automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Start/Stop button is pressed to either the OFF position or the POWER ON position.
- The gear is shifted to any position except R (Reverse).
- The outside rearview mirror adjustment button is not selected.

**Reverse parking aid user settings mode**

You may change the angle of the outside rearview mirror if it is difficult to see the rear view with the basic downward mirror angle provided when reversing.

When the vehicle is first delivered, the set downward angle of the left and right outside rearview mirror are different to ensure driver visibility.

1. Make sure the vehicle is stopped.
2. Depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to R (Reverse). When L (Left) or R (Right) button is pressed, both outside rearview mirror angle will move downward to the basic set position.
3. Press either L or R button to select the outside rearview mirror you would like to adjust. Then press "▼, ▲, ◀, ▶" switch to adjust the outside rearview mirror to the desired angle.
4. After adjusting the angle to save the adjusted outside rearview mirror angle, shift the gear to another position other than R (Reverse), or change the L and R buttons to the neutral position (L and R buttons are not pressed).
5. Set the other outside rearview mirror following the above procedure 1 to 4.

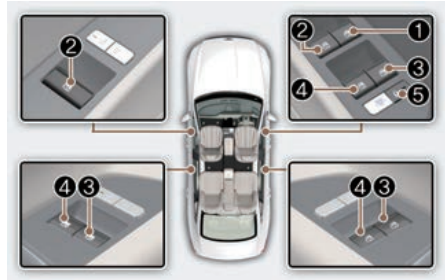
### Resetting reverse parking aid user settings mode

To change the outside rearview mirror angle back to the basic angle, shift the gear to R (Reverse), and adjust the mirror angle higher than when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) and D (Drive).

#### NOTICE

When changing the angle of both outside rearview mirrors, it is recommended to change the angle one side at a time following the procedure 1 to 4.

## Windows



- (1) Driver's door power window switch
- (2) Front passenger's door power window switch
- (3) Rear door (right) power window switch
- (4) Rear door (left) power window switch
- (5) Power window lock switch

## Power windows

The Start/Stop button must be in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a Power Window switch to control the door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock button that can block the operation of rear passenger windows. The power windows operate for about 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, as long as the front doors remain closed.

If the front doors are opened, the battery power is turned OFF and the Power Windows do not operate.

## Window opening and closing



To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (1). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (1). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

## Auto up/down window

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (2) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is operating, pull up or press down and release the switch.

## Resetting the power windows

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## ! WARNING

Make sure body parts or other objects are out of the way before closing the windows. The automatic reverse feature does not operate whilst resetting the power window system.

## Automatic reversal



If a window senses any obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it stops and lowers about 12 in. (30 cm) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects any resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window stops upward movement and then lowers about 1 in. (2.5 cm).

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse does not operate.

## i Information

The automatic reverse feature is active only when the "Auto Up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

## NOTICE

Do not install any accessories on the windows. The automatic reverse feature may not operate.

### **WARNING**

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window does not stop and reverse direction.

---

### **Power window lock button**



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button. When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.

### **WARNING**

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death may result from unintentional window operation by a child.

---

### **NOTICE**

- To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This also ensures the longevity of the fuse.
  - Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window stops and cannot be opened or closed.
- 

### **Remote window opening/closing feature (Remote Window Control)**



You can open or close the window remotely with the smart key.

#### **Closing the window**

Press and hold the door lock button (2) for more than 3 seconds, whilst the vehicle is turned off.

- Windows move up after the doors are locked.
- Window movement stops when you release the door lock button.

### Opening the window

Press and hold the door unlock button (1) for more than 3 seconds, whilst the vehicle is turned off.

- Windows move down after the doors are unlocked.
- Window movement stops when you release the door unlock button.

### CAUTION

- If the distance between the vehicle and your smart key changes whilst the window is being opened or closed, the window may stop operating. Do not stand too far away from the vehicle when remotely opening or closing the window.
- Windows stop closing if it is encountered by a certain force. After you close the windows remotely, make sure all windows are properly closed.
- The doors are unlocked when you open the windows with the remote opening feature.

## Bonnet

### Opening the bonnet

1. Park the vehicle and apply the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet pops open slightly.



3. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push up the secondary bonnet release lever (1) inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet (2).

After the bonnet has been lifted halfway, it is raised completely by itself.



## Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check in and around the motor compartment to ensure the following:
  - Any tools or other loose objects have been removed.
  - All glove, rags, or other combustible material have been removed.
  - All filler caps are tightly and correctly installed.
2. Lower the bonnet until it is about 12 in. (30 cm) above the closed position and then let it drop.



3. Check the bonnet has locked properly. If the bonnet is raised slightly, open it again and drop it from a little higher. Check again.

### **WARNING**

- Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening.
- Always double check to make sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no bonnet open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. Driving with the bonnet open may cause a total loss of visibility, resulting in a collision.
- Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. It may block your vision and may result in a collision.

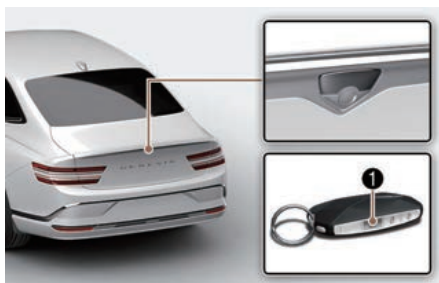
## Non-Powered Boot

 If equipped

### Opening the boot

1. Make sure the vehicle is shifted to P (Park) and engage the parking brake.
2. Then do one of the following:
  - Press the Smart Key Boot Open button (1) for more than one second.
  - Press the button on the boot itself with the Smart Key in your possession.

Outside



- Use the boot release button.

Inside



3. Lift the boot lid up.

## Closing the boot

Lower the boot lid and press down until it locks. To be sure the boot lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again.

### WARNING

Always keep the boot lid completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.

### Information

To prevent damage to the boot lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the boot before driving.

### NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, boot lock and boot mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

### WARNING

Your vehicle should be kept locked and keys should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in the boot.

## Emergency boot safety release



Your vehicle is equipped with an Emergency Boot Safety Release lever located inside the boot. When someone is inadvertently locked in the boot, the boot can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the boot open.

### WARNING

- You and your passengers must be aware of the location of the Emergency Boot Safety Release lever in this vehicle and how to open the boot in case you are accidentally locked in the boot.
- NEVER allow anyone to occupy the boot of the vehicle at any time. If the boot is partially or totally latched and the person is unable to get out, serious injury or death could occur due to lack of ventilation, exhaust fumes and rapid heat build-up, or because of exposure to cold weather conditions. The boot is also a highly dangerous location in the event of a crash because it is not a protected occupant space but is a part of the vehicle's crush zone.
- Your vehicle should be kept locked and the Smart Key should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in boots.
- Use the release lever for emergencies only.

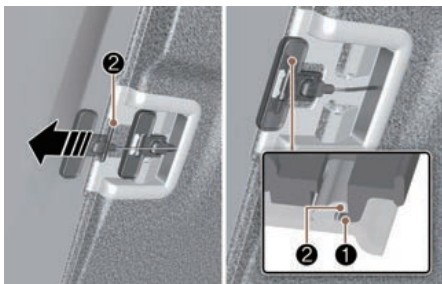
### Boot release lever

When the vehicle battery is discharged or the boot needs to be opened manually:

1. Open the cover at the centre of the rear seat. Pull the lever on the back of the cover all the way.



2. With the lever pulled to the end, fix the lever (2) on the projecting part (1).



3. Lift and open the boot manually.
4. Remove the inserted lever to close the boot.

### WARNING

Make sure to at least have minimum space at the back and in the upper area of the boot when opening or closing the boot. If not, the boot may hit the surrounding objects (wall, ceiling, vehicle, etc.) and result in damaging the vehicle or injuring the person near.

## Power boot

 If equipped

### Power boot operating conditions

The power boot operates when vehicle speed is below 1.8 mph (3 km/h).

### WARNING

- Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. Children may operate the power boot. Doing so can result in injury to themselves or others and can damage the vehicle.
- Make sure there are no people or objects and enough space around the boot before operating the power boot or smart boot prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects (for example, walls, ceilings, vehicles, etc.) may result if contact with the boot occurs.
- Make sure there are no people or objects around the boot before operating the power boot. Wait until the boot is opened fully and stopped before loading or unloading cargo from the vehicle.
- Always keep the boot lid completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.
- If there are obstacles such as snow on the boot, the boot may not open automatically. After removing the obstacle, try to open it again.
- The boot may not open or may close unintentionally injuring people around the boot under the following situation:
  - There is a lot of snow on the boot.

- There is a heavy object on the boot such as a bicycle carrier, ladder, etc.

Do not open the boot before removing snow or heavy object on the boot.

## NOTICE

- Do not close or open the power boot manually. This may cause damage to the power boot. If it is necessary to close or open the power boot manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.
- Do not operate the power boot more than 10 times continuously when the vehicle is not running. Use the power boot with the vehicle running when the power boot is used repeatedly to prevent battery discharge.
- Do not leave the boot open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.
- Do not modify or repair any part of the power boot by yourself. This must be done by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not operate the power boot under the following conditions. The power boot may not operate properly.
  - One side of the vehicle is lifted to inspect the vehicle or change a tyre
  - Parking on an uneven road such as a slope, etc.
- Close the boot completely and lock all doors and boot using the central door lock button before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly on the power boot outside open/close button. The boot may open unintentionally.

## i Information

- In cold and wet climates, the outside power boot open button may not work properly due to freezing conditions. If this occurs, remove the ice before using the outside power boot open/close button or use the power boot open/close button on the smart key or the instrument panel.
- If you leave the smart key in the boot and close the boot, a warning will sound for about 5 seconds. If this occurs, open the boot by pressing the power boot open button on the outside of the boot.
- Be careful where there is an incline, as the boot lid may drop slightly when it is stopped before it fully opens.

## Operating the power boot

### *Power boot open/close button (Smart key, Instrument panel)*

Smart key



When the boot is closed, press the power boot open/close button for 1.5 seconds. The boot will open with a warning sound.

Whilst the boot is opening, press the button to stop power boot operation.

When the boot is opened, press and hold the power boot open/close button to close the boot. If you release the button whilst the boot is closing, power boot operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

Also, if the Smart key is not within operation range from the vehicle, boot operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

Instrument panel



When the boot is closed, press the power boot open/close button for 1 second. The power boot will open with a warning sound. Whilst the boot is opening, press the button to stop power boot operation.

When the boot is opened, press and hold the boot open/close button to close the power boot. If you release the button whilst the boot is closing, power boot operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

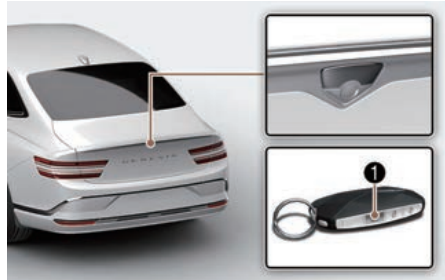


### WARNING

Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the boot before pressing the open/close button inside the power boot and the smart key.

Otherwise, this may cause serious injury or damage to the vehicle or object.

### ***Power boot open button (Outside the power boot)***



When the boot is closed, press the power boot open button to open the boot.

If the vehicle is locked, press the power boot open button (1) with the smart key in your possession.

Whilst the boot is opening, press the button to stop power boot operation.

### ***Power boot close button (Inside the power boot)***



Press the power boot close button. The boot will close with a warning sound.

Whilst the boot is closing, press the button to stop power boot operation.

### **Power boot lock button (Inside the power boot)**



Press the power boot lock button whilst carrying the smart key. The power boot will close and lock with a warning sound. Additionally, all doors will lock.

The boot will close and lock, and all doors will lock only when the vehicle is off.

### **Switching the power boot from manual to automatic**

If you apply over a certain amount of power manually when the boot is opened, the power boot system detects the direction and closes or opens automatically.

- The power boot fully opens when the boot is raised.
- The power boot closes completely when the boot is lowered.

#### ***i* Information**

The power boot may not operate properly if the boot is not opened above a certain height.

### **Automatic reversal**

During power boot operation if the power boot senses any obstacle, the boot stops or fully opens. The automatic reverse feature may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The automatic reverse feature may not detect the resistance if the detected resistance is below a certain level, or if the boot is almost fully closed near the latched position.
- The automatic reverse feature may operate if a strong impact is applied with no obstructions placed.

#### **WARNING**

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power boot to make sure the automatic reverse feature operates. Serious injury, or damage to the vehicle or object may occur.

#### ***i* Information**

The power boot may stop operating if the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times whilst attempting to open or close the boot. If this occurs, carefully open or close the boot manually, and then after 30 seconds try to operate the power boot automatically again.

## Setting the power boot

### *Power boot opening height*

To adjust the power boot opening height, select **Setup > Vehicle > Door > Power Trunk height** in the infotainment system.

### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Resetting the power boot

In some circumstances resetting the power boot operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power boot may be required include:

- When the 12 V battery is recharged
  - When the 12 V battery is reinstalled after removal or replacement
  - When the related fuse is reinstalled after removal or replacement
1. With the vehicle off or running, put the gear in P (Park).
  2. Whilst pressing the power boot close inner button, press the power boot open outside button for more than 3 seconds. A chime will sound.
  3. Slowly close the boot manually.
  4. Press the power boot open outside button. The power boot will open with a chime sound.

Wait until the boot fully opens to complete resetting. If the boot stops before it is fully open, resetting cannot be completed.

### *i* Information

If the power boot does not operate properly after the above procedure, we recommend that the system be inspected

by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Emergency boot safety release

- Inside the boot



Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency boot safety release lever located inside the boot. When someone is inadvertently locked in the boot, the boot can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the boot lid to open.

- Inside the vehicle

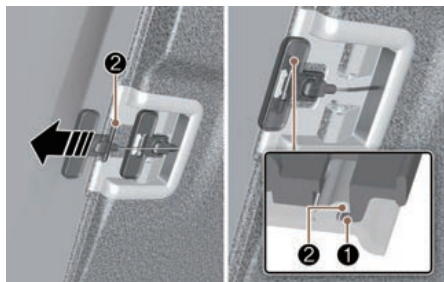
Follow the below procedure to open the boot manually when the battery is discharged or when there is a problem with the vehicle:

1. Open the pass through cover at the centre of the rear seat.



2. Pull boot release lever the all the way back that is located behind the left side of the pass through cover.

3. With the lever pulled to the end, fix the lever (2) on the projecting part (1).



4. Lift and open the boot manually.  
5. Place manual boot release lever back to original position or boot will not close.

### WARNING

- For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency boot safety release latch in the vehicle and how to open the boot if you are accidentally locked in the boot.
- No one, including animals, should be allowed to occupy the boot of the vehicle at any time. The boot is a very dangerous location in the event of a collision.
- Use the release latch for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is moving.

## Smart boot

 if equipped



## Using smart boot

The hands-free smart boot system can be used when:

- The smart boot option is enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
- The smart boot is activated and ready 15 seconds after all the doors are closed and locked.
- The smart boot opens when the smart key is detected in the area behind the vehicle for 3 seconds.

### Information

The smart boot does not operate when:

- A door is not locked or closed.
- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked.
- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and within 60 in. (1.5 m) from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light)
- The smart key is in the vehicle.

### 1. Settings

To use smart boot, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Door > Smart Trunk**

#### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### 2. Detect and Alert



The smart boot detecting area extends about 20-40 in. (50-100 cm) behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times before opening.

#### *i* Information

If you unintentionally enter the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts, move away from the vehicle with the smart key. The boot remains closed.

### 3. Automatic opening

After the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times, the smart boot opens.

## Deactivating smart boot

If you press any button on the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart boot is deactivated.

- If you press the door unlock button, the smart boot is deactivated temporarily. If you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart boot is activated again.
- If you press the boot open button for more than 1 second, the boot opens.
- The smart boot is still activated if you press the door lock button or boot open/close button as long as the smart boot is not in the Detect and Alert stage.

## Detecting area

#### *i* Information

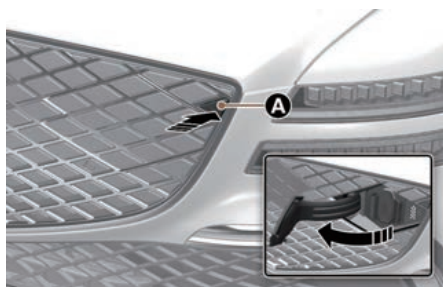
- The smart boot may not operate properly if any of the following occur:
  - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as radio station or airport that may interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
  - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
  - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- Smart boot detecting area may change when:
  - The vehicle is parked on an incline or slope.
  - One side of the vehicle is lifted or lowered relative to the opposite side.

## Electric charging door

 if equipped

### Opening the electric charging door

1. Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to P (Park), and turn the vehicle off.
3. **[Outside]** With the vehicle door unlocked, press the triangle symbol [A] to open the charging door.



**[Inside]** Press the charging door button in the instrument panel.



4. Open the charging inlet cover and charge the vehicle.

### Information


- The charging door automatically closes when:
  - The charging connector is disconnected

- The door is opened and the charging connector is not connected for a certain period of time
- The gear is not in P (Park)
- After replacing battery (12 V), open and close the charging door once to check that the charging door automatic opening mechanism is functioning properly.


### Charging door warmer

 if equipped

If the charging door does not open in very cold winter or freezing conditions, open the charging door as follows:

1. Press the  button. The inner part of charging door operates to warm the charging door in the following situations:
  - The vehicle is on
  - The charging door is closed
  - The outside temperature is below the 0 °C (32 °F)
2. Tap slightly around the door 2 or 3 minutes after the charging door warmer is activated.
3. Press the triangle symbol [A] with the vehicle off and the vehicle door unlocked.

### Information

The charging door warmer automatically stops when it operates more than 20 minutes. If the  button is deactivated, the charging door warmer is also deactivated.

### NOTICE


Do not pry on the charging door or use unauthorised tools to open the charging door.

## NOTICE

- If the charging door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door. If necessary, use hand temperature to melt down the ice or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.
- Make sure that the charging door is closed before driving the vehicle. If the charging door is opened, mechanical parts of the charging door can be damaged.
- After closing the charging door, be sure to check the warning light is off.
- After charging the vehicle, close the charging inlet properly. If not, the charging inlet and the charging door can be damaged.
- Whilst washing the vehicle, do not spray high pressure water to the charging door directly. The high pressure can damage the charging door.
- Do not hold the hinge. It may damage the charging door.

For more information, refer to the "Charging your electric vehicle" section in chapter 1.

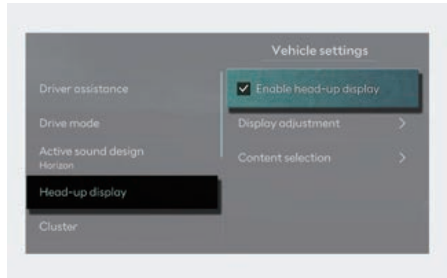
## Head-up Display (HUD)

 If equipped



The head-up display is an optional feature that allows the driver to view information projected onto a transparent screen whilst still keeping your eyes safely on the road ahead whilst driving.

## Head-up display settings

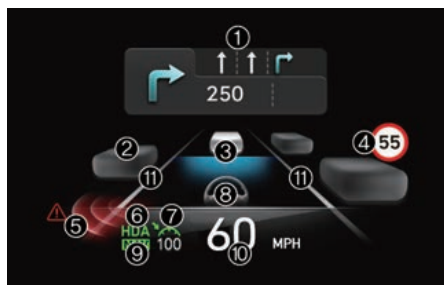


- Head-up display can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Head-up display > Enable head-up display**
- After turning on the head-up display, you can change the settings of **Display adjustment** and **Content selection** of the head-up display.

## *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Head-up display information



- (1) Turn by Turn (TBT) navigation information
- (2) Surrounding vehicle information (if equipped)
- (3) SCC vehicle distance
- (4) Traffic signs or speed limit
- (5) Blind-Spot Safety
- (6) Highway Driving Assist
- (7) SCC set speed
- (8) Lane Following Assist
- (9) Highway Auto Speed Change
- (10) Speedometer
- (11) Lane Safety

## Precautions whilst using the head-up display

- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the head-up display in the following situations:
  - The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat.
  - The driver wears polarizing-filter sunglasses.
  - An object is located above the head-up display cover.
  - The vehicle is driven on a wet road.
  - Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is incoming light from outside of the vehicle.
- The driver wears glasses.
- The driver wears contact lenses.

When it is difficult to read the head-up display information, adjust the image height or brightness level from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
- Do not tint the front windscreen glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head-up display image may be invisible.
- Do not place any accessories on the dashboard or attach any objects on the windscreen glass.
- When replacing the front windscreen glass, replace it with a windscreen glass designed for head-up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windscreen glass.

## WARNING

The warning information of Blind-Spot Safety on the head-up display is a supplemental function only. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always take a look around before changing lanes.

### *i* Information

Head-up display includes GPL, LGPL, MPL and other open source license softwares. All license notices including related source code are provided at <http://www.mobis.co.kr/opensource/list.do>. If the driver requests on-board software open source code via MOBIS\_OSSrequest@mobis.co.kr within 3 years after buying this product, a CD-ROM or other storage device will be sent with the minimum cost covering storage device cost and delivery cost.

## OTA software update

 if equipped

The OTA (Over-the-Air) software update feature allows you to wirelessly update software to the latest version. Using this feature, you can keep your vehicle system up to date with the latest software.

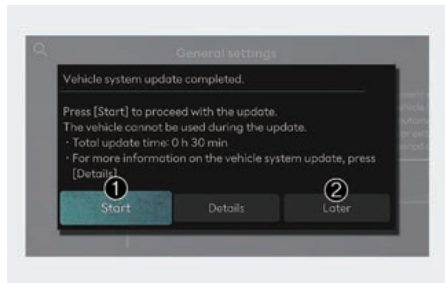
### *i* Information

The OTA software update feature is only available for Genesis Connected Services users.

## Downloading software

The latest software can be downloaded automatically whilst driving. After the latest software has been successfully downloaded, you will receive a notification on your phone or the vehicle screen that the software update is available.

## Approving software update



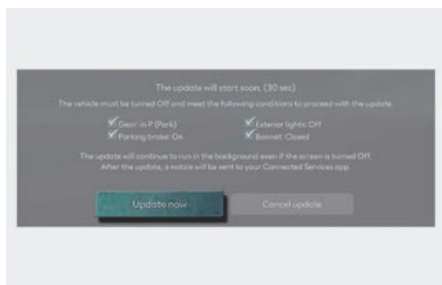
After the vehicle is turned off, the vehicle system allows you to start the update.

- To start the update, press **Start** (1).
- To postpone the update, press **Later** (2).

## Preparing software update

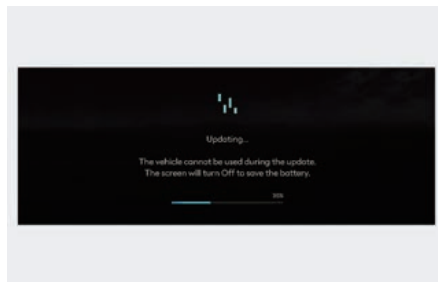
If you press the **Start** button on the screen, the vehicle begins installing the update automatically. The following conditions must be satisfied:

- The vehicle must be off.
- The gear must be in P (Park).
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) must be applied.
- The exterior lights must be turned off.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The battery level must be sufficient.
- The systems to be updated must not be running.



- To update immediately, press **Update now**.
- To cancel the update, press **Cancel update**.

## Updating software



You can see the progress of the update on the screen.

After the update is complete, you will receive a notification on your phone, e-mail, or the vehicle screen that the software update is complete.

### *i* Information

The screen turns off automatically after 3 minutes to save the battery. If the screen turns off automatically, you can check the update progress by pressing the Start/Stop button.

### **i** Information

- After the update starts, you can exit the vehicle.
  - The update details may vary depending on the installed software version.
  - Check the notice for the OTA software update on the Genesis brand web.
  - If the update fails, the update recovery will automatically proceed. If you want to retry the software update, even after a successful recovery, we recommend you to contact Genesis.
  - If the update or recovery fails, we recommend that you contact Genesis Call Centre.
  - After the update is complete, it may provide new functions or improvements. For more information, refer to the "OTA Software Update" page on the Genesis brand web.
- 

### **NOTICE**

- Observe the following restrictions during the update.
    - You cannot use the vehicle during the update. Be sure to have enough time for the update, and safely park the vehicle before starting the update process.
    - You cannot use remote features, including remote start.
    - Vehicle charging is not available. Charge the vehicle after the update is complete.
    - The Rear Occupant Alert feature may not work. Check if there are any occupants in the rear seat.
    - If there is an update for the Genesis Digital Key feature, the doors cannot be locked or unlocked using the digital key, or fingerprint recognition. If the Genesis Digital Key feature is being updated, use the smart key to lock or unlock the doors.
  - The update will be automatically cancelled if any vehicle conditions required for the update are changed before starting the update.
  - Once the update has started, you cannot cancel the update.
  - Note that the high-voltage-related modules for charging the 12 V battery may work during the update.
  - You cannot use the OTA software update feature if you modify or replace any vehicle software.
  - Do not open the bonnet or replace the battery in the vehicle during the update. The update may fail.
  - If a diagnostic tool of any kind is connected to the vehicle OBD (On-Board Diagnostic) terminal, the vehicle cannot be updated. The vehicle can be updated by removing the diagnostic tool connected to the OBD terminal and then restarting the vehicle.
  - If the update is not complete successfully, we highly recommend that you contact Genesis.
-

## Exterior lights

### Lighting control

To operate the lights, turn the switch at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:



- (1) O
- (2) AUTO headlight
- (3) Position light
- (4) Headlight

### Daytime Running Lights (DRL)

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system turns off the dedicated light when:

- The headlights are ON.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is turned off.

### AUTO headlight



The position light and headlight are turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of daylight as measured by the ambient light sensor [A] at the upper end of the windscreen glass.

Even with the AUTO headlight feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the headlights when driving at night or in a fog, driving in the rain, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

### NOTICE

- Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor [A] located at the upper end of the windscreen glass.
- Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
- If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the AUTO headlight system may not work properly.

### Position light



The position light, license plate light, and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

### Headlight



The headlight, position light, license plate light, and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

### *i* Information

The Start/Stop button must be in the DRIVE READY position to turn on the headlight.

### High beam operation



To turn on the high beam headlight, push the lever away from you. The lever returns to its original position.

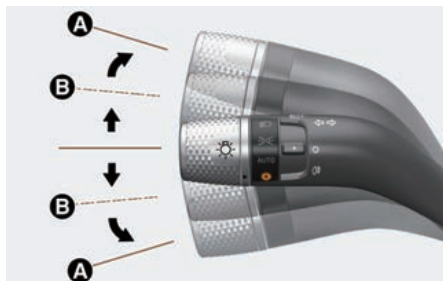
The high beam indicator illuminates when the headlight high beams are switched on.

To turn off the high beam headlight, pull the lever toward you. The low beams turn on.



To flash the high beam headlight, pull the lever toward you, then release the lever. The high beams remain ON as long as you hold the lever.

## Turn signals and lane change signals



To signal a turn, push down on the lever for a left turn or up for a right turn in position [A].

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and require replacement. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### One touch turn signal

To use One Touch Turn Signal, push the turn signal lever up or down to position [B] and then release it.

The lane change signals blinks 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can enable the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > One-touch indicator > 3 flashes/5 flashes/7 flashes/Off** in the infotainment system.

### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Rear fog light

To turn on the rear fog light:

Position the headlight switch in the headlight position, and then turn the fog light switch (1) to the rear fog light position.



To turn the rear fog lights off, do one of the following:

- Turn off the headlight switch.
- Turn the fog light switch (1) to the rear fog light position again.

## Battery saver function

To prevent the battery discharging, the system automatically turns off the position lights when the driver turns the vehicle off and opens the driver's door.

To keep the lights on when the vehicle is turned off:

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Turn the position lights OFF and ON again using the headlight switch.

## Headlight delay function

If the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the headlights ON, the headlights (and/or position lights) remain on for about 5 minutes. If the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds. Also, with the vehicle off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights (and/or position lights) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights (and/or position lights) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the headlight switch to the OFF or AUTO position.

You can enable the headlight delay function by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Head lamp delay** in the infotainment system.

### Information

- When the headlight delay function is turned on in the infotainment system, the dynamic welcome light function of the welcome system will also operate as well. For more information, refer to the "76" section in this chapter.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### NOTICE

If the driver exits the vehicle through another door besides the driver's door, the battery saver function does not operate and the headlight delay function does not turn OFF automatically.

To avoid battery discharge, turn OFF the headlights manually before exiting the vehicle.

---

## Headlight levelling device

Headlight levelling device automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the boot.

It also adjusts to the appropriate headlight beam level for various situations.

### WARNING

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

---

## Headlight moisture removal function

When moisture fogs up inside of the headlight with the headlight on for a certain period of time, the fan circulates air inside the headlight to remove moisture. If moisture is not removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Reverse guide light

When the gear is in R (Reverse), the back up light turns on and the reverse guide light at the back of the vehicle lights the floor.

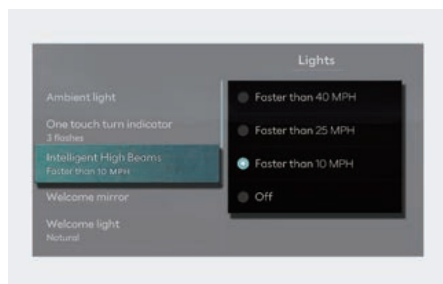
The light informs nearby drivers that your vehicle is backing up.

## Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)

 if equipped

Intelligent Front-Lighting System secures a clear view for the driver with the high beam on whilst driving at night.

### System settings



With the Start/Stop button in the DRIVE READY position, select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Intelligent High Beams** from the Settings menu to turn on Intelligent Front-Lighting System and deselect to turn off the system.

### Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### WARNING

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

### Information

For Europe


Travel Mode must be turned on for the headlight on the driver's side to turn off when driving from a left-hand drive country to a right-hand drive country and vice versa.

To turn on the Travel mode, select **Setup > Vehicle > Light > Travel mode** from the infotainment system.

### System operation



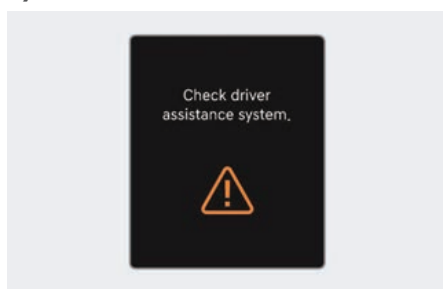
After selecting **Intelligent High Beams** in the Settings menu to operate Intelligent Front-Lighting System:


- Place the headlight switch in the **AUTO** position and push the headlight lever toward the instrument cluster. The Intelligent Front-Lighting System () indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster and the system is enabled.
- When the system is enabled, Intelligent Front-Lighting System operates according to the set speed in the infotainment system. The initial system is set to work when vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The high beam LED partially turns off if an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead is detected by the front view camera.

- If Intelligent Front-Lighting System detects an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead whilst driving at high speed (about above 60 mph (100 km/h)), the driver's side headlight turns off and only the passenger's side headlight is controlled by the system.

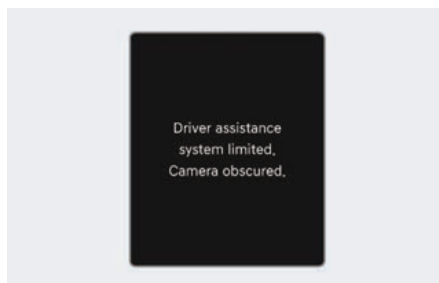
## System malfunction and limitations

### System malfunction



When Intelligent Front-Lighting System does not work properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for a few seconds on the instrument cluster. After the message disappears, the AFS and  warning lights illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### System disabled



When the front view camera is covered or blocked, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System may temporarily not work properly. The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The system operates normally when such foreign material is removed.

### WARNING

- Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.

### ***Limitations of the system***

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate normally:

- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle is damaged or out of the detection range.
- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle are covered with dust, snow, or water.
- An oncoming or front vehicle's headlights are off but the fog lights are on.
- There are lights that have a similar shape as a vehicle's light ahead.
- The headlights are not repaired or replaced properly.
- The headlights are not aimed properly.
- You are driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill, or downhill.
- A front vehicle is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, LED sign, or reflectors ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road is wet or covered with snow or ice.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a flat tyre or being towed.
- There are many street lights or the ambient light is bright.
- Light from another vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, etc.
- The front windscreen is covered with foreign material.

### **NOTICE**

To prevent damage:


- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
- Only have the detecting sensor replaced or repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
- Always keep the camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) on the dashboard.
- Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the camera lenses. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.



### **WARNING**

- Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is your responsibility to operate your vehicle in a safe manner.
- If Intelligent Front-Lighting System does not operate properly, use the turn signal lever to switch between high beam and low beam.

## High Beam Assist (HBA)

 If equipped



High Beam Assist automatically adjust the headlights between high beam and low beam depending on the light detected from oncoming vehicles or vehicles in front using the front view camera.

### Detecting sensor



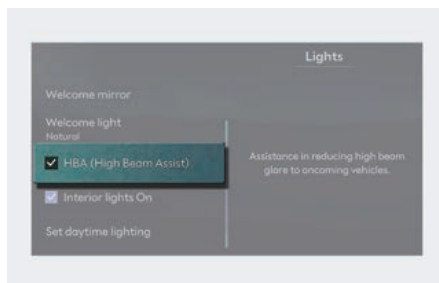
[A] Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect ambient light and brightness whilst driving.

### NOTICE

- Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of High Beam Assist.
- Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in Chapter 7 for the location and the general precautions of front view camera.

## High Beam Assist setting





With the Start/Stop button in the DRIVE READY position, select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > HBA (High Beam Assist)** from the Settings menu to turn on High Beam Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

### WARNING

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

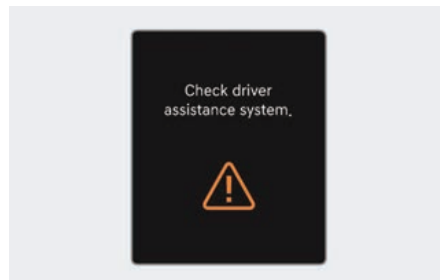
## High Beam Assist operation

- After selecting **HBA (High Beam Assist)** from the settings menu to operate High Beam Assist:
  - Place the headlight switch in the **AUTO** position and push the headlight lever toward the instrument cluster. The High Beam Assist  indicator light illuminates on the cluster and the system will be enabled.
  - When High Beam Assist is enabled, high beams turn on when vehicle speed is above 20 mph (30 km/h) and the high beam  indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
  - When the vehicle speed is below 12 mph (20 km/h), high beams do not turn on.

- When High Beam Assist is operating:
  - If the turn signal lever is pulled toward you when the high beams are off, the high beams turn on. When you let go of the turn signal lever, High Beam Assist operates again.
  - If the turn signal lever is pulled towards you when the high beams are on by High Beam Assist, low beams turn on and High Beam Assist turns off.
  - If the headlight switch is moved from **AUTO** to another position (headlight/position/off), the corresponding light turns on and High Beam Assist turns off.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, high beam switches to low beam if:
  - The headlights of an oncoming vehicle is detected.
  - The tail lights of a vehicle in front is detected.
  - The headlight or tail light of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
  - The surrounding ambient light is bright enough so high beams are not required.
  - Streetlights or other lights are detected.

## High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations

### High Beam Assist malfunction



When High Beam Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear and ⚠ warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *i* Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Limitations of High Beam Assist

High Beam Assist may not operate normally in the following situations if:

- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle is damaged or out of the detection range.
- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle headlights are covered with dust, snow, or water.
- An oncoming or front vehicle's headlights are off but the fog lights are on.
- There are lights that have a similar shape as a vehicle's light ahead.
- The headlights are not repaired or replaced properly.

- The headlights are not aimed properly.
- You are driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill, or downhill.
- A front vehicle is partially visible at a crossroad or on a curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, LED sign, or reflectors ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a flat tyre or being towed.
- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, blizzard, water spray on the road, or windscreen condensation, etc.

### NOTICE

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in chapter 7.

### WARNING

- Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is your responsibility to operate your vehicle in a safe manner.
- If High Beam Assist does not operate properly, use the turn signal lever to switch between high beam and low beam.

## Welcome system



Welcome system helps keep the driver visible by turning on vehicle lights when the driver approaches the vehicle.

## Puddle light and door handle light

When all the doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the puddle light and door handle light come on for about 15 seconds if:

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key or digital key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key or digital key in possession.
- If **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Welcome mirror/light > Enable on driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the lights turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key or digital key in possession.

### Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Dynamic welcome light

 if equipped

When the headlight switch is in the headlight, position light or AUTO position and all doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the dynamic welcome light comes on when the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key or digital key.

### *i* Information


The dynamic welcome light turns on at night when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.

The dynamic welcome light operates for about 4 seconds, and at the same time the position lamps come on for about 15 seconds.

If you press the door lock or door unlock button on the smart key or digital key, the dynamic welcome light turns off immediately.

- Select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Head lamp delay** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on this function.
- Select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Dynamic welcome light > Comfort (default setting)/Natural/Dynamic** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change modes.

## Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the  position and all doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the room lamp come on for 30 seconds when:

- The door unlock button is pressed on the smart key or digital key.
- You put your hand in the outside door handle.

If you press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key or digital key, the lights turn off immediately.

## Interior lights

### WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and result in a collision.

### NOTICE




Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the vehicle is turned off. Otherwise, the battery discharges.

## Interior light AUTO cut

The interior lights automatically go off about 20 minutes after the vehicle is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lights go off 25 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. If the doors are locked by the remote key or smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lights go off five seconds later.

## Front lights



- **Map lamp** (, ): Touch either icons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.
- **Door lamp** (): The front or rear room lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened. When doors are

unlocked by the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for about 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear room lamps go out gradually after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. However, if the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps turn off. If a door is opened with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position, the front and rear lamps stay on for about 5 minutes.

- **Room lamp** (☞): Press the button to turn on the room lamp for the front and rear seats.

### Rear room lamp



- ☞, ☞: Touch the icon to turn either lamp on or off.
- ☞: Touch the icon to turn the mood lamp on or off.

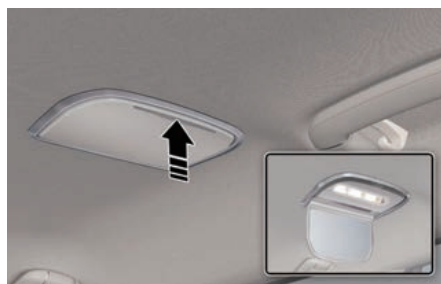
### Vanity mirror lamp



Opening the lid of the vanity mirror. The vanity mirror lamp turns on when the lid is opened and off when the lid is closed.

### Rear mirror lamp

if equipped



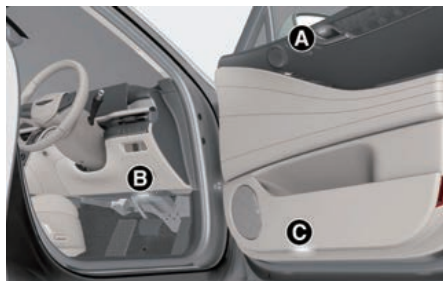
Press the mirror cover. The cover opens slowly and the mirror lamp turns on.

### Glove box lamp



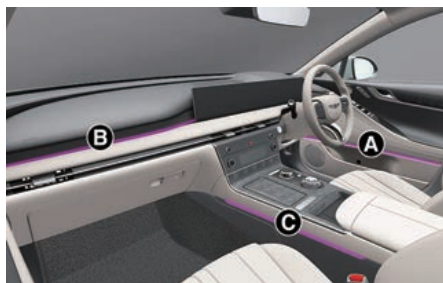
The glove box lamp turns on when the glove box is opened.

## Door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Door courtesy lamp



- Door handle lamp [A]: The lamp turns on when the position lamps are on.
- Foot lamp [B]: The lamp always on.
- Door courtesy lamp [C]: The lamp turns on when a door is open and turns off when the door is closed.

## Mood lamp



[A] Door  
[B] Crash pad  
[C] Console

If **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Ambient light** is selected from the infotainment system, you can adjust the brightness and select colour.

- If **Link to drive mode** is selected, the mood lamps change colour according to the selected drive mode.
- To turn off the mood lamps, set the brightness level to "0" in the infotainment system.

## *i* Information

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- The colour of the mood lamp may seem different under some conditions depending on the colour of the interior and the set mood colour.

## Interior lights always on

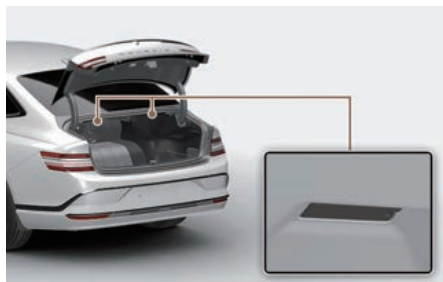
The Interior Lights Always On function turns on the interior button lights regardless of the day or night condition.

You can enable the Interior Lights Always On function by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Interior lights On** in the infotainment system.

After the function is enabled, the interior button lights are turned on or off in the following situations:

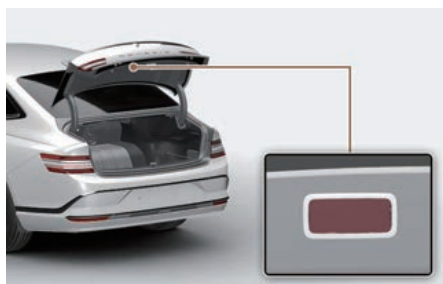
- When all doors are closed and locked, if you unlock the door, the interior button lights illuminate for about 5 minutes.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the interior button lights are turned on for about 5 minutes. At this time, if you open and close the door or lock the doors, the interior button lights are turned off immediately.

## Boot lamp



The boot lamp turns on when the boot is opened and off when the boot is closed.

## Boot emergency lamp



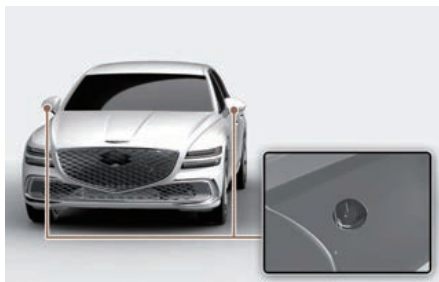
The boot emergency lamp turns on when the boot is opened.

In case of emergency such as a vehicle breakdown, open the boot to inform surrounding vehicles of the emergency, and activate the emergency warning lights to prevent accidents.

### **i** Information

Keep the boot open when it is necessary, as it may cause battery discharge.

## Puddle light



### **Welcome light**

When all doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the puddle light turns on for 15 seconds if the door is unlocked by the smart key or digital key, or when you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key or digital key in possession.

For more information, refer to the "Welcome system" section in this chapter.

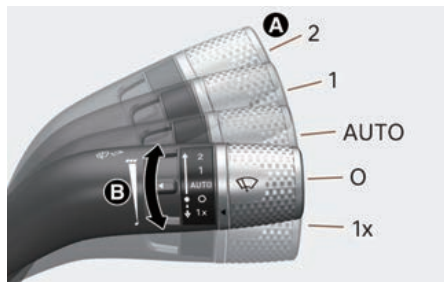
### **Escort light**

When the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver's door is opened, the puddle light turns on for 30 seconds. If the driver's door is closed within the 30 second period, the puddle light turns off after 15 seconds. If the driver's door is closed and locked, the puddle light turns off immediately.

The escort light turns on only the first time the driver's door is opened after the vehicle is turned off.

## Wipers and washers

### Front windscreen wipers



[A] Wiper speed control

[B] Intermittent or Auto control wipe time adjustment

Operates as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.

- **2:** The wiper runs at a higher speed.
- **1:** The wiper runs at a lower speed
- **AUTO:**

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the interval of the wiping cycle.

To change the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control switch.

- **O:** Wipers are not in operation.
- **1x:** For a single wiping cycle, push the lever down and release. The wipers operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

### NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed to prevent damage to the wiper and washer system.

### AUTO (Automatic) control



The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the interval of the wiping cycle.

To change the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control switch.

If the wiper switch is set in the AUTO mode when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position, the wiper operates once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to the **O** position when the wiper is not used.

### ⚠ WARNING

To prevent personal injury:

- Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass near the rain sensor.
- Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.
- Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.

### NOTICE

To prevent damage:

- When washing the vehicle, set the wiper to the **O** position to stop the auto wiper operation.
- Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windscreen glass.

## Front windscreen washers



In the **O** position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation continues until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

### ***Recirculating air when washer fluid is used***

When washer fluid is used, in order to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin, recirculation mode and air conditioning are automatically activated depending on the outside temperature. If you select fresh mode whilst the function is operating, the function resumes after a certain amount of time. It may not work in some conditions such as cold weather or vehicle OFF.

For more information, refer to the "Climate control additional features" section in this chapter.

### **⚠ WARNING**

When the outside temperature is below freezing, always warm the windscreen using the defroster to help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windscreen and obscuring your vision that could lead to a collision and serious injury or death. Always use appropriate washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.

---

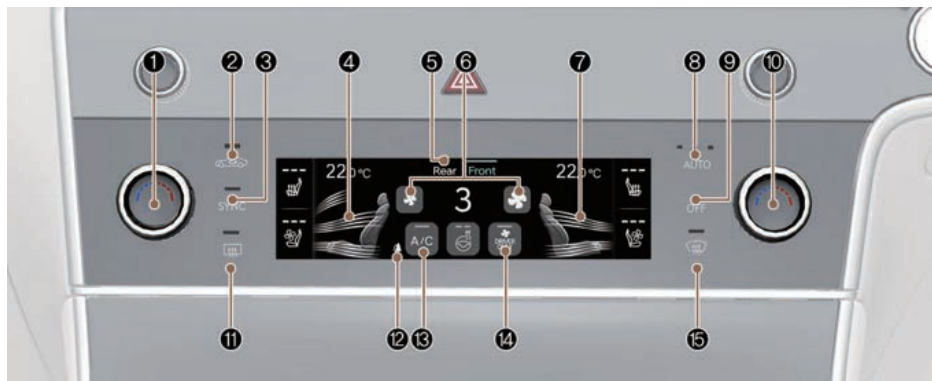
### **NOTICE**

To prevent damage:

- Do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty or when the windscreen is dry.
  - Do not attempt to move the wipers manually.
-

## Automatic climate control system

### Front seat control



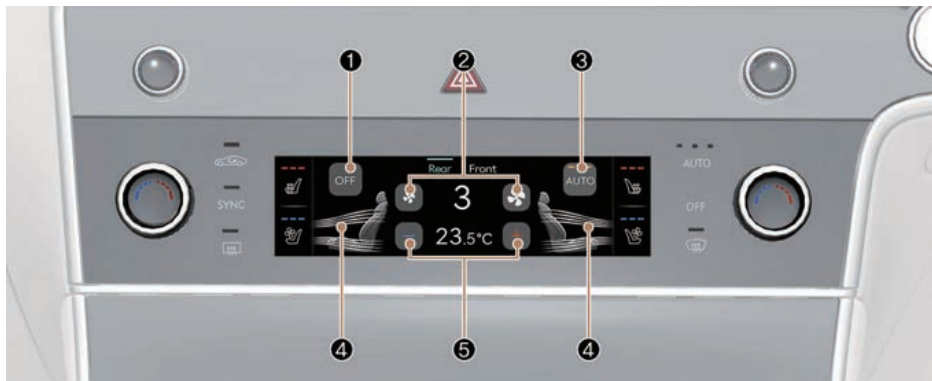
The actual shape of climate control system may differ from the illustration.

- (1) Passenger's temperature control
- (2) Air intake control
- (3) SYNC
- (4) Passenger's mode selection
- (5) Rear control
- (6) Fan speed control
- (7) Driver's mode selection
- (8) AUTO (automatic control)
- (9) OFF (system off)
- (10) Driver's temperature control
- (11) Rear window defroster
- (12) Clean air system (if equipped)
- (13) A/C (air conditioning)
- (14) Driver only mode
- (15) Front windscreen defroster

### **i** Information

Use microfiber cloth when wiping fingerprints off the touchscreen.

### *Rear seat control from the front*



The actual shape of climate control system may differ from the illustration.

- (1) OFF (system off)
- (2) Fan speed control (if equipped)
- (3) AUTO (automatic control)
- (4) Mode selection
- (5) Temperature control

#### **i** Information

Use microfiber cloth when wiping fingerprints off the touchscreen.

---

## Rear seat control

<sup>+</sup>if equipped



The climate control system may differ depending on vehicle specification.

- (1) Fan speed display
- (2) Mode selection
- (3) Temperature display
- (4) Fan speed control
- (5) OFF (system off)
- (6) AUTO (automatic control)
- (7) Temperature control

### *i* Information

- Temperature, Mode selection (air flow direction), and Fan speed can be controlled from the rear seat. However, if **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Climate features > Lock the rear climate control** is selected, the rear climate control can be operated only from the front seat.
- Use the climate control system with the vehicle running for more effectiveness of the system, and to prevent battery discharge.

### Automatic heating and air conditioning

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

The mode selection, fan speed, air intake and air conditioning are controlled automatically by the temperature setting.

You can control the fan speed in three stages by pressing the **AUTO** button during automatic operation.

- High: Provides rapid air conditioning and heating with the maximum fan speed setting.
- Medium: Provides air conditioning and heating with the mid-level fan speed setting.
- Low: Fan speed is set to the lowest setting range.

2. Turn the temperature control knob to set the desired temperature. If the temperature is set to the lowest setting, the air conditioning system operates continuously. After the interior has cooled sufficiently, adjust the knob to a higher temperature set point whenever possible.

To turn off the automatic operation, select any button of the following buttons:

- Mode selection button
- Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The "AUTO" illuminates on the information screen once again.)
- Fan speed control icon or knob
- **A/C** (air conditioning) icon

The selected function is controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use

the **AUTO** button and set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).

### *i* Information



Never place anything near the sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.


### Manual heating and air conditioning

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.  
For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling, select:
  - Heating: ~~~~~
  - Cooling: ~~~~~
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn on the air conditioning system.
7. Press the **AUTO** button to convert to full automatic control of the system.

## Mode selection

### Front seat mode selection



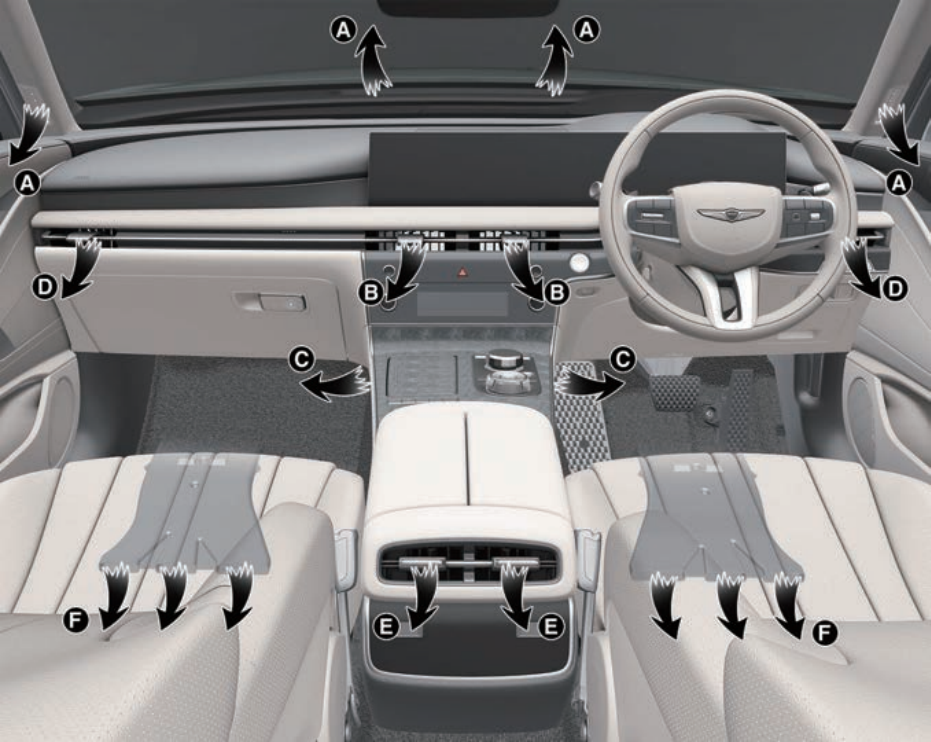
- Touch each air flow direction on the information screen to select the desired flow direction.
- Press the **SYNC** button and when the indicator light on the button turns off, the air flow direction of the driver's seat, passenger seat, and rear seats can be controlled individually. The front passenger and rear passenger seats cannot select  position.
- Touch **Rear** (1) to control the rear seat's mode selection from the front seats.
- You may select 2-3 modes at the same time.

### Rear seat mode selection



- Press the button to select the direction of the air flow to the desired position.
- You may select 2 modes at the same time.

Air flow direction



The mode selection icon or button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

**Front seat**

- Defrost (A, D)



Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

- Face-level (B, D)



Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

- Floor-level (A, C, D)



Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

**Rear seat**

- Face-level (E)

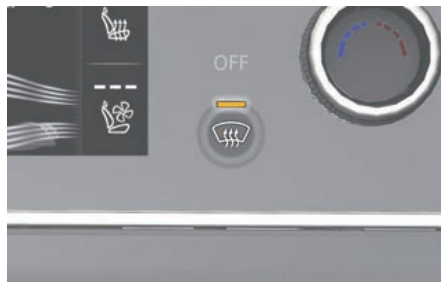


Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

- Floor-level (F)



Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

**Front windscreen defroster****Defrost-level (A, D)**

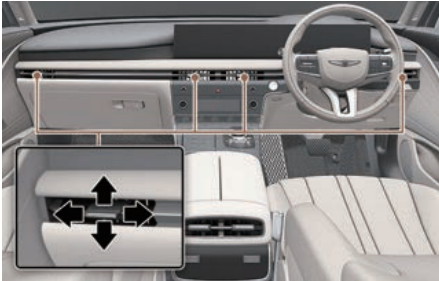
Press the button, and the indicator light on the button illuminates.

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

Press the button again, the indicator light turns off and the previous settings are selected.

### Instrument panel vents

Front seat





Rear seat



The instrument panel vent air flow can be directed up/down or left/right using the vent adjustment lever.

The air flow can be closed using the vent adjustment lever.

Move the lever to  position to close, and to  position to open.

### Temperature control

Front seat control





Rear seat control from the front



Rear seat control from the rear (if equipped)



The temperature setting increases when you turn the knob to the right or press the **+** or  on the touchscreen.

The temperature setting decreases when you turn the knob to the left or press the **-** or  arrow on the touchscreen.

### Temperature conversion

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display is reset to Celsius.

To change the temperature unit from °C to °F or °F to °C:

- For infotainment system, select: **Setup** > **General** > **Units** > **Temperature unit** > **°C/°F**
- For vehicles equipped with Automatic Climate Control, you can also:

Press the **A/C** button for 3 seconds, and then within 5 seconds press the driver's side face-level (↖) position for more than 3 seconds.

Both the temperature unit on the instrument cluster and climate control information screen is changed.

### DRIVER ONLY



If you press the **DRIVER ONLY** button (indicator light ON), most of the air flow is directed toward the driver's seat.

### *i* Information

Some of the airflow may be directed to other seating position to keep indoor air pleasant whilst using DRIVER ONLY.

When using the front windscreen defroster, the air flow on the both sides of windscreen will continue to operate regardless of the activation of DRIVER ONLY.

### SYNC



#### Adjusting the temperature, air flow direction, and fan speed equally

Press the **SYNC** button from the front seat, (indicator light ON), to adjust the driver, front passenger, and rear passenger side temperature, air flow direction, and fan speed equally.

#### Adjusting the temperature, air flow direction, and fan speed individually

Press the **SYNC** button (indicator light OFF) from the front seat again to adjust the driver, front passenger, and rear passenger side temperature, air flow direction, and fan speed individually.

### Air intake control



To select outside (fresh) air or recirculated air, press this button.

#### Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air selected, air from the passenger compartment is drawn through the climate control system.

#### Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is drawn through the climate control system.

### *i* Information

Using the system in the fresh air position is recommended.

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) can cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

### WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle that could fog the windscreen and the side windows and obscure visibility.
- Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on.
- Continued climate use of recirculated air may cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position whilst driving.

## Fan speed control

Front seat control



Rear seat control from the front



Rear seat control from the rear (if equipped)



Press the or button to increase fan speed and airflow. Press the or button to decrease fan speed and airflow.

Pressing the **OFF** button turns off the fan.

### NOTICE


Operating the fan when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position may cause the battery to discharge.

## Air conditioning



Press the **A/C** button to manually turn the air conditioning on (indicator light ON) and off.

Clean air system


 if equipped



When the clean air system is selected, the indoor fine dust concentration is measured by the fine dust sensor equipped in the vehicle and the indoor air status is presented on the screen. If needed, it prevents the contaminated external air and the cabin air filter purifies the indoor air by filtering the fine dust to provide fresh air.

Indoor air status display

The air status is presented with the four levels as below when the climate control system turns on.

Clean Air System	ON			
Indoor Air Condition	Good	Normal	Poor	Very poor
Operation Indicator 	Blue	Green	Orange	Red

If you touch the clean air system icon, it operates for 20 seconds. The system works for 20 seconds at a time and it performs automatically depending on the indoor air status.

## *i* Information

- The cabin air filter needs to be replaced per every 10,000 miles (15,000 km) to maximise efficiency of the clean air system.
- If the vehicle is driven in an inner city area with high air pollution or severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads or the indoor fine dust concentration is not presented as Good on the screen due to prolonged heavy fine dust, have the cabin air filter inspected. If the cabin air filter is contaminated, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.
- We recommend using genuine cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.
- Use genuine Genesis cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.

When a cabin air filter that has low dust collection efficiency or poor dust removal performance is used, or if you use a cabin air filter that does not meet the specification, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.

- Presented dust concentration is measured inside the vehicle in realtime so the measured value is differed from the dust concentration in the atmosphere.
- The presented figure might be varied by the mensuration or measurement locations so please use it as a reference.
- The fine dust concentration value is the result of measuring the number of dust and converting it to the fine dust concentration using an optical method.
- The fine dust concentration is displayed from 0 to 199.
- The measured fine dust concentration value may be different from the measurement standards of other instruments or products.

- If the fine dust concentration is high, the displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.
- The time of concentration level measurement may be delayed since the spread of fine dust is slow.
- Movement around the fine dust sensor interferes with normal operation of the sensor. The displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.
- In the following environments, the fine dust concentration can be displayed differently from the actual level.
  - Hairy products, bugs or pets are present
  - A vacuum cleaner is used
  - Humidity is high
  - A door or window is opened letting the outside air in
  - Outside air from a construction site, factory or ventilator enters
  - A product that generates vapours or fine particles (humidifiers, sprays, etc.) is used
  - Even if the dust is generated by activities such as dusting or cleaning, the fine dust sensor may not respond if the dust is large (PM10 or higher). It will be removed by the cabin air filter.
- The fine dust concentration level can change by products that cause odor, such as air fresheners, odor removers, and cleaners.
- In an environment affected by electromagnetic waves or electrical noise, the fine dust concentration can be temporarily displayed high.
- It may take time to reset the fine dust sensor when the vehicle is turned on.
- If the air filter is not replaced regularly, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.

## OFF

Front seat control



Rear seat control from the front



Rear seat control from the rear (if equipped)



Press the **OFF** button to turn off the climate control system. You can still operate the mode buttons and air intake buttons as long as the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.

- If OFF is pressed from the front seat, the front and rear climate control system turns off.
- If OFF is pressed from the rear seat, only the rear climate control system turns off.

## System operation

### Cooling/Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control the outside (fresh) air or recirculated air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

### Heating


1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control the outside (fresh) air or recirculated air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If desired, turn the air conditioning ON with the temperature control knob set to heat in order to dehumidify the air before it enters into the cabin.

If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the position.


### Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Return the control to the outside (fresh) air position when the unpleasant air outside has diminished. This can help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To help prevent the inside of the windscreen from fogging, set the air intake control to outside (fresh) air position and the fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to the desired temperature.

### ***Air conditioning***

1. Start the vehicle. Press the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the  position.
3. Set the air intake control to the recirculated air position temporarily to allow the cabin to cool quickly. When the desired temperature in the cabin is reached, change the air intake control back to the outside (fresh) air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to as desired.  
When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the lowest position, then set the fan speed control to the highest setting.

### ***Air conditioning system operation tips***

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from the recirculated air position to the outside (fresh) air position.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows closed.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- If you operate air conditioner excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen may cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the  position and fan speed control to the lowest speed.

## **System maintenance**

### ***Cabin air filter***

The cabin air filter is installed behind the glove box. It filters the dust or other pollutants that enter the vehicle through the heating and air conditioning system.

We recommend that the cabin air filter be replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent cabin air filter inspections and changes are required.

### ***Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant***

If the amount of refrigerant is too low or too high, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***NOTICE***

The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians in a well-ventilated area to ensure proper and safe operation.

### **WARNING**

#### Vehicles equipped with R-134a



To prevent serious injury, have the air conditioning system be serviced by only trained and certified technicians. R-134a is operated at high pressure.

Reclaim all refrigerants with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment.

### **WARNING**

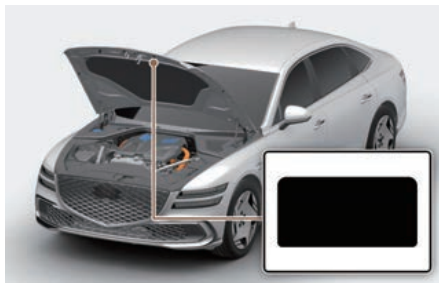
#### Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf



To prevent serious injury, have the air conditioning system be serviced by only trained and certified technicians. R-1234yf is flammable and operated at high pressure.

Reclaim all refrigerants with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment.

### Air Conditioning refrigerant label



You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as below:

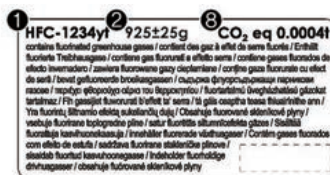
Example (Type A)



Example (Type B)



Example (Type C)





- (1) Classification of refrigerant
- (2) Amount of refrigerant
- (3) Classification of compressor lubricant
- (4) Caution

- (5) Flammable refrigerant
- (6) To require registered technician to service air conditioning system
- (7) Service manual
- (8) CO<sub>2</sub> equivalent of refrigerant

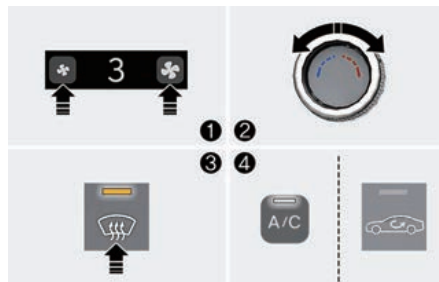
## Windscreen defrosting and defogging


### WARNING

Do not use the defrost-level () position during the cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The outer surface of the windscreen may fog and reduce visibility, causing a collision that results in serious injury or death. Set the mode selection button to the face-level () position and fan speed control knob to a lower speed.

- For maximum defrost performance, set the temperature control to the highest temperature setting and the fan speed control to the highest setting.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, select the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rearview mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.


## To defog inside windscreen



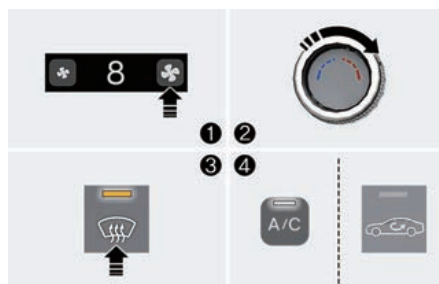
1. Select the desired fan speed.
2. Select the desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster () button.


The air conditioning turns on according to the detected ambient temperature, the outside (fresh) air position and higher fan speed are selected automatically.

If the air conditioning, outside (fresh) air position and higher fan speed are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button or knob.

If the defrost-level () position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to higher fan speed.

## To defrost outside windscreen



1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the hottest position.
3. Press the defroster () button.

The air conditioning turns on according to the detected ambient temperature and the outside (fresh) air position is selected automatically.

If the front defrost-level (☼) position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

### Rear window defroster

#### NOTICE

Never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window to prevent damage to the rear window defroster.



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog, and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, whilst the vehicle is running.

- To activate it press the rear window defroster button located in the centre control panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn it off press the rear window defroster button again.

#### *i* Information

- If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.
- The rear window defroster automatically turns off after about 20 minutes or when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.

#### *Outside rearview mirror defroster*

if equipped

The rearview mirror defrosters operate when you turn on the rear window defroster.

#### *Charging door warmer*

if equipped

The charging door warmer operates when you turn on the rear window defroster.

For more information, refer to the "Charging door warmer" in this section.

## Climate control additional features

### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### Air conditioning auto-drying

The Air Conditioner Auto Drying feature dries the moisture in the air conditioner and reduces air conditioner odor. The blower motor automatically operates after 30 minutes the vehicle is turned off.

#### *Turning Air Conditioner Auto Drying on or off*

The Air Conditioner Auto Drying feature can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Air conditioner auto drying**.

If the operating conditions are satisfied after setting the feature, the operating condition appears on the infotainment system and the blower motor automatically operates.

When the Air Conditioner Auto Drying feature is activated, the air conditioner sets the fan speed to the third level, selects outside (fresh) air position, and directs the air flow to the floor.

#### Operating conditions

- The vehicle is turned off after operating the air conditioner for a certain period.
- The 12 V battery level is sufficient and the outside temperature is above a certain level.

#### Non-operating conditions

- The Air Conditioner Auto Drying feature has operated for 10 minutes.
- The Start/Stop button is pressed, or the vehicle is POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
- The climate control system is operated remotely.

### *i* Information

The Air Conditioner Auto Drying feature reduces air conditioner odors but may not remove all odors.

## Auto defogging system



Auto defogging helps reduce the likelihood of fogging up the inside of the windshield by sensing the moisture on the inside of the windshield.

The Auto Defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

### *i* Information

The Auto Defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F).

If high amount of humidity is detected in the vehicle, the Auto Defogging system is enabled.

The following steps are performed automatically:

1. Air conditioning turns on and outside (fresh) air is selected.
2. Defrost-level is selected.
3. Fan speed is set to MAX.

### **Turning the Auto Defogging System ON or OFF**

#### **Climate control system**

Press the front windscreen defroster button for three seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position to turn the system on or off.

To check whether the system is on or off, go to the settings menu in the infotainment system and see if **Auto defog** is selected or not.

#### **Infotainment system**

Auto Defogging system can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Defog/Defrost options > Auto defog** from the Settings menu.

### **i Information**

- Do not select recirculated air whilst the Auto defogging system is operating.
- When Auto Defogging system is operating, fan speed adjustment, temperature adjustment, and air intake control selection are all disabled.

### **NOTICE**

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the top of the windscreen glass. Damage may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

---

## **Auto dehumidify**

 **If equipped**

Recirculated air position switches off automatically after about 5 to 30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature, and the air intake will change to outside (fresh) air position.

### **Turning Auto Dehumidify ON or OFF**

#### **Climate control system**

To turn the Auto Dehumidify feature on or off, select face-level (↖) position and press the air intake control (↻) button at least five times within three seconds. When Auto Dehumidify is turned on, the air intake control button indicator blinks 6 times. When turned off, the indicator blinks 3 times.

#### **Infotainment system**

Auto Dehumidify can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Automatic ventilation > Automatic dehumidify** from the Settings menu.

## **Recirculating air when washer fluid is used**

Recirculated air position automatically activates to reduce the scent of the washer fluid entering the cabin when the windscreen washer is used.

However, in cold weather to prevent the windscreen from fogging up, the recirculated air position may not be selected.

## Turning Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON or OFF

### Climate control system

To turn the Activate upon Washer Fluid Use feature on or off, select floor-level (↺) position, and then press the air intake control (↻) button five times within three seconds.

When Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON is turned on, the air intake control button indicator blinks 6 times. When turned off, the indicator blinks 3 times.

### Infotainment system

Activate upon Washer Fluid Use can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Recirculate air > Activation on washer fluid use** from the Settings menu.

## Automatic controls linked to climate control settings (for driver's seat)

The temperature of the driver's seat warmer, the air ventilated seat, and heated steering wheel is automatically controlled depending on the inside and outside temperature of the vehicle when the vehicle is running.

To use these features, it can be enable the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heating/Ventilation > Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings**

For more information on Auto Comfort Control, refer to the "Seat warmers" and "Air ventilation seats" sections in chapter 3 and "Heated steering wheel" section in chapter 5.

## Recirculating air when entering a tunnel

 if equipped

To prevent the inflow of polluted air into the vehicle when passing through a tunnel, this function automatically closes the windows and switches the climate control system to recirculated air position for about 7 seconds before entering a tunnel based on the map information of the navigation and the speed of the vehicle.

The windows automatically closes before entering a tunnel and area requiring air recirculation. The windows open to the previous position after passing through the area. If the power window switch is operated before the window opens, the window does not open to the previous position.

To use this feature, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Recirculate air > When entering tunnels**

## Operating conditions

One or more of the windows are opened or outside (fresh) air position is selected.

### Information

- The activation time for the function may differ depending on the gap between the GPS data and vehicle speed.
- The function activates until you have passed through continuous tunnels.
- When entering a tunnel, recirculated air position may cause fogging of the windscreen. Press the windscreen defroster button.
- The function does not operate in short tunnels.

- The function may not activate if the GPS is not working properly.

### Rear climate auto Off

 if equipped

This feature automatically turns off the rear seat climate when there is no passenger in the rear seat.

To use this feature, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Climate features > Rear climate auto Off**

### Operating conditions

When the vehicle is stopped or parked with all doors closed, and the rear seat ventilation is in operation.

### Information

The Rear climate auto Off may not operate in the following situations:

- If the vehicle moves due to the movement of another vehicle nearby whilst the function is operating.
- When the window is open and affected by other external movements.
- If there is a water bottle, clothes, etc. indoors and there is shaking in the vehicle.
- In case of movement of passengers in front seat, adjustment of seats, etc.

## Storage compartment

### WARNING

Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for an extended period of time.

### WARNING

Always keep the storage compartment covers closed securely whilst driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passengers.

### NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

## Centre console storage



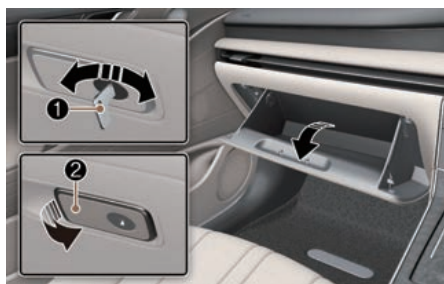
To open:  
Press the button.

## Rear console storage



To open:  
Press the button.

## Glove box



The glove box can be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key (1).

To open:  
Pull the lever (2).

### WARNING

Always close the glove box door after use.

An open glove box door may cause serious injury to a passenger in a collision, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.

## Sunglass holder



To open:  
Push and release the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:  
Push back into position.  
Make sure the sunglass holder is closed whilst driving.

### WARNING

- Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.
- Do not open the sunglass holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.
- Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.

## Interior features

### Cup holder

Front



Rear (Type A)



Rear (Type B)



Cups or small beverage cups may be placed in the cup holders.

#### WARNING

- Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is used to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you may be burned. Such a burn to the


driver may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

- Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid whilst the vehicle is moving.
- Only use soft cups in the cup holders.

#### NOTICE

- Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling. If spilled, it may damage the vehicle's electrical/electronic system.
- When cleaning spilled liquids, do not use hot air to blow out or dry the cup holder.
- Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. Otherwise, they may explode.

### Ashtray

 If equipped



To use the ashtray, open the cover.

To clean the ashtray:

The plastic receptacle should be removed by lifting the plastic ashtray receptacle upward and pulling it out.

#### WARNING

Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.

## Armrest warmer



Press the front seat warmer button to warm the front seat and armrest.

Enable the armrest warmer from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heated/Ventilated Features > Automatic controls linked to climate control settings > Driver's armrest warmer or Passenger's armrest warmer**

### *i* Information

- The temperature is automatically controlled to prevent low temperature burns.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.
- For more information on seat warmer operation, refer to the "Seat warmers" section in chapter 3.

## UV-C sterilizer system



(1) UV-C sterilizer system button indicator

(2) Console storage button

(3) UV-C sterilizer system button

The front seat console is equipped with an antibacterial sterilization system for personal belongings.

### WARNING

- Press the button to turn UV-C function off when it is not in use. Being exposed to ultraviolet rays from UV-C LED may be harmful to your skin and eyes.
- Do not place magnetic items (magnets, etc.) near the upper part of the UV-C storage box. It may cause malfunction to the UV-C sensor and unnecessarily operate the UV-C function.

### NOTICE

- Press the button to turn UV-C function off when it is not in use. Prolonged exposure under ultraviolet rays may change the colour and shape of the object.
- Do not sterilize food. Food cannot be sterilized. Prolonged exposure to ultraviolet rays may damage the wrapping or container and affect the food inside.

### Using UV-C sterilizer system






Place the item in the UV-C storage box and turn it on. Within 10 minutes, up to 99.9 % of germs on the surface can be removed.

1. Open the UV-C storage box whilst the vehicle is running.
2. Press the button inside the storage box.
  - UV-C sterilizer system indicator light illuminates.
  - Antibacterial tray is ready to operate.
3. Place the item in the centre inside the storage box and close the cover.
  - UV-C indicator light illuminates.
  - UV-C LED is turned on and sterilization begins.
  - After 10 minutes, the UV-C indicator light turns off as sterilization is complete.
  - Press the UV-C sterilizer system button to turn off the function, after you are finished using the system.

### *i* Information

- Only place the item which requires sterilization. Storing other items in the storage box may reduce the sterilization effect.
- UV-C sterilizer system does not guarantee 99.9 % sterilization. The sterilization effect varies depending on the degree of exposure to UV-C light and the shape of the item. For effective use, change the position of the item and run additional sterilization.
- If the UV-C indicator light blinks or does not operate properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Unit item verification number

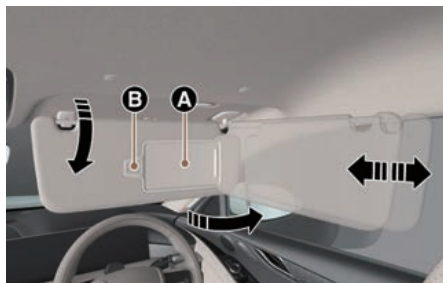
Unit item verification number		
	Type A	Registration Number: R-R-HdG-8991 0-T4AHO
	Type B	Registration Number: R-R-EpS-846R 0-T4000
	Type A	DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY
	Type A	ESTABLISHMENT NUMBER: 100891-KOR-1
	Type A	LISTING NUMBER: E115351
	Type A/B	DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.
- This appliance complies with the applicable standards and regulations (Low Voltage Directive, Electromagnetic Compatibility, Environmental, etc.).
- This product uses the vehicle's battery voltage and should be used only at DC 9 V-16 V.

### **WARNING**

This product emits ultraviolet rays. Do not gaze upon the UV rays whilst using the product. Exposing the eyes or skin to UV rays may have harmful effect to the body.

## Sunvisor



To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor to block the sun from the side window, pull it downward, release it from the bracket and swing it to the side toward the window.

To use the vanity mirror [A], pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover.

Adjust the sunvisor forward or backward as needed (if equipped). Use the ticket holder [B] to hold tickets.

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.


### **WARNING**

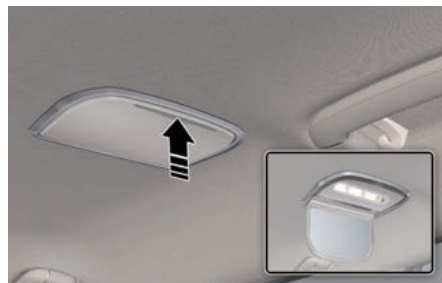
Do not block your view when using the sunvisor.

### **NOTICE**

The ticket holder [B] adjacent to the vanity mirror on the sunvisor can be used for toll road tickets or self parking tickets. Use caution when inserting tickets into the ticket holder to avoid damage. Refrain from putting several tickets in the ticket holder as this could also damage the retaining tab.

## Rear mirror

 if equipped



To open:

Press the cover and it will slowly opens and the mirror lamp turns on.

To close:

Push back into position.

## Power outlet



The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile phones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should

draw less than 180 watts with the vehicle running.

### **WARNING**

Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

### **NOTICE**

To prevent damage to the power outlets:

- Use the power outlet only when the vehicle is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for an extended period of time with the vehicle off may cause the battery to discharge.
- Only use 12 volts electric accessories that are less than 180 watts in the electric capacity.
- Adjust the air conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not used.
- Some electronic devices may cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
- Push the plug in as far as it goes. The plug may overheat and the fuse may open.
- Only connect devices with reverse current protection or the current from the device battery may cause the vehicle's electrical/electronic system to malfunction.

## USB charger

Front



Rear



The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electronic devices using a USB cable.

The electrical devices can be charged whilst the vehicle is running.

### **Information**

- The battery charging state may be monitored on the electronic device.
- Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.
- A smartphone or a tablet PC that does not use a USB cable to charge should be charged using its own charger.
- Do not attempt to use the charging terminal to turn ON an audio or to play media with the infotainment system.
- Charging may not be possible when using a Type-C to A converter sold by a mobile phone manufacturer or commercially available.

## NOTICE

- Use the USB charger when the vehicle is running. Using USB charger for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle off may cause the battery to discharge.
- To prevent damage to the USB charger:
  - Do not insert foreign objects or spill liquid into the outlet. The USB charging terminal may be damaged.
  - Do not use devices with working current exceeding 2,100 mA (2.1 A).

## Wireless smartphone charging system

 if equipped

Front



Rear



[A] Indicator light  
[B] Charging pad

## Charging your smartphone

The wireless smartphone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled smartphones (❧). Visit your smartphone manufacturer's website to check whether your smartphone supports the Qi technology.

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled smartphone on the wireless charging unit.

1. The wireless smartphone charger is available when all doors are closed, and when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

2. Turn on the wireless charging function in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Wireless charging system for mobile devices**

Set the indicator type to be displayed when a smartphone is being charged. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Mobile phone wireless charging indicator**

3. Place the smartphone on the centre of the wireless charging pad. The indicator light is displayed depending on the type selected whilst the smartphone is being charged.

## Information

- Remove other items, including the smart key from the wireless charging pad.
- For flip type smartphones, when using wireless charging, place the smartphone folded with the device's back placed on the centre of the wireless charging unit.

If your smartphone is not charging:

- Move the smartphone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light will blink orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

The system warns you with a chime if the smartphone is still on the wireless charging pad after the vehicle is turned OFF and the front door is opened.

### NOTICE

- The wireless smartphone charging system may not support certain smartphones, that do not meet the Qi specification (❶).
- When placing your smartphone on the charging pad, position the phone in the middle of the mat for optimal charging performance. If your smartphone is off to the side, the charging rate may be less and in some cases the smartphone may experience higher heat conduction.
- The wireless charging may stop temporarily when the smart key is used, either when starting the vehicle or locking/unlocking the doors, etc.
- For some manufacturer's smartphones, the system may not warn you even though the smartphone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smartphone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.
- When charging certain smartphones, the charging indicator may not change to blue when the smartphone is fully charged.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless smartphone charging system. The wireless charging process does not restart, until the temperature falls.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless smartphone charging system and smartphone.
- When using a smartphone application (such as Android Auto) whilst charging, charging may be delayed or stopped. This is not a problem with the wireless charging system but is caused by the smartphone overheating. Please remove the smartphone from the charging pad.
- If the smartphone has a thick case, it may not charge.
- If the smartphone is not completely contacting the charging pad, wireless charging may not operate properly.
- Some magnetic items like credit cards, phone cards, or transit cards may be damaged if left with the smartphone during the charging process.
- When any smartphone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound because the vehicle discerns compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smartphone in any way.
- If the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, the charging stops.
- Some smartphones may not be able to charge depending on the internal structure of the smartphone. If this occurs, try charging the smartphone by moving it to the left or right side of the wireless charging pad. However, for some foldable smartphones that have magnets inside the smartphone, try charging the smartphone whilst holding it close to the left side of the wireless charging pad.

## Clock

The clock can be set from the infotainment system.

### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### WARNING

Do not attempt to adjust the clock whilst driving.

## Coat hook

Type A



Type B



These hooks are not designed to hold large or heavy items.

### WARNING



Only hang soft clothing without heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the pockets. In a collision or when the curtain airbag is inflated, the objects could move and cause serious injury.

## Floor mat anchor(s)

ALWAYS use the Floor Mat Anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle and prevent the mats from sliding forward.

### WARNING

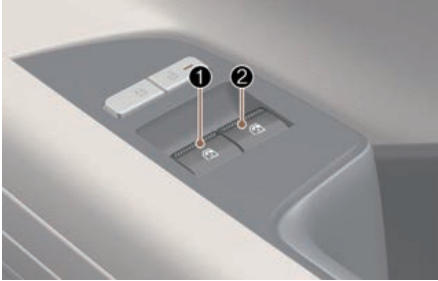
To prevent serious injury or death from a floor mat interfering with the brake or accelerator pedals:

- Remove any protective film on the carpet before installing a floor mat.
- Check floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of another mat (for example, all weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat must be installed in each position.
- To avoid any interference with pedal operation, install only Genesis floor mats designed for use in your vehicle.

## Rear side window sunshades

 If equipped

Use to block sunlight coming through the rear windows.



- (1) Rear left window and sunshade
- (2) Rear right window and sunshade

1. Pull the switch up on the driver's or rear seat to completely close the window.
2. Once the window is closed, pull the same switch again to close the sunshades.
  - To open the window when the sunshade is closed, push down the switch to first open the sunshade. Then push the switch again to open the window.

### Information

If the operating sunshade is blocked by an object, the sunshade stops from opening or closing. The sunshade is only able to open (move downward) once stopped by obstruction.

### NOTICE

Do not apply excessive external force on the rear side window sunshade whilst operating. It may cause a malfunction.

## *Resetting the rear side window sunshades*

If the sunshade is not operating normally, It must be reset as follows:

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least 10 seconds when the window is closed.

If the rear side window sunshade does not work properly after following the above procedure, it is recommended that the system be checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Rear window sunshade

Front



Rear (Type A)



Rear (Type B)

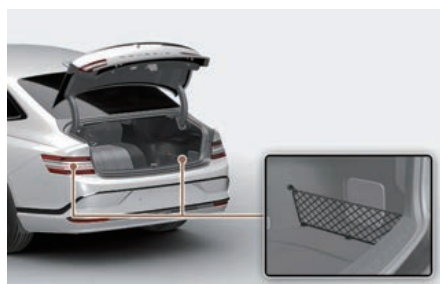
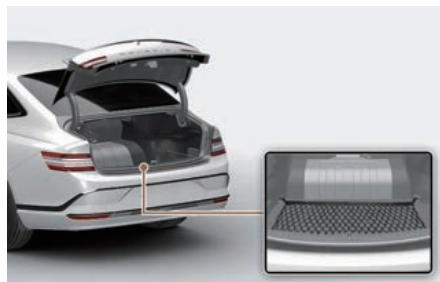


- The rear window sunshade will be lowered automatically when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse) and raised automatically when the vehicle is shifted from R (Reverse) to P (Park).
- After the rear window sunshade is lowered by shifting the vehicle to R (Reverse), if you drive more than 12 mph (20 km/h) with the shift lever in D (Drive), the rear window sunshade will be raised automatically.

### NOTICE

Do not apply excessive force whilst operating the rear window sunshade. This could cause damage to the rear window sunshade.

## Luggage net holder



To keep items from shifting in the boot, use the 4 holders located in the boot side trim to attach the luggage net.

Make sure the luggage net is securely attached to the holders in the cargo board.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to obtain a luggage net.

### ⚠ WARNING

Avoid eye injury. Do not overstretch the luggage net. Always keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. Do not use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

- Use the luggage net to keep only light items from shifting in the boot.

## Infotainment system

### NOTICE

Do not install an aftermarket HID headlight. Your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may not function properly.

### USB Port



The USB port can be used whilst the vehicle is running.

- After connecting a media storage device such as a MP3 or USB to the USB port, you can listen to music through the vehicle's speakers or play it on the infotainment system.

### *i* Information

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, disconnect the USB cable and use the portable audio device's power source.

## Antenna



The shark fin antenna receives transmitted data (for example, AM/FM).

## Steering wheel remote controls



### NOTICE

Do not operate multiple audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

#### 1. SEEK/PRESET ■ (◀, ▶)

If the SEEK/PRESET switch (optical mouse) is swiped to the left or right and held for 0.8 seconds or more, it functions in the following modes:

- RADIO mode: It functions as the AUTO SEEK select button. It seeks until you release the button.

- MEDIA mode: It functions as the FF/RW button.

If the SEEK/PRESET switch (optical mouse) is swiped to the left or right, it will function in the following modes:

- RADIO mode: It functions by moving between stored PRESET STATIONS.
- MEDIA mode: It functions as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

## 2. Custom (★)

Press the Custom button to set frequently used features.

## 3. Mode (⇌)

Press the Mode button to toggle through Radio mode or Media mode.

## 4. Volume (+, -)

- Rotate the Volume up to increase volume.
- Rotate the Volume down to decrease volume.

## Mute (🔇)

- Press the Mute button to mute the sound.
- Press the Mute button again to activate the sound.

## Infotainment system

Front



Rear (if equipped)



## *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Voice recognition



### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Bluetooth® Wireless Technology



- (1) Call/Answer/Call end button (Steering wheel)
- (2) Microphone

### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### WARNING

To prevent driver distraction, minimise your use of these features whilst driving. Distraction may cause a collision, resulting in serious injury or death.

## BANG & OLUFSEN sound system

### CAUTION

BANG & OLUFSEN sound system is equipped with door speaker grills made of stainless steel. The grill surface can be heated when the vehicle is exposed to hot weather for a long period of time. Keep away from the speaker grill when it is hot.

# 6. Driving your vehicle

Before driving .....	6-3
Before entering the vehicle.....	6-3
Before starting .....	6-3
Start/Stop button .....	6-4
Start/Stop button positions.....	6-5
Starting the vehicle.....	6-6
Turning off the vehicle.....	6-7
Remote start .....	6-8
Reduction Gear .....	6-8
Cluster display messages .....	6-11
Good driving practices .....	6-12
Recuperative braking system .....	6-13
Using recuperative braking system.....	6-13
Recuperative braking system limitations.....	6-14
One pedal driving.....	6-14
Using i-PEDAL .....	6-15
Smart recuperation system .....	6-16
Smart recuperation system on/off .....	6-16
Smart recuperation system operating condition .....	6-17
Smart recuperation level settings.....	6-17
Pausing smart recuperation system .....	6-18
Front sensors (Front radar).....	6-18
System malfunction.....	6-18
Smart recuperation system precautions.....	6-19
Braking system .....	6-21
Power-assist brakes.....	6-21
Disc brakes wear indicator .....	6-22
High performance brake .....	6-22
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) .....	6-23
Auto Hold.....	6-26
Brake Disc Cleaning.....	6-27
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	6-28
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) .....	6-29
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM).....	6-31
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) .....	6-32
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS).....	6-32

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) .....	6-33
Brake Assistant System (BAS) .....	6-33
Good braking practices.....	6-34
All Wheel Drive (AWD) .....	6-34
Emergency precautions.....	6-36
Electronic control suspension.....	6-38
System malfunction .....	6-38
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview .....	6-38
System malfunction .....	6-39
Limitations of the system .....	6-39
Drive mode integrated control system .....	6-40
Drive mode .....	6-40
Road active noise control.....	6-43
System malfunction .....	6-43
Active sound design.....	6-43
Special driving conditions .....	6-44
Hazardous driving conditions.....	6-44
Rocking the vehicle.....	6-44
Smooth cornering.....	6-44
Driving at night.....	6-45
Driving in the rain .....	6-45
Driving in flooded areas .....	6-45
Highway driving.....	6-46
Winter driving.....	6-46
Snow or icy conditions.....	6-46
Winter precautions.....	6-49
Trailer towing .....	6-50
Vehicle weight.....	6-50
Overloading .....	6-51

## Before driving

### Before entering the vehicle

- Make sure all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice from both the front windscreen and rear window as well as the front side windows.
- Visually check the tyres for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Make sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

### Before starting

- Make sure the bonnet, the boot, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the instrument display when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

#### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Always wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. For

more information, refer to the "Seat belts" section in chapter 3.

- Always drive defensively. Do not assume that the other drivers are seeing your vehicle. They may not act as you expect. Be prepared to react to avoid a possible collision. Plan your movements anticipating the "worst-case" scenario.
- Stay focused on driving. Driver distraction may cause a collision.
- Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.

#### WARNING

Never drink or take drugs whilst driving.

Drinking or taking drugs whilst driving is dangerous and may result in a collision, causing serious injury or death.

Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol can affect your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment. Just one drink may reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous as or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs whilst driving. If you are drinking or taking drugs, never drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

## Start/Stop button



Whenever the front door is opened, the Start/Stop button illuminates and goes off 30 seconds after the door is closed.

### WARNING

To turn the vehicle off in an emergency: Press and hold the Start/Stop button for more than two seconds. Or rapidly press and release the Start/Stop button three times (within three seconds).

If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the vehicle without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the Start/Stop button with the gear in the N (Neutral) position.

---

### WARNING

- NEVER press the Start/Stop button whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency. This may result in the vehicle turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may cause loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause a collision.
  - Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the smart key with you to prevent unintended vehicle movement.
  - Never reach through the steering wheel for the Start/Stop button or any other control whilst the vehicle is moving. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
-

## Start/Stop button positions

Button Position	Action	Notes
<b>OFF</b>	To turn off the vehicle, press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle shifted to P (Park). If the Start/Stop button is pressed with the vehicle shifted to D (Drive), R (Reverse), or N (Neutral), the gear automatically shifts to P (Park). The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft. (if equipped)	If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound.
<b>POWER ON</b>	Press the Start/Stop button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal. The warning lights can be checked before the vehicle is started.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In 14 minutes after POWER ON, the infotainment system screen shows the message. To continue to use the vehicle power, press 'Start utility mode'.</li> <li>• If POWER ON is maintained for 15 minutes without converting to the utility mode, the power is turned OFF.</li> </ul>
<b>DRIVE READY</b>	To start the vehicle, depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button with the gear shifted to the P (Park) position.	If you press the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal, the vehicle does not start and the Start/Stop button changes as follows: <b>OFF → POWER ON → OFF</b>

### *i* Information


To prevent vehicle battery discharge, the Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position with the gear in P (Park) for a certain period of time. When the function operates, the tail lights will turn off. To use the tail lights again, turn the headlights switch located on the steering column to the OFF and ON position again.

## Starting the vehicle

### WARNING

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, and flip-flops may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals. Do not drive barefoot.
- Do not start your vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. Place your foot firmly on the brake pedal whilst starting your vehicle.


### *i* Information

- The vehicle will start by pressing the Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.
- The vehicle may not start even if the smart key is in the vehicle but it is not near you (for example, in the luggage compartment).
- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. When the smart key is not in the vehicle, the  indicator blinks and the warning "**Key not in vehicle**" appears. When all doors are closed, the chime also sounds for a few seconds.

Keep the smart key in the vehicle when in the POWER ON position or if the vehicle is in the ready mode (READY indicator ON).

1. Always carry the smart key with you.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
3. Make sure the gear is in P (Park).
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Press the Start/Stop button. If the vehicle starts, the READY indicator will come on.

### *i* Information

- Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not depress the accelerator whilst starting the vehicle. Do not race the motor whilst warming it up.
- If ambient temperature is low, the  indicator may remain illuminated longer than the normal amount of time.

### NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- Do not press the Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop light fuse is blown.
- When the stop light fuse is blown, replace the fuse. If you cannot replace the fuse, start the vehicle by pressing and holding the Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

Pressing the brake pedal many times whilst READY indicator light is off will increase the possibility of discharging the 12 V battery.

For your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the vehicle.

- If the READY indicator turns off whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to shift the gear to the P (Park) position.

If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the gear in N (Neutral) whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the vehicle.

- Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the vehicle.
- The vehicle enters the ready mode (READY indicator on) if you get in the vehicle with a smart key or digital key (UWB-supported smartphone) whilst

scheduled climate or remote climate control is operating.

The vehicle also enters the ready mode if you get in the vehicle and place the NFC digital key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), and then close the door or depress the brake pedal.

If a smart key or digital key (if equipped) is not detected in the vehicle after the door is closed or the brake pedal is depressed, a warning message appears.

When the vehicle is in the ready mode, be careful as the vehicle may move when shifting the gear from P (Park) to another gear position.

### *i* Information

#### **Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS)**

VESS generates virtual engine sound to make pedestrians to aware. VESS operates when the vehicle can be driven. When the vehicle in P (parking) gear status, VESS doesn't work.

### CAUTION

- Because the vehicle doesn't make the engine sound, pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive carefully.
- After parking or waiting for a traffic light, please check around (children, obstacle, etc.) before departure.
- When reversing, check directly behind you before driving. Pedestrians may not be able to recognise vehicle sounds.

If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, press the Start/Stop button with the smart key.



### **Turning off the vehicle**

1. Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Make sure the gear is in P (Park).
3. Apply the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).
4. Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
5. Make sure the READY indicator light is off in the instrument cluster.

If the READY indicator light on the instrument cluster is still on, the vehicle is not turned off and can move when the gear is in any position except P (Park).

## Remote start



You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button on the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock (1) button within 33 ft. (10 m) from the vehicle.
2. Press and hold the remote start (2) button within 4 seconds.

To turn off the vehicle:

Press the remote start (2) button once.

### *i* Information

- The vehicle does not remotely start if the bonnet or boot is opened.
- The vehicle must be in P (Park).
- The vehicle displays "Smart Key must be present to keep the vehicle running" if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.
- The vehicle turns off if you get in the vehicle without a registered smart key or you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes.

## Reduction Gear



[A] P release cap cover

[B] P button

[C] Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial)

Depress the brake pedal whenever rotating the shift dial to change gear or shifting to P (Park).

### **WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.

## Rotary shifter/Rotary gear shift dial

### P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).



To shift the gear to P (Park), press the **P** button whilst depressing the brake pedal.

If you turn the vehicle off in R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the gear shifts to P (Park).

### WARNING

- Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- When parking on an incline, shift the gear to P (Park) and apply the parking brake, and turn the wheels toward the kerb to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.
- Do not use the P (Park) position instead of the parking brake.

### Automatic gear shift to P (Park)

The gear is shifted to P (Park) automatically for safety reasons under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is turned off with the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive), or N (Neutral).
- When the driver's door is opened with the vehicle running, the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral), the seat belt unfastened and the vehicle at a standstill.

- When the driver's or front passenger's door is opened with the gear in N (Neutral) and the vehicle is turned off.

In situations in which the gear must be in P (Park), always check if the gear is shifted to P (Park) by checking the instrument cluster.

### R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle rearward.



To shift the gear to R (Reverse), rotate the shift dial counterclockwise whilst depressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the R (Reverse) or D (Drive), if the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the gear shifts to P (Park) automatically.

If the vehicle is moving in R (Reverse) or D (Drive) and the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the gear may not shift to P (Park) automatically to prevent reduction gear damage.

The direction of the rotary gear shift dial is the same as that of the wheel.

### NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse) to prevent damaging the reduction gear.

### N (Neutral)



To shift the gear to N (Neutral), rotate the shift dial clockwise from R (Reverse) or counterclockwise from D (Drive) whilst depressing the brake pedal.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

If you turn the vehicle off in N (Neutral), the gear shifts to P (Park).

#### **WARNING**

Do not shift gears unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

---

#### **CAUTION**

The vehicle can be started with the gear in N (Neutral), but for your safety, be sure to start the vehicle with the gear in P (Park).

---

### D (Drive)



To shift the gear to D (Drive), rotate the shift dial clockwise whilst depressing the brake pedal.

The reduction gear automatically activates the regenerative braking system according to the road conditions.

When the vehicle is stopped in the D (Drive), if you open the driver's door with the seat belt unfastened, the gear shifts to P (Park).

If the vehicle is moving in D (Drive), and the driver's door is opened and the seat belt is unfastened, the gear may not shift to P (Park) automatically to protect the reduction gear.

#### **NOTICE**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive) to prevent damaging the reduction gear.

---

#### **CAUTION**

When you start after stopping on a steep incline, even if the gear is in D (Drive), if the accelerator or brake pedal is not depressed, the vehicle may roll backwards, that may cause an accident.

---

### ***When the battery is discharged:***

You cannot shift gears, when the battery is discharged.

In an emergency:

1. Connect the jumper cables from another vehicle or from another battery following the "Jump starting (12 V Battery)" directions in chapter 8.
2. Release the parking brake with the Start/Stop button in the DRIVE READY position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
4. Remove the P release cap cover (1) and press and hold the button (2) whilst depressing the brake pedal.



- The gear changes to the N (Neutral) position.
- The button (2) must be pressed within 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned off.
- The gear can be changed between P (Park) and N (Neutral) for 20 seconds.

### ***i* Information**

In situations when the gear needs to be shifted from P (Park) to N (Neutral) when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, refer to step 4.

### ***Shift-lock system***

For your safety, your vehicle has a shift-lock system which prevents shifting the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive), from R (Reverse) into D (Drive):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Shift the gear in R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

### ***i* Information**

The gear cannot be shifted whilst the charging cable is connected.

### ***Parking***

Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

## **Cluster display messages**

### ***Press brake pedal to change gear***

This message appears when the brake pedal is not depressed whilst shifting out of gear.

Depress the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

### ***Shift to P after stopping***

This message appears when the gear is shifted to P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving.

Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

### ***Shifting system error***

This message appears when the shift gear or the shift button does not properly operate in the P (Park) position.

Immediately we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***Check rotary gear shift dial***

This message appears when there is a malfunction with the shift dial.

Immediately we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***Check P button***

This message appears when there is a problem with the P (Park) button.

Immediately we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### ***Rotary gear shift dial stuck***

This message appears when the shift dial does not return back to its normal position after rotating it.

Immediately we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **Good driving practices**

- Never shift the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other gear when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- Never shift the gear into P (Park) when the vehicle is moving.  
Completely stop before shifting into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not shift the gear to N (Neutral) when driving. If the gear is shifted to N (Neutral) whilst driving, doing so may increase the risk of an accident.  
Also, shift the gear back to D (Drive) whilst the vehicle is moving may severely damage the reduction gear.
- When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving rearwards. After selecting D (Drive) or R (Reverse), check the gear position indicated on the instrument cluster before driving. If the vehicle moves in the opposite direction of the selected gear, the vehicle may turn off and a serious accident might occur due to degraded brake performance.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure may result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the shift gear in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating, or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed may cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

## ⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Always wear your seat belt. In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.
- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of rollover greatly increases if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
- Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends you to follow all posted speed limits.

## Recuperative braking system

Recuperative braking system operates the paddle shifter to control the recuperative braking intensity of the vehicle. It improves the energy efficiency of the vehicle and helps the driver to have a better driving experience.

### i Information

The recuperative braking system uses the electric motor to engage the brake. The electric motor converts the kinetic energy generated from decelerating the vehicle to electricity and charges the high voltage battery.

## Using recuperative braking system

### Operating paddle shifter

Operate the paddle shifter as shown below to use the recuperative braking system.



(1) Left paddle shift (+)

(2) Right paddle shift (-)

- Pull the left paddle shift (+) once to raise the recuperative braking intensity level by 1. It increases decelerating intensity.
- Pull the right paddle shift (-) once to lower the recuperative braking intensity level by 1. It decreases decelerating intensity.

- Pull and hold the left paddle shift (+Ⓛ) for over 0.5 seconds to keep raising the recuperative braking intensity level. Keeping hold of the paddle shift brings the vehicle to stop. (For more information, refer to the "One pedal driving" section in this chapter.)
- (Whilst the smart regeneration system is turned on) Pull and hold the right paddle shift (-Ⓡ) for over 1 second to turn off the smart regeneration system. (For more information, refer to the "16" section in this chapter.)

Checking the amount of recuperative braking



The selected recuperative braking level is displayed on the instrument cluster. When the vehicle is turned off and on again after the recuperative braking level is lowered to 0, the braking level changes to 1.

Recuperative braking system limitations

Recuperative braking intensity cannot be changed using the paddle shifter in the following situations:

- When the both paddle shifters are pulled at the same time.
- When the vehicle is decelerating by depressing the brake pedal.
- When Smart Cruise Control is activated.
- When recuperative braking is continuously operated with the battery fully charged.

Initial setting of the recuperative braking level and adjustable range vary according to the selected Drive mode.

Drive mode	Adjustable Range
ECO	0 to 3
COMFORT	0 to 3
SPORT	0 to 3
SNOW	0 to 1

For more details, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" in this chapter.

One pedal driving

One pedal driving operates the paddle shifter whilst coasting to control the intensity of recuperative braking. It assists the driver to stop the vehicle without depressing the brake pedal.

i Information

Coasting is the process of driving a vehicle without the brake pedal and the accelerator depressed. Coasting uses the inertia of driving energy instead of the vehicle power.

### Using one pedal driving

Pull and hold the left paddle shifter ( $\pm D$ ) for over 0.5 seconds whilst coasting to enable the one pedal driving mode.

- Release the paddle shifter when the vehicle speed is above 1 mph (3 km/h) to return to the previously set recuperative braking level.
- If the vehicle speed is below 1 mph (3 km/h), the vehicle will keep engaging the brake although the driver releases the paddle shifter.
- Releasing the paddle shifter after the vehicle comes to a stop maintains the vehicle stationary.

### CAUTION

- The vehicle may not come to a stop although the one pedal driving function is active, depending on the condition of the vehicle and the road. Check the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to decelerate.
- If the driver depresses the accelerator whilst pulling and holding the left paddle shifter ( $\pm D$ ) to increase the braking level, one pedal driving function will work like i-PEDAL function. In this case, the vehicle speed is no longer controllable through the paddle shifter.

### One pedal driving limitations

In the following conditions, the vehicle may not come to a stop although the one pedal driving function is active. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

- When driving on a slope, or when the vehicle is repeatedly driven and stopped.
- When the vehicle is driving through the end of the slope.
- When driving on a slippery surface such as an icy, rainy, or muddy road.
- When the wheels are not properly aligned.

- When a wheel slip or wheel spin occurs.
- When the weight on board is too heavy.
- When the vehicle is tilted to one side.
- When the tyre is worn out too much.

### Automatic engagement of EPB

Use one pedal driving function to bring the vehicle to a stop and automatically engage the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).

After the vehicle is stopped, EPB is automatically engaged when any of the following conditions are satisfied.

- The driver's seatbelt is unfastened and the driver's door is open.
- The gear shifts to N (Neutral).
- The bonnet is open.
- The boot is open.
- 5 minutes have passed after the vehicle has stopped.
- The system operation is limited due to other reasons.

### Using i-PEDAL

i-PEDAL assists the driver to accelerate, decelerate, and stop the vehicle with only the accelerator pedal.

### Turning on/off the i-PEDAL

- Turning on i-PEDAL

Pull the left paddle shifter ( $\pm D$ ) once when the recuperative braking level is at 3. i-PEDAL is turned on and the instrument cluster displays the "i-PEDAL". i-PEDAL is not available whilst the smart regeneration system is ON. Turn off the smart regeneration system first before using i-PEDAL.

- Turning off i-PEDAL

Pull the right paddle shifter ( $\pm D$ ) once whilst the function is ON. Otherwise, shift the gear to R (reverse) then to D (drive) whilst the function is ON.

i-PEDAL is disabled and recuperative braking level is set to 3.

### CAUTION

Depending on the vehicle and road condition, the vehicle may not come to a stop although the i-PEDAL function is active. Check for the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to control the vehicle speed. Do not use i-PEDAL on slippery roads.

### ***i-PEDAL limitations***

In the following conditions, the vehicle may not come to a stop although the i-PEDAL is properly activated. Depress the brake to stop the vehicle.

- When driving on a slope, or when the vehicle is repeatedly driven and stopped
- When the vehicle is driving through the end of the slope
- When driving on a slippery surface such as an icy, rainy, or muddy road
- When the wheels are not properly aligned
- When a wheel slip or wheel spin occurs
- When the weight on board is too heavy
- When the vehicle is tilted to the side
- When the tyre is worn out too much

## Smart recuperation system


The smart recuperation system recognises vehicle-to-vehicle distance, road gradient, and speed cameras and controls the recuperation braking level whilst coasting. It reduces unnecessary depressing of pedals to improve energy efficiency and driver convenience.

### ***i*** Information

- Coasting is the process of driving a vehicle without the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal depressed. Coasting uses the inertia of driving energy instead of the vehicle power.
- The recuperation braking system uses the electric motor to engage the brake. The electric motor converts the kinetic energy generated from decelerating the vehicle to electricity and charges the high voltage battery.

## Smart recuperation system on/off

Operate the paddle shifter as shown below to use the smart recuperation system.

- **Turning on the smart recuperation system:** Whilst the **READY** indicator is ON, shift the gear to D (drive), and pull and hold the right paddle shifter () for over a second.



The smart recuperation system is ON and the recuperation braking level is displayed as 'AUTO'.

- **Turning off the smart recuperation system:** Whilst the smart recuperation system is ON, pull and hold the right paddle shifter (➔) for over a second. The instrument cluster will display the recuperation braking level instead of 'AUTO', and the smart recuperation system turns off.
- **Using one pedal driving:** Whilst the smart recuperation system is ON, pull and hold the left paddle shifter (➔) for over 0.5 seconds (For more information, refer to the "13" section in this chapter.)

i-PEDAL is not available whilst the smart recuperation system is ON. Turn off the smart recuperation system first before using i-PEDAL.

## Smart recuperation system operating condition

When the recuperation braking level is displayed as 'AUTO' and the vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h), the system automatically controls the recuperation braking level under the following conditions:

- The road gradient changes.
- Distance from the vehicle ahead reduces or increases.
- Speed of the vehicle ahead reduces or increases.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- When the Forward Safety warning light is ON, the smart recuperation system does not work properly. Depress the brake pedal to decelerate.
- The function that adjusts the recuperation braking intensity depending on the road gradient is only effective when the recuperation braking level is 0. Braking intensity does not significantly change depending on the road gradient if the recuperation braking level is 1 or above.

## Smart recuperation level settings



The instrument cluster displays 'AUTO' (1) when the smart recuperation system is ON. Depending on the conditions, the system adjusts the recuperation braking level (2). The indicator light (3) illuminates when the vehicle recognises a vehicle.

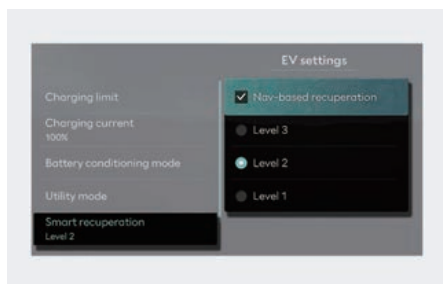
## Smart recuperation default setting

The default braking level of the smart recuperation system can be changed. Set the default braking level to the lowest and let the system adjust the braking intensity automatically.

To change the default level of the smart recuperation system, pull the right paddle shifter (➔) once whilst the system is ON.

### Smart recuperation intensity setting

Recuperation braking intensity of the smart recuperation system can be adjusted to match the driver's preference. Adjust the braking intensity to make the decelerating faster or slower.



To adjust the recuperation braking level of the smart recuperation system, select **Electric vehicle** > **Smart recuperation** in the infotainment system.

### Pausing smart recuperation system

The smart recuperation system is temporarily limited/reduced in the following conditions. Whilst the system is turned off, the driver must keep eyes on the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to decelerate.

- The gear is shifted to N (Neutral), R(Reverse) or P (Park).
- Smart Cruise Control is ON.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is operating.
- ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) is operating.

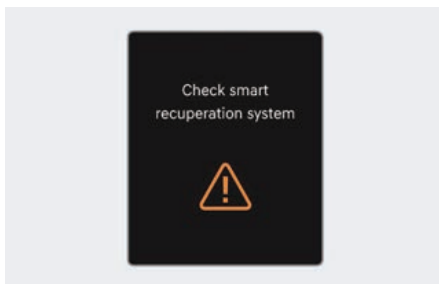
### Front sensors (Front radar)



[A] Front radar

The front radar recognises the distance from the vehicle ahead to control the recuperation braking intensity. When the front radar is covered with snow, rain, or other foreign substances, the performance of the sensors may reduce, and the smart recuperation system may turn off. Always keep the sensors clean.

### System malfunction



If the smart recuperation system is turned off due to the front radar being covered with foreign substances or due to other causes, the "**Check smart recuperation system**" warning message appears. Also the recuperation braking level is displayed instead of 'AUTO'.

The system operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the system is turned on by pulling and holding the right paddle shifter (↵) for over a second.

If the smart recuperation system does not operate normally after the front radar has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the system checked.

## Smart recuperation system precautions

- Always monitor the distance to vehicles ahead on the road. The smart recuperation system is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.
- Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. The smart recuperation system may not recognise unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations.

## General precautions

- Always maintain a safety distance from the vehicle ahead, and adjust your vehicle speed depending on the road conditions.
- Always prepare for unexpected situations and depress the brake pedal to decelerate when necessary. The smart recuperation system cannot react to pedestrians, vehicles making a sudden stop, and vehicles coming from the opposite lane.
- If the vehicle ahead frequently changes the lane, keep your eyes forward to be prepared for hazardous situations. In this case, the smart recuperation system may respond late and may inappropriately response to vehicle movements from the side lanes.
- The driver must depress the brake pedal when stopping the vehicle.
- Depress the brake pedal to decelerate in the following conditions when:

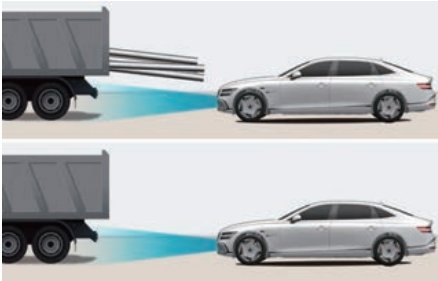
- The front part of the vehicle is lifted up because of the cargo loaded on the rear part of the vehicle.
- You are operating the steering wheel.
- You are not driving in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a that is too narrow or too curved.
- The smart recuperation system may be temporarily turn off when exposed to strong electromagnetic waves.

## Front sensor precautions

- Make sure that no physical impact is applied to the sensor or its surroundings. If the sensor is dislocated due to the shock, the system may notwork properly and the instrument cluster may not display any warnings. If the sensor is exposed to physical impacts, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the system checked.
- The sensors and its surroundings, the sensor covers, and the vehicle grille should always be kept clean.
- Do not attach any accessories such as molding or stickers on the sensor and its detection range, or change the vehicle grille. It may affect sensor performance.
- Always use genuine parts for the sensor cover, and do not paint it.
- Use soft fabric to prevent damage to the sensor cover when washing the car.
- Do not spray the sensor or the surrounding with high pressure water.

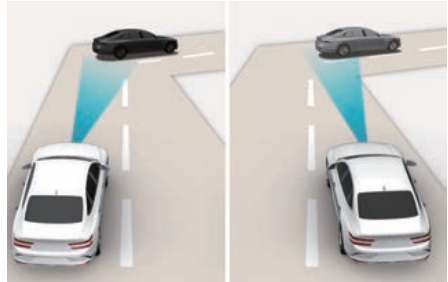
### ***Precautions for vehicle recognition***

- The front sensors may suddenly recognise the foregoing vehicle when the smart recuperation system reacts slowly, or the vehicle is going through the end of a slope or curve. In this case, the recuperation braking intensity is increased and the vehicle may slow down.
- The front sensors may be unable to recognise the vehicle ahead in the following situations even if it is on the same lane.
  - Narrow vehicles such as motor cycles or bicycles
  - Vehicles offset to one side
  - Slow-moving vehicles or sudden decelerating vehicles
  - Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads



- When the vehicle in front of the foregoing vehicle is at a stop and the foregoing vehicle changes the lane, the front sensors may be unable to recognise the stopped vehicle.

### ***Precautions on the curves***



- On a curved road, the front sensors may recognise the vehicles on the other lane as the foregoing vehicle of the same lane. It may increase the recuperation braking intensity and the vehicle may decelerate. Check the surroundings and depress the accelerator to prevent unnecessary reduce of speed.
- The front sensors may be unable to recognise the foregoing vehicle if you are coasting on a curve. The recuperation braking intensity may automatically be lowered, which may accelerate the vehicle.
- If the front sensors suddenly recognise the vehicle ahead, recuperation braking intensity may rise and the vehicle may decelerate.

### Precautions on the slope



- When the vehicle is coasting through the end of a slope or where the gradient is changing, the front sensors may be unable to recognise, or may suddenly recognise the vehicle ahead. It may adjust the recuperation braking intensity and change the vehicle speed.
- When driving up or down the slope, check for the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to decelerate.

### Precautions for shifting lanes



- [A] Your vehicle  
[B] Lane changing vehicle

- If a vehicle on the next lane is moving into the front of your vehicle, the front sensors can only recognise the vehicle when it is completely inside the detection range.
- The front sensors may recognise the vehicles late that intervene suddenly.

## Braking system

### Power-assist brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event of a vehicle power failure, the power assist for the brakes will not work. You can still stop your vehicle, but it will require greater force and increased pedal travel than normal. The stopping distance, however, will be longer than with power brakes.

#### *i* Information

- When the brake pedal is depressed under certain driving conditions or weather conditions, you may temporarily hear a noise. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.
- Whilst driving on a road with deicing chemicals, brake noise or abnormal tyre wear may occur due to deicing chemicals. In a safe traffic condition, additionally apply the brakes to remove deicing chemicals on the brake discs and pads.

#### WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.  
So increase the regeneration braking level with the left paddle shift lever to decrease the speed.

- When descending down a long or steep hill, use the paddle shifter to increase the regeneration braking level in order to decrease your speed without using the brake pedal excessively. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.
  - Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely decelerate. Because wet brakes increase braking distance and cause noise troubles, select 0 step of the regenerative braking system and depress the brake pedal around 10 times, with keeping the safe distance from other vehicles, lightly in order to dry the braking system. Such procedure may decrease the driving distance by restraining the regenerative braking system, which is not a system malfunction. Inspect the braking system after car wash or driving over wet road conditions.
- 

### NOTICE

- Do not continue depressing the brake pedal if the **READY** indicator is OFF. The battery may be discharged.
  - Noise and vibration generated during braking is normal.
  - Under normal operation, electric brake pump noise and motor vibration may occur temporarily in below cases.
    - When the pedal is depressed suddenly.
    - When the pedal is repeatedly depressed in short intervals.
    - When the ABS function is activated whilst braking.
- 

## Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you may hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

### *i* Information

Always replace both the left and right brake pads on the front and rear axles at the same time.

---

### NOTICE

To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.

---

### WARNING

Frequent braking may deform components and worn the disc brake causing vibration when braking.

Observe the speed limit to prevent brake damage from excessive braking.

Brake wear, noise, vibration from excessive braking or deformation of the brakes caused by repeatedly braking in high speed, racing on tracks, etc., can be excluded from warranty coverage.

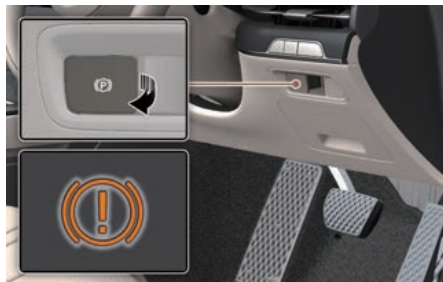
---

## High performance brake

For vehicles equipped with the High Performance Brake (large diameter monoblock brakes with enhanced braking performance), noise such as a squeal, squeak or groan is generated whilst braking. This is normal and the friction may create circle patterns on the disc surface. This is also a normal condition which does not affect braking performance.

## Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

### Applying the parking brake



#### To apply EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light comes on.

**EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:**

- Requested by other systems.
- The driver turns the vehicle off whilst Auto Hold is operating.
- The gear is shifted to P (Park).

#### Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance may be longer than normal.

### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, do not operate the EPB whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It may damage the brake system and cause a collision.

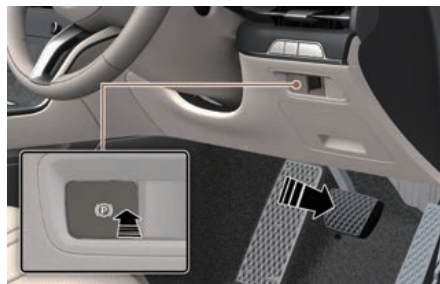
### Information

During emergency braking, the Parking Brake warning light illuminates and you may hear a clicking noise.

### NOTICE

If you notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Releasing the parking brake



#### To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
2. Press the EPB switch whilst depressing the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

#### To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:

Gear in P (Park) or in N (Neutral)

With the vehicle running, depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive). Make sure the doors, bonnet, and boot are closed and the seat belt is fastened.

### **i** Information

- For the Middle East, EPB is released regardless of seat belt fastening.
- You can engage EPB even though the Stop/Start button is in the OFF position (only if battery power is available), but you cannot release it.
- Depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch before you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

- If the Parking Brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not drive your vehicle with EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.

### **Warning messages**

**To release EPB, fasten seatbelt and close door, bonnet and boot**

If the driver's seat belt is unfastened, or the bonnet, boot, doors are open, and you try to drive with EPB applied, a warning sounds and a message appears.

### **! WARNING**

To prevent serious injury or death from unintended vehicle movement:

- Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal before parking, shift the gear into P (Park), pull up the EPB switch, and move the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch.

- Only release EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.

### **! CAUTION**

In winter, the EPB related device may freeze and cannot be released. Do not use the EPB, but park on a flat surface with the gear in P (Park). Use wheel chocks under the wheels if necessary.

If the EPB applies automatically when the gear is shifted to P (Park), turn off Auto Hold, and press the EPB switch to release the parking brake.

### **NOTICE**

Driving with the parking brake on may overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts.

### **i** Information

- A clicking sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your keys with a parking attendant or assistant, be sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.

**Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal**

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly, a warning sounds and a message appears.

**Parking brake automatically applied**

When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning sounds and a message appears.

### **EPB malfunction**

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light illuminates if the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON position and goes off in about 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON position, the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the ESC indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of EPB.

#### **NOTICE**

- If the Parking Brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks after the EPB switch has been pulled, the EPB may not be applied.
- If the EPB warning light is still on or the Parking Brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that your vehicle be towed on a flatbed tow truck to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **Parking brake warning light**



This light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position.

Before driving, make sure the parking brake is released and the Parking Brake warning light is OFF.

If the Parking Brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst the motor is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system.

If possible, stop driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

## Auto Hold

Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

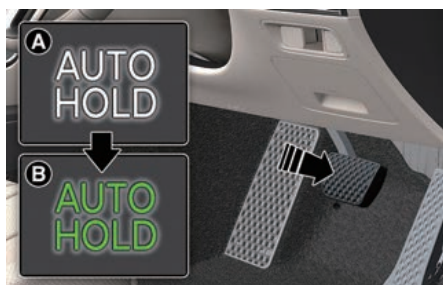
### *i* Information

When the vehicle is restarted, the last setting for Auto Hold is applied.

#### *To apply:*



1. With the driver's door, bonnet, and boot closed depress the brake pedal and then press the **AUTO HOLD** switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator comes on and the system is in standby.



[A] White  
[B] Green

2. When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal, Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to

hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.

The vehicle remains stationary even if you release the brake pedal.

#### *To release:*

If you depress the accelerator pedal with the gear in D (Drive) or R (Reverse), the Auto Hold is released automatically and the vehicle starts to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.

### **WARNING**

Always look around your vehicle before depressing the accelerator pedal to release Auto Hold.

#### *To cancel:*



1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press the **AUTO HOLD** switch.

The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.

### **WARNING**

To prevent unintended vehicle movement, always depress your foot on the brake pedal to cancel the Auto Hold before you:

- Drive downhill.
- Drive the vehicle in R (Reverse).
- Park the vehicle.

## *i* Information

- The Auto Hold does not operate when:
  - The gear is in P (Park).
  - EPB is applied.
- The Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:
  - The driver's door or bonnet is opened.
  - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes.
  - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope.
  - The vehicle moved several times.
  - The boot is opened.

In these cases, the Parking Brake warning light comes on, the <sup>AUTO</sup>HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message appears to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving, depress the brake pedal, check the surrounding area, and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

## NOTICE

If the <sup>AUTO</sup>HOLD indicator changes to yellow, or the driver's door, bonnet, or boot open detection system malfunctions, Auto Hold does not work properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Warning messages

### Parking brake automatically applied

When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning sounds and a message appears.

**Turning off AUTO HOLD.** Press brake pedal.

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning sounds and a message appears.

When this message is displayed, Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, depress the brake pedal.

### Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release Auto Hold by pressing the **AUTO HOLD** switch, a warning sounds and a message appears on the cluster display.

## Brake Disc Cleaning

Use the Brake Disc Cleaning function if noise is generated when depressing the brake whilst driving or if the brake disc gets rusty. It helps reduce the noise and rust. Regenerative braking is restrained whilst Brake Disc Cleaning is operated, which may lower the electric energy efficiency.

Press and hold the **AUTO HOLD** switch for over 3 seconds.

- Brake Disc Cleaning starts operating when the message "**Brake disc cleaning**" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Regenerative braking is restrained whilst the brake is depressed about 10 times whilst driving (it may differ depending on driving conditions). It helps reduce the noise and rust.
- Brake Disc Cleaning function will turn off automatically when the operation is completed. It can also be turned off before operation is completed by turning off the vehicle or pressing the **AUTO HOLD** switch for over 3 seconds.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### **WARNING**

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system does not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions:

Drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:

- Rough, gravel, or snow-covered roads.
- On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.
- Tyre chains are installed on your vehicle.

Never test the safety features of an ABS or ESC equipped vehicle by high speed driving or cornering. It may cause a collision and endanger the safety of yourself or others.

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

### **Using ABS**

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Depress your brake pedal as hard as possible.

When you apply your brakes under conditions that may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake

pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.


ABS does not reduce the time or distance to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS does not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.


ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS () warning light stays on for several seconds after the Start/Stop button is in POWER ON position.

During that time, ABS goes through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

### **WARNING**

If the ABS () warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

---

## NOTICE

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, ABS is active continuously and the ABS (ABS) warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn off the vehicle.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light is off, your ABS system is normal.

If not, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

## i Information

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS (ABS) warning light may turn on at the same time. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

## Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



Electronic Stability Control helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the electric vehicle control system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for

safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

## ⚠ WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions when cornering. ESC does not prevent a collision.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces may result in severe collisions.

## ESC operation

### ESC ON condition

When the Start/Stop button is in POWER ON position, ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for about three seconds. After both lights go off, ESC is enabled.

### When operating



When ESC is operating, the ESC indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions that may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal.
- When ESC activates, the vehicle may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If Cruise Control has been used when ESC activates, Cruise Control automatically disengages. See "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in chapter 7.

### ESC OFF condition



To cancel ESC operation:

- State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and the message, "**Traction Control disabled**" illuminate. The traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

- State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and the message, "**Traction & Stability Control disabled**" illuminate and a warning chime sounds. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, ESC automatically turns on again.

When ESC (electric vehicle control) is deactivated, the vehicle will lose the traction and stability if the vehicle is driven by abrupt steering wheel control.

It is possible that the tyre may make a collision with the connected parts of the tyre. We recommend to do not turn off ESC whilst driving the vehicle for your safety.

### Indicator lights

#### ESC indicator light (blinks)



#### ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)



When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating.

If the ESC indicator light stays on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when ESC is turned off.

### WARNING

When ESC is blinking, this indicates ESC is active:

- Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate.
- Never turn off ESC whilst the ESC indicator light is blinking. You may lose control of the vehicle and collide.

### Information

Driving with wheels and tyres with different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the appropriate size for your vehicle. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tyres installed.

## ESC OFF usage

### When Driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn off ESC whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

### NOTICE

To prevent damage to the reduction gear:

- Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively whilst the ESC, ABS, and Parking Brake warning lights appear. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce motor power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively whilst these lights appear.
- When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).

### Information

Turning off ESC does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.

## Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

Vehicle Stability Management is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps the vehicle stay stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery, and rough roads where traction over the four tyres can suddenly become uneven.

### WARNING

VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always monitor the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead of you.
- Never drive too fast for the road conditions. Excessive speed in bad weather or on slippery and uneven roads may result in severe collisions.


## VSM operation

### When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions that can activate ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

### Information

VSM does not operate when:



- Driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline.
- Driving in reverse.
- The ESC OFF indicator light is on.
- The MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) () warning light is on or blinks.

### VSM OFF condition

To cancel VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. ESC OFF () indicator light illuminates.

To turn on VSM again, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light will go out.

### WARNING

If the ESC () indicator light or MDPS () warning light stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

### **NOTICE**

Driving with wheels and tyres with different sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized tyres and wheels installed.

---

### **Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)**

Hill-Start Assist Control helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting from a stop on a hill.

### **WARNING**

Always be ready to depress the accelerator pedal when starting from a stop on an uphill slope. Hill-Start Assist Control activates only for about 5 seconds.

---

### **Information**

- Hill-Start Assist Control does not operate when the gear is shifted to P (Park) or N (Neutral).
  - Hill-Start Assist Control activates even when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off. It does not activate, if the ESC is not operating normally.
- 

### **Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)**

Emergency Stop Signal alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop lights, whilst sharply and severely braking.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops. (The deceleration power exceeds  $7 \text{ m/s}^2$ , and the driving speed exceeds 34 mph (55 km/h).)
- ABS is activated.

The hazard warning flasher automatically turns ON after blinking the stop lights when:

- The vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h),
- ABS is deactivated, and
- The sudden braking situation is over.

The hazard warning flasher turns OFF when:

- The vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.

The driver manually turns OFF the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.

### **Information**

Emergency Stop Signal does not activate, when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

---

## Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

Multi-Collision Brake controls the brake automatically in the event of an accident where the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of additional accidents that may occur.

### System operation

- From the time the airbag deploys, Multi-Collision Brake monitors the depression intensity of the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a short period. The system operates when the following conditions are met:
  - Vehicle speed is under 112 mph (180 km/h) at the time of collision.
  - The brake pedal and accelerator pedal are hardly depressed.
- When the driver steps on the brake pedal over a certain level whilst Multi-Collision Brake is active, the braking power takes priority over automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system. However, if the driver takes his/her foot off the brake pedal, the Multi-Collision Brake system will maintain automatic braking.

### System off

Multi-Collision Brake is cancelled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed over a certain level.
- The vehicle stops.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or electronic devices has malfunctioned.
- In a situation system cannot operate normally.
- Ten seconds have passed since the brake has been controlled automatically by Multi-Collision Brake system.

### WARNING

- Multi-Collision Brake decreases vehicle speed after a collision and reduces the risk of a second collision, but it does not prevent a second collision. You may drive away from the collision spot to avoid other dangerous situations by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- After the vehicle is stopped by Multi Collision Brake, the system stops controlling the brakes. Depending on the situation, the driver should depress the brake or the accelerator pedal to prevent further accidents.

## Brake Assistant System (BAS)

The Brake Assistant System provides additional pressure when the brake pedal is momentarily and strongly depressed in a situation sudden braking is required whilst driving.

The Brake Assistant System reduces the time for ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) control to enter and consequently reduces the braking distance, by providing additional pressure up to the point of ABS intervention.

### WARNING

The system may not operate depending on the driver's driving habits, vehicle speed, the degree to which the brake pedal is depressed and the road surface condition.

## Good braking practices

### **WARNING**

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the gear to the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the parking brake not applied or not in P (Park) may roll unintentionally and may cause injury to the driver and others.

Wet brakes can be dangerous! The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle may not stop quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure may result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you are slowing down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

## All Wheel Drive (AWD)

When All Wheel Drive (AWD) is activated, driving forces are distributed appropriately to front and rear wheels.

It could improve driving performance by maximizing the driving force of vehicles on severe road conditions such as steep hills, unpaved, slippery, etc.

Advantage of electronic AWD

1. Improvement of straight stability
2. Improvement of driving performance on curve
3. Secure stability on severe condition such as wet and sandy roads
4. Improvement of energy efficiency from driving mode automatic control

### **Information**

AWD vehicles could change the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode (2WD/AWD) helps improve energy efficiency and driving stability.

### **WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead,

slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.

### NOTICE

- Do not drive in water if the water level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.
- Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Depress the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking condition return.
- Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud, or water (refer to the "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" section in chapter 9).
- Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off-road use, especially the bottom of the vehicle.
- Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tyres of the same size and type.
- Make sure that a full time AWD vehicle is towed by a flat-bed tow truck.

### For safe AWD operation

#### Before driving

- Make sure all passengers always wear their seat belts.
- Sit upright and closer to the steering wheel than usual. Adjust the steering wheel to a position comfortable for you to drive.

#### Driving on snow-covered or icy roads

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use snow tyres or tyre chains.
- Keep a sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- Using regenerative braking helps the steering on the downhill. However, it may be difficult to adjust the vehicle

whilst coasting using regenerative braking, so avoid using the third level of regenerative braking as much as possible.

- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent skids.
- It is difficult to start again if the vehicle stops on an uphill road. Keep your distance from other vehicles and drive slowly.

### i Information

- When using snow tyres, mount them on all four wheels.
- When using tyre chains, install them on the rear tyres. However, driving speed must be below 20 mph (30 km/h) and minimise the driving distance. High-speed or long-term driving with the chains installed may malfunction or damage the AWD system.

For more information on Snow Tyres and Tyre Chains, refer to the "Winter driving" section later in this chapter.

### Driving in sand or mud

- Maintain slow and constant speeds.
- Use tyre chains when driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep a distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- Reduce the vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.

### NOTICE

When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand, or mud, place a nonslip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse causing a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

### Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
  - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
  - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
  - Do not change gears whilst driving downhill. Select a gear before driving downhill.
  - Drive straight as possible.

### WARNING

- Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may roll over in the grade, terrain, and water/mud conditions.
- Do not drive across the contour of steep hills. A slight change in the wheel angle may destabilize the vehicle. A stable vehicle may lose stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over, resulting in a serious injury or death.

### Additional driving conditions

- Become familiar with the off-road conditions before driving.
- Always pay attention when driving off-road and avoid dangerous areas.
- Drive slowly when driving in heavy wind.
- Reduce vehicle speed when cornering. The centre of gravity of AWD vehicles is higher than conventional 2WD vehicles. The vehicle is more likely to roll over if you turn the steering wheel too quickly.
- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.

### WARNING

Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering manoeuvre or from steering wheel rebound due to an impact with objects on the ground. You may lose control of the steering wheel that may lead to serious injury or death.

## Emergency precautions

### *Tyres*

- Do not use tyres or wheels with different size and type from the one installed on your vehicle. It may affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could cause steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.
- When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the same size, type, tread, brand, and load-carrying capacity. If you equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by Genesis Branded Vehicle for off-road driving, do not use these tyres for highway driving.

### WARNING



Never start or run the vehicle whilst an AWD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle may slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death.

### ***Towing***

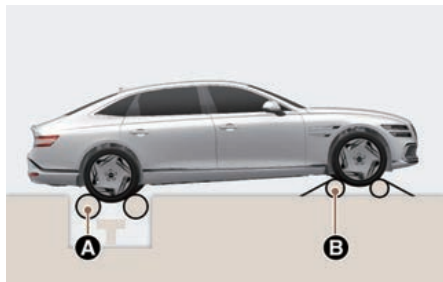
AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. For more information, refer to the "Towing" section in chapter 8.

### ***Vehicle inspection***

- If the vehicle needs to be operated on a vehicle lift, do not attempt to stop any of the four wheels from turning. This may damage the AWD system.
- Never apply the parking brake whilst running the vehicle on a vehicle lift. This may damage the AWD system.

### ***Dynamometer testing***

An AWD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.



[A] Roll tester (Speedometer)

[B] Temporary free roller

If a 2WD roll tester must be used:

1. Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

### ***NOTICE***

- Never engage the parking brake whilst performing the test.
- When the vehicle is lifted up, do not operate the front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.

### ***! WARNING***

Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle may jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

## Electronic control suspension

 If equipped

Electronic Control Suspension controls the vehicle suspension automatically using vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements, and acceleration.

### System malfunction

#### *Check Electronic Suspension*

When Electronic Control Suspension is not working properly, this warning message appears on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Electronically controlled suspension with road preview

 If equipped

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview helps control the vehicle suspension automatically using the front view camera and vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements, and acceleration.

#### *Front view camera*



[A] Front view camera

The front view camera is a sensor that detects the front road. When the front view camera is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and the data collected by the camera may be limited.

### NOTICE

To prevent vehicle damage:

- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
- Only have the detecting sensor replaced or repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
- Always keep the camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) on the dashboard.

### *i* Information

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products when:

- The windscreen glass is replaced.
- The front view camera or cover gets damaged or replaced.

## Limitations of the system

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview always operates whilst driving according to the vehicle's movement, and the preview function starts to work when the front view camera detects road conditions such as speed bumps. Therefore, the preview function is limited when there is an extreme condition that the front view camera may not work normally. In this case, the electronic control suspension function operates without the preview function in accordance with vehicle movement.

## System malfunction

### *Check Electronic Suspension*

When Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview is not working properly, the "**Check electronic suspension**" warning message may appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### NOTICE

If the battery level is high or low, Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview may not work temporarily to protect the system. If this occurs, "**Check electronic suspension**" warning message may appear.

## Drive mode integrated control system

 If equipped

The drive mode can be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

### Drive mode

The mode changes whenever the **DRIVE MODE** button is pressed.



The mode changes, as the following, whenever the **DRIVE MODE** button is pressed.

- **ECO → COMFORT → SPORT → MY → SNOW**

Hold: CHAUFFEUR

### MY DRIVE mode features

MY DRIVE mode allows driver to personalize the setting of the motor, steering wheel and suspension.

To set MY DRIVE mode, go to **Setup > Vehicle > Drive mode > MY DRIVE MODE** in the infotainment system.

- Motor: ECO/COMFORT/SPORT
- Steering: COMFORT/SPORT
- Suspension: COMFORT/SPORT

### Setting BRAKE mode

 If equipped

To set the BRAKE mode to adjust brake response, park the vehicle and shift the gear to P (Park). Go to **Setup > Vehicle > Drive mode > Brakes mode** in the infotainment system and select a mode.

- COMFORT: Brake response appropriate for comfort driving.
- SPORT: Brake response appropriate for dynamic driving.
- CHAUFFEUR: Brake response appropriate for rear seat comfort.

### Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### Drive mode features

#### COMFORT mode

COMFORT mode provides a balanced motor response which is suited for everyday driving. The vehicle is usually driven with 2WD (Rear-wheel drive), but automatically shifts to AWD depending on the road and driving conditions.

#### ECO mode

ECO mode is a driving mode that helps improve energy efficiency by limiting maximum vehicle power (torque), providing smooth vehicle response and driving the vehicle with the rear wheels (2WD).

Energy efficiency varies according to the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.

**When ECO mode is activated:**

- All wheel drive and sharp acceleration and deceleration is limited
- The vehicle will automatically convert between 2WD to AWD when:
  - i-Pedal or One Pedal Driving is operating
  - The temperature is low
  - Driving on a slope or a slippery road

**SPORT mode**

SPORT mode is a driving mode that provides sporty but firm riding by making the motor response more quickly, making the steering wheel heavier and driving the vehicle with all four wheels (AWD).

In SPORT mode, the energy efficiency may decrease.

- When SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.
- Whenever the vehicle is restarted, the drive mode will revert back to COMFORT mode. If SPORT mode is required, re-select SPORT mode.

**SNOW mode**

SNOW mode is a driving mode improving driving performance by changing the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode (2WD/AWD) helps improve driving stability.

- Press and hold the drive mode button to select SNOW mode.
- When SNOW mode is selected, the SNOW indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and the colour of the mood lamp will change.
- When SNOW mode is activated, the driving power is distributed to four wheels automatically, increasing the stability of the vehicle.

**NOTICE**




- Depress the accelerator pedal softly on the snow and the ice.
  - Keep the distance from the vehicle in the front.
  - Prevent rapid acceleration, deceleration and steering control.
- Abrupt driving on the snow may cause the accident.

**CHAUFFEUR mode features**

CHAUFFEUR mode controls the motor, steering wheel and suspension to provide comfort driving experience to rear seat passengers.

**Drive modes characteristic**

The characteristic of each components varies according to which drive mode is selected.

Drive mode	ECO	COMFORT	SPORT	SNOW
Characteristics	High electric energy efficiency mode	Comfort driving mode	Sporty driving mode	Snow driving
Button activation	Press	Press	Press	Press more than 1 sec.
Indicator on the cluster		-		
Climate system control	ECO/COMFORT	COMFORT	COMFORT	COMFORT
Speed limit	-	-	-	-
Regenerative braking level	0-3	0-3	0-3	0-1

*i* Information

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the user's manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- You can set the driving condition for each drive mode, at the **Drive mode > ECO climate control** in the infotainment system.

## Road active noise control

Road Active Noise Control helps reduce noise caused whilst driving.

The system may not operate properly in the following conditions:

- Any of the window is open.
- Any of the door is open.
- The boot is open.
- Vehicle's microphone and speaker is blocked by loads.

## System malfunction

When Road Active Noise Control is not working properly, the "**Check Road Active Noise Control system**" warning message may appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Active sound design

- Active sound design provides various virtual driving sounds based on the driving mode, vehicle speed, and accelerator pedal. You can adjust the volume and change the settings for acceleration pedal response and sound style.
- You can activate or deactivate the Active Sound Design function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Active sound design > Horizon/Heritage: Black**
- Any unauthorised replacement of the vehicle's speaker and amplifier may cause Active Sound Design to malfunction.

### *i* Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Special driving conditions

### Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, and sand:

- Drive cautiously and allow for longer braking distances.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- When your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spin.
- Put sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction if stuck in ice, snow, or mud.

#### WARNING

Changing the tyre speed suddenly could cause the tyres to skid whilst driving on slippery surface. Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces.

---

### Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the vehicle.

To prevent reduction gear wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal whilst shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal whilst the reduction gear is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

#### WARNING

Always turn off the ESC system before rocking the vehicle. If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tyres may increase very quickly. If the tyres become damaged, a tyre blow out or tyre explosion may occur - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle may overheat quickly, possibly causing a motor compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of the tyres or the motor. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 35 mph (56 km/h).

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid motor overheating, possible damage to the gear, and tyre damage. Refer to the "Towing" section in chapter 8.

---

### Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, cornering should be taken under gentle acceleration.

## Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, because it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there are no street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights can make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it takes several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

## Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. When driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Smart Cruise Control.
- Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- Make sure your tyres have enough tread. If your tyres do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement may cause a skid and possibly collision. Refer to the "22" section in chapter 9.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles may affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.

- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Hydroplaning

If the road is wet enough and you are driving fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tyre tread decreases, refer to the "22" section in chapter 9.

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is not deeper than the bottom of the wheel hub. If you are not sure, turn around and find a different route.

Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because the brake performance can be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Highway driving

### *Tyres*

Adjust the tyre inflation pressure, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tyres.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tyres, which may reduce traction or fail.

### **i** Information

Never over-inflate your tyres above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tyres.

### **Coolant and high voltage battery**

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more electric energy and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve electric energy when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the coolant level and the electric energy level before driving.

## Winter driving

### **Snow or icy conditions**

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are very hazardous practices. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause the vehicle to skid.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres.

Always carry emergency equipment. You may want to carry tyre chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

### **Summer tyres**

- Summer tyres are used to maximise the driving performance on dry roads.
- If the temperature is below 7 °C (45 °F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, the summer tyres lose their brake performance and traction as the tyre grip weakens significantly.
- If the temperature is below 7 °C (45 °F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, mount snow tyres or all-season tyres of the same size with your vehicle's standard tyre for safe driving. Both snow and all-season tyres have M+S markings.
- When using the M+S tyres, use tyres with the same tread produced by the same manufacturer for safe driving.
- When driving with the M+S tyres with the lower maximum allowable speed than that of the vehicle's standard summer tyre, be careful not to exceed the speed allowed for the M+S tyres.

## Snow tyres

 if equipped

### WARNING

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

We recommend that you use snow tyres when road temperature is below 7 °C (45 °F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tyre for your vehicle.

Standard tyre		Recommended snow tyre	
Tyre size	Wheel size	Tyre size	Wheel size
245/45ZR19	8.5J X 19	245/45R19	8.5J X 19
275/40ZR19	9.5J X 19	245/45R19	8.5J X 19
		275/40R19	9.5J X 19

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, be sure to use the same inflation pressure as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

### Tyre chains



Since the sidewalls on some radial tyres are thinner than other types of tyres, they may be damaged by mounting certain types of tyre chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of tyre chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminium wheels; if possible, use AutoSock (fabric snow chain). Install the tyre chains after reviewing the instructions provided with the tyre chains. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper tyre chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

When using tyre chains, attach them to the rear wheels.

#### Disabling Rear Wheel Steering system to install snow chains



If equipped

If the Rear Wheel Steering system is applied, disable the system to protect the vehicle when snow chains are installed.

- Select **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Snow chains**

Installed in the infotainment system to disable the Rear Wheel Steering system.

- After selecting '**Snow chains installed**' in the infotainment system, turn the steering wheel 180 degrees to the left and right 2 to 3 times whilst the vehicle

is stopped, and check if the rear wheels are straight before driving.

After removing the snow chain, deselect '**Snow chains installed**' in the infotainment system before driving.

#### CAUTION

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- After removing the snow chain, be sure to deselect **Snow chains installed** in the infotainment system to operate the Rear Wheel Steering system again.

#### NOTICE

If you drive without disabling the Rear Wheel Steering system in the infotainment system after installing snow chains, the snow chains can damage your vehicle's body or chassis parts. When you hear the snow chain hitting the vehicle, stop the vehicle and check whether the snow chains are installed properly and whether the Rear Wheel Steering system is disabled.

#### WARNING

The use of AutoSock (fabric snow chain) may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- Drive less than 20 mph (30 km/h) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.

- Install AutoSock (fabric snow chain) only in pairs and on the rear tyres. Installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the tyres provides a greater driving force, but does not prevent side skids.

### **i** Information

Do not install studded tyres without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

### Chain installation

When installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain), follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as possible. Drive slowly (less than 20 mph (30 km/h) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting AutoSock (fabric snow chain), park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle's Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available).

Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn off the vehicle before installing tyre chains.

### NOTICE

When using AutoSock (fabric snow chains):

- Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains may damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels.
- If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chains to prevent contact with the vehicle body.

- To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.3-0.6 miles (0.5-1.0 km).

## Winter precautions

### *Check battery and cables*

Winter temperatures affect battery performance. Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in chapter 9. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *To prevent locks from freezing*

Spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

### *Use approved window washer anti-freeze solution*

Add window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. We recommend that the window washer anti-freeze solution is available from an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products, and most vehicle accessory outlets.

### NOTICE

Do not use coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

### ***Do not let your parking brake freeze***

Under some conditions, your parking brake may freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze: temporarily apply the parking brake with the gear in P (Park), then block the rear wheels, and then release the parking brake.

### ***Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath***

Under some conditions, snow and ice may build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to make sure that the front wheels and the steering components are not blocked.

### ***Carry emergency equipment***

In accordance with weather conditions, carry appropriate emergency equipment, whilst driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

### ***Do not place objects or materials in the motor compartment***

Putting objects or materials in the motor compartment may cause a motor failure or a fire, because they may block the motor cooling. Such damage is not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

## **Trailer towing**

We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.

## **Vehicle weight**

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tyre and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

### ***Base Kerb Weight***

This is the weight of the vehicle including high voltage battery and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

### ***Vehicle Kerb Weight***

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

### ***Cargo Weight***

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

### ***GAW (Gross Axle Weight)***

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

***GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)***

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

***GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)***

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

***GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)***

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

**Overloading****WARNING**

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause a collision or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

---



# 7. Driver assistance system

Before Using Driver Assistance System .....	7-4
Driver Assistance System sensors .....	7-4
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) .....	7-7
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings.....	7-9
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation.....	7-12
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations.....	7-20
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA).....	7-28
Lane Keeping Assist settings.....	7-28
Lane Keeping Assist operation.....	7-29
Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-31
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) .....	7-33
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings.....	7-34
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation.....	7-35
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations.....	7-37
Safe Exit Assist (SEA) .....	7-41
Safe Exit Assist settings .....	7-41
Safe Exit Assist operation .....	7-42
Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-44
Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA).....	7-46
Manual Speed Limit Assist operation .....	7-46
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) .....	7-48
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings .....	7-48
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation .....	7-49
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-50
Driver Attention Warning (DAW) .....	7-53
Driver Attention Warning settings .....	7-53
Driver Attention Warning operation .....	7-53
Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations .....	7-54
Forward Attention Warning (FAW).....	7-57
Forward Attention Warning settings .....	7-57
Forward Attention Warning operation .....	7-58
Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations .....	7-58
Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) .....	7-60
Blind-Spot View Monitor settings.....	7-61
Blind-Spot View Monitor operation.....	7-61

Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction .....	7-61
Smart Cruise Control (SCC).....	7-62
Smart Cruise Control settings .....	7-62
Smart Cruise Control operation .....	7-63
Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations .....	7-70
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC).....	7-74
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings .....	7-75
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation .....	7-75
Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control .....	7-76
Lane Following Assist (LFA).....	7-79
Lane Following Assist settings .....	7-79
Lane Following Assist operation .....	7-79
Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-81
Highway Driving Assist (HDA).....	7-82
Highway Driving Assist settings .....	7-83
Highway Driving Assist operation .....	7-84
Highway Lane Change Assist .....	7-87
Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-90
Rear View Monitor (RVM).....	7-91
Rear View Monitor settings .....	7-91
Rear View Monitor operation .....	7-92
Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations .....	7-94
Surround View Monitor (SVM) .....	7-95
Surround View Monitor settings .....	7-95
Surround View Monitor operation.....	7-96
Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations .....	7-99
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) .....	7-100
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings.....	7-100
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation.....	7-101
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-104
Parking Distance Warning (PDW) .....	7-107
Parking Distance Warning settings .....	7-107
Parking Distance Warning operation .....	7-108
Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations .....	7-110
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) .....	7-112

# 7. Driver assistance system

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	7-112
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation.....	7-113
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-114
Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) .....	7-117
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	7-117
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	7-118
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-120
Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2) .....	7-123
Remote Smart Parking Assist settings .....	7-124
Remote Smart Parking Assist operation.....	7-125
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-140
Declaration of conformity .....	7-145
Front radar.....	7-145
Front corner radar/Rear corner radar.....	7-146

## Before Using Driver Assistance System

### WARNING

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. Driver Assistance system may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Control your vehicle at all times. In some cases, the Driver Assistance system may provide unwanted braking or steering.
- Never attempt to activate any Driver Assistance system by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.
- The steering, braking, and acceleration inputs from you may override the responses from Driver Assistance system.
- Do not use Driver Assistance system when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- Do not use Driver Assistance system if you believe the sensors or the systems may not be functioning properly.

### Information

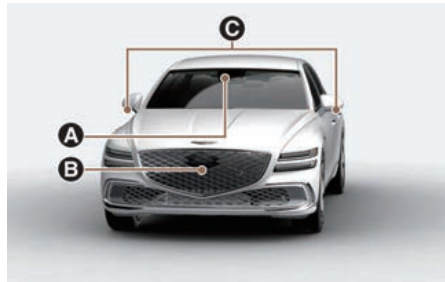
Due to the infotainment software version, the description of each function of the driver assistance system may differ from the owner's manual.

## Driver Assistance System sensors

The Driver Assistance Systems on your vehicle uses cameras and sensors to detect potential hazards in the vicinity of your vehicle.

### *Detecting sensors*

#### Cameras



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

- [A] Front view camera (if equipped)
- [B] Wide-front view camera (if equipped)
- [C] Wide-side view camera (if equipped)
- [D] Wide-rear view camera

### CAUTION

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
- We recommend that the detecting sensor be replaced or repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
- Always keep the camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) on the dashboard.
- Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the camera lenses. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.

### Radars



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

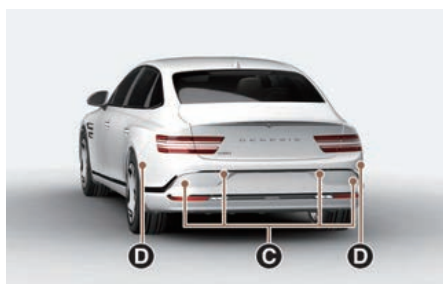
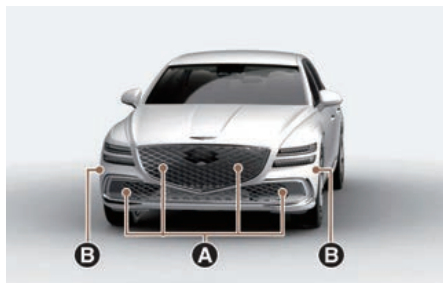
- [A] Front radar (if equipped)  
 [B] Front corner radar (if equipped)  
 [C] Rear corner radar (if equipped)

### CAUTION

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never disassemble the radar or radar assembly, and never apply any impact on it.
- If there is impact on or near the radar, the sensors may be damaged or not be properly aligned near the radar, even though a warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Driver Assist system may not operate properly. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If the radar have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- We recommend that genuine Genesis parts are used to repair the bumper where the radar is located. Their performance have been proven.
- Do not install a license plate frame or other objects such as bumper sticker, film, bumper guard, or bumper wrap near the radar.
- Driver Assistance system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced, or the surroundings of the radar has been damaged or painted.
- If a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is attached, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or the function may not operate.

## Ultrasonic sensors



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

- [A] Front ultrasonic sensors
- [B] Front side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped)
- [C] Rear ultrasonic sensors
- [D] Rear side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped)

## CAUTION

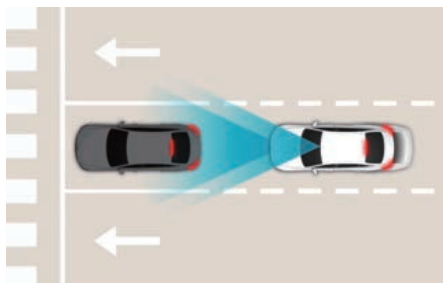
To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always keep the ultrasonic sensors clean.
- Do not spray the ultrasonic sensors or the surrounding area directly with high pressure water.
- Do not apply objects such as bumper sticker or bumper guard, near the ultrasonic sensors or never apply paint to the bumper or other locations.
- Never disassemble or strike the ultrasonic sensors components.
- Do not modify the vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installations. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- If the ultrasonic sensors have been forcibly moved out of proper alignment or are damaged, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)

 if equipped

### Basic function



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect a vehicle, a motorcyclist, a pedestrian, or a cyclist ahead on the road and may warn you of a possible collision with a warning message on the instrument cluster and a warning sound. Also, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist with braking your vehicle to help reduce collision speed or help avoid a collision.

In addition, when driving at high speeds, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect vehicles in front and adjacent lanes. If a collision is imminent when changing lanes, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will apply emergency braking to help reduce collision speed or help avoid a collision. (if equipped)

### *i* Information

A motorcyclist refers to the driver of a vehicle riding the following motorcyclist.

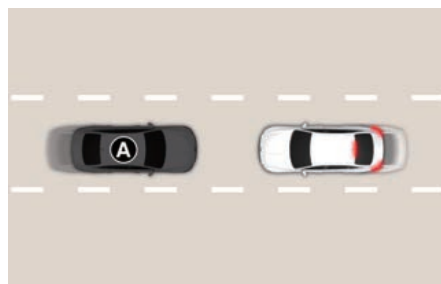
- Mopeds with 50 cc and restricted top speeds
- Motorcycles

### Junction Turning function



Junction Turning function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist in an adjacent lane when turning right at a crossroad with the turn signal on by applying emergency braking.

### Direct Oncoming function

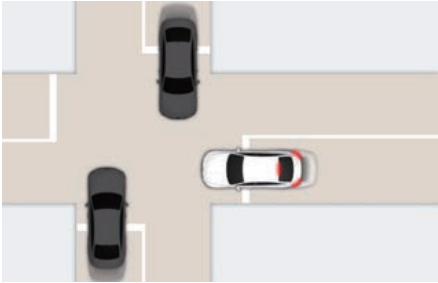


[A] Oncoming vehicle

Direct Oncoming function helps reduce the speed at a collision when a vehicle or motorcyclist approaching from the opposite side is detected.

### Junction Crossing function

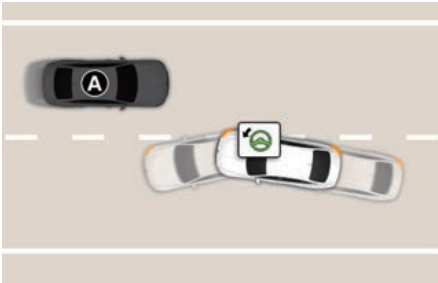
 if equipped



Junction Crossing function helps avoid a collision with oncoming vehicles on the left or right side when crossing an intersection by applying emergency braking.

### Lane-Change Oncoming function


 if equipped

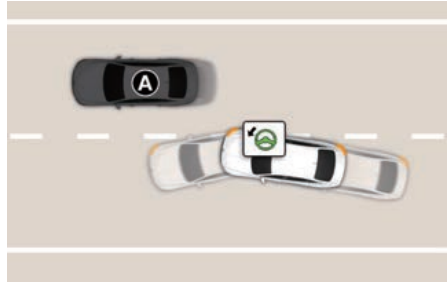


[A] Oncoming vehicle

Lane-Change Oncoming function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

### Lane-Change Side function

 if equipped

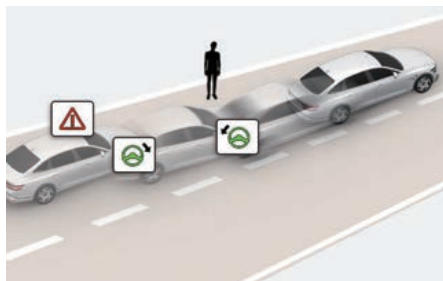


[A] Front-side vehicle

Lane-Change Side function helps avoid a collision with the vehicle or motorcyclist ahead in the next lane when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

## Evasive Steering Assist function

 if equipped



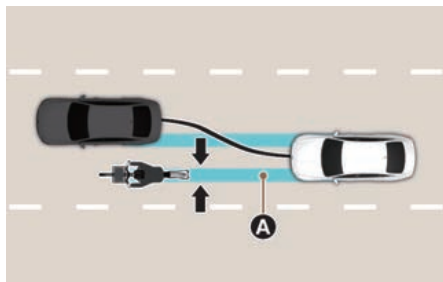
### • Driver steering assist

Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a collision risk is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function warns the driver and if the driver steers to avoid collision it assists the driver's steering.

### • Evasive steering assist

Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a collision risk is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function warns the driver and if there is space to avoid collision in the lane, it assists the driver's steering.

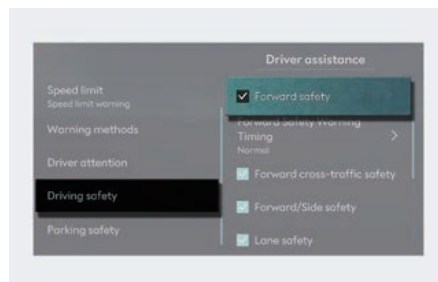
Evasive Steering Assist function operates when there is a collision risk and sufficient operating area between your vehicle and the detected pedestrian or cyclist ahead.



[A] Operating Area of Evasive Steering Assist function

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### Forward safety

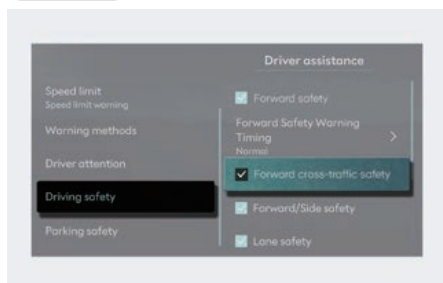


With the vehicle on, select **Setup** > **Vehicle** > **Driver assistance** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- If **Forward safety** is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist displays a warning message and sounds an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist is applied depending on the collision risk levels. If **Forward safety** is deselected, Forward Safety turns off. The (⚠️) warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

### Forward cross-traffic safety

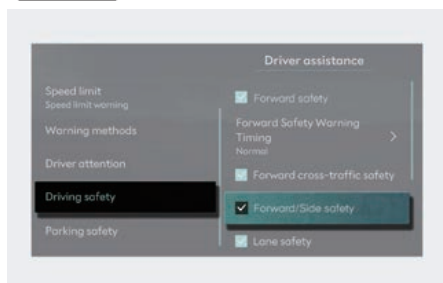
 if equipped



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Forward cross-traffic safety** from the Settings menu to turn on Junction Crossing function and deselect to turn off the function.


### Forward/Side safety



 if equipped



With the vehicle on, select or deselect **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Forward/Side safety** from the Settings menu to turn on Lane-Change Oncoming function, Lane-Change Side function, and Evasive Steering Assist function.

- If **Forward/Side safety** is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warns the driver, steering wheel vibration, a warning message, an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Steering assist is applied depending on the collision risk levels. If **Forward/Side safety** is

deselected, Forward/Side Safety turns off. The  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

You can check whether Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on or off from the Settings menu. If the  or  warning light remains ON when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

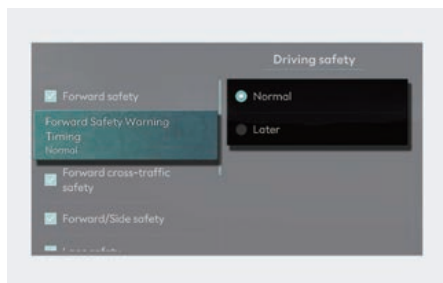
### WARNING

Each time the vehicle is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist turns on. If **Forward safety**, **Forward cross-traffic safety**, and **Forward/Side safety** are deselected the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

### CAUTION

- The setting for **Forward safety** include 'Basic function', 'Junction Turning function', and 'Direct Oncoming function'.
- The setting for **Forward cross-traffic safety** includes 'Junction Crossing function'. (if equipped)
- The setting for **Forward/Side safety** includes 'Lane-Change Oncoming function', 'Lane-Change Side function', and 'Evasive Steering Assist function' (if equipped).
- If **Forward safety** is deselected, Junction Crossing function does not operate even when **Forward cross-traffic safety** and **Forward/Side safety** are selected.
- If a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is attached, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or the function may not operate.

## Forward Safety Warning Timing



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Forward Safety Warning Timing** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either **Normal** or **Late**.

- Use **Normal** in normal driving conditions. If the Forward Safety Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to **Late**.
- If **Late** is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warns the driver more slowly.

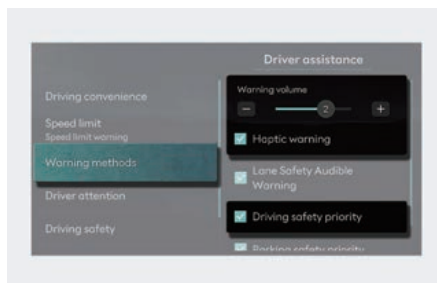
### CAUTION

- Even though **Normal** is selected for Forward Safety Warning Timing, if the front vehicle suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.
- Select **Late** for Forward Safety Warning Timing when traffic is light and your speed is slow.

### Information

- The Forward Safety Warning Timing settings do not apply to **Forward/Side safety**.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the Forward Safety Warning Timing maintains its last setting.

## Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

### Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- The warning volume and haptic warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.


Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Basic function

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.


Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- If a vehicle or motorcyclist is detected in front, the function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 6-124 mph (10-200 km/h).
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 6-53 mph (10-85 km/h).

Emergency braking



To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency braking**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates. Emergency braking operates under the following conditions:

- Vehicle or motorcyclist:

	Driving vehicle	Stopped vehicle
Weak braking power	About 6-124 mph (10-200 km/h)	
Strong braking power	About 6-80 mph (10-130 km/h)	About 6-53 mph (10-85 km/h) (6-62 mph (10-100 km/h))*

\*: If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that avoiding a collision is difficult even by changing the driving lane, braking is assisted more earlier. (if equipped)

- Pedestrian or cyclist:

The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 6-40 mph (10-65 km/h).

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

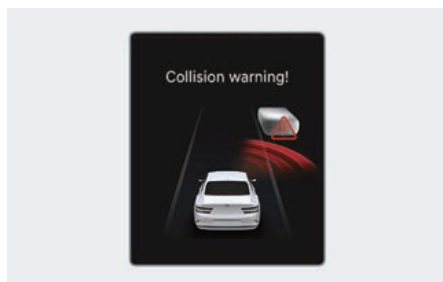
### *i* Information

The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

### Junction Turning function

Junction Turning function may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

### Collision warning

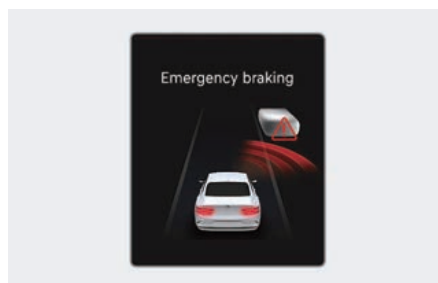


- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 6-19 mph (10-30 km/h), the oncoming vehicle speed is between about 19-44 mph (30-70 km/h) and the motorcyclist

and cyclist speed\* is between about 9-44 mph (15-70 km/h).

\*: The function operates when even you turn left.

### Emergency braking



- To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the warning light blinks and the "**Emergency braking**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 6-19 mph (10-30 km/h), the oncoming vehicle speed is between about 19-44 mph (30-70 km/h) and the motorcyclist and cyclist speed\* is between about 9-44 mph (15-70 km/h).

\*: The function operates when even you turn left.

### *i* Information

If the driver's seat is on the left side, Junction Turning function operates only when you turn left. If the driver's seat position is on the right side, the function will operate only when you turn right.

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

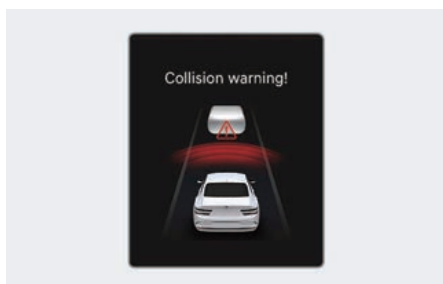
### *i* Information


- The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.
- When turning right (right-hand drive) or left (left-hand drive) at an intersection, braking is assisted to reduce or avoid collisions if there is a collision risk with a cyclist approaching at the speed of 9 to 12 mph (15 to 20 km/h) from the opposite side.

### *Direct Oncoming function*

Direct Oncoming function may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

### Collision warning



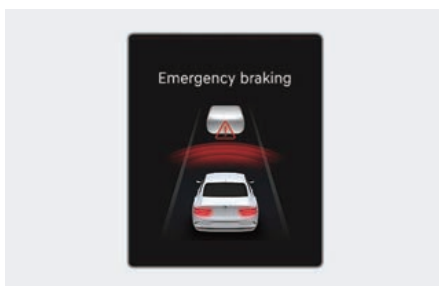
- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible


warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.

- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 19-80 mph (30-130 km/h) (or 6-80 mph (10-130 km/h)\*) and the detected oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 6 mph (10 km/h).

\*: If equipped

### Emergency braking



- To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency braking**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 19-80 mph (30-130 km/h) and the detected oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the **"Drive carefully"** warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

### CAUTION

If your vehicle or the oncoming vehicle is not driving straight, Direct Oncoming function warning and control may be late or may not operate.

### *i* Information

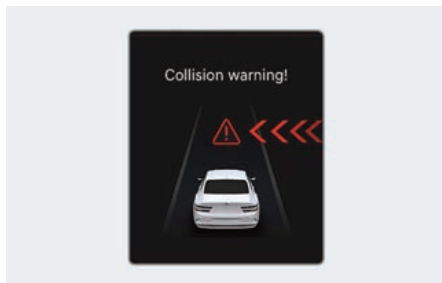
The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.


### Junction Crossing function

 if equipped

Junction Crossing function may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

### Collision warning

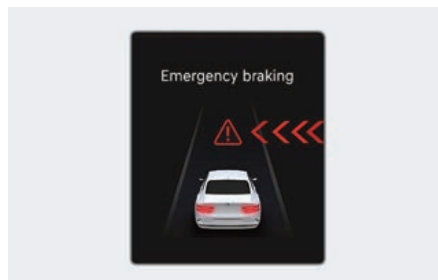



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the **"Collision warning!"** warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible

warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.

- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 6-34 mph (10-55 km/h) and the crossing vehicle speed is between about 6-37 mph (10-60 km/h).

### Emergency braking



- To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the **"Emergency braking"** warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the crossing vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 6-34 mph (10-55 km/h) and the crossing vehicle speed is between about 6-25 mph (10-40 km/h).

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the **"Drive carefully"** warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

### CAUTION

If your vehicle or the oncoming vehicle is not driving straight, Front Oncoming function's warning and vehicle control may be late or may not operate.

### Information

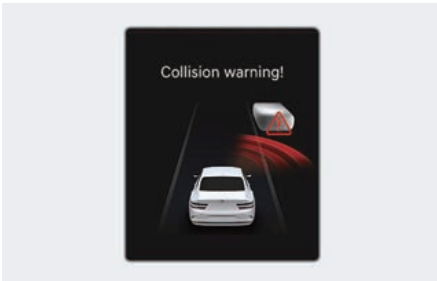
The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.


### *Lane-Change Oncoming function*

 if equipped

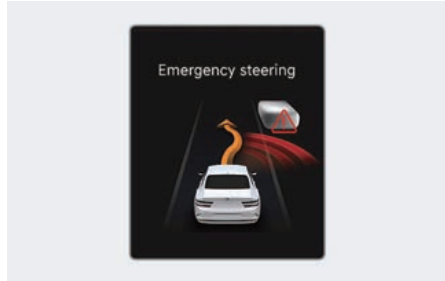
Lane-Change Oncoming function warn and steer your vehicle depending on the collision risk levels.


### Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 25-90 mph (40-145 km/h) and the oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 6 mph (10 km/h) and the relative speed with your vehicle is about below 124 mph (200 km/h).

### Emergency steering



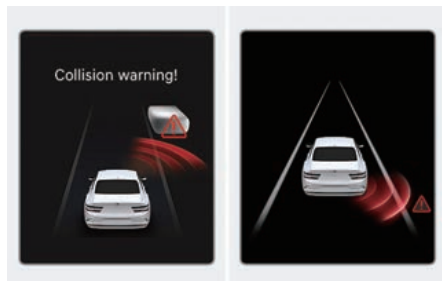
- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency steering**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 25-90 mph (40-145 km/h) and the oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 6 mph (10 km/h) and the relative speed with your vehicle is about below 124 mph (200 km/h).


## Lane-Change Side function

 if equipped

Lane-Change Side function may warn and steer your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.


### Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 25-90 mph (40-145 km/h).

### Emergency steering



- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency steering**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.

- In an emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the front-side vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 25-90 mph (40-145 km/h) and front-side vehicle and motorcyclist is driving.

### CAUTION

- Lane-Change Side function does not operate if the vehicle speed of the preceding vehicle from the front side is 0 mph (0 km/h).
- The detecting range of the front corner radar and the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width, therefore, on a narrow road, Lane-Change Side function may detect other vehicles two lanes over and warn you. In contrast, on a wide road, Lane-Change Side function may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.
- Collision-avoidance assist will be cancelled under the following circumstances:
  - Your vehicle enters the next lane by a certain distance.
  - Your vehicle is away from the collision risk.
  - The steering wheel is sharply steered.
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
  - Forward Collision-avoidance assist is operating.
- After Lane-Change Side function operation or lane change, you must drive to the centre of the lane. Lane-Change Side function will not operate if the vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane.

## *i* Information

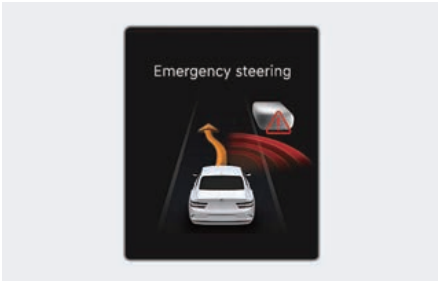
- When an additional accident is expected, Lane-Change Side function will not assist with steering and only warn the driver of a collision.
- If the driver's seat is on the left side, collision warning will operate when you turn left, and when it is on the right side, the system will operate when you turn right.


### **Evasive Steering Assist function**

 If equipped

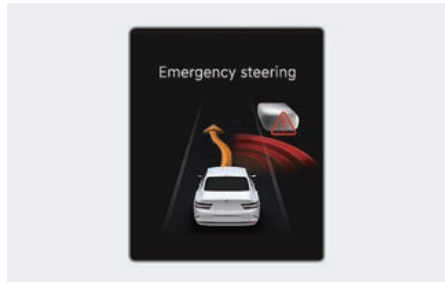
Evasive Steering Assist function may warn and steer your vehicle with Emergency steering.


#### **Emergency steering (Driver steering assist)**



- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency steering**" message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- If there is a risk of collision with a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist in front, the steering is assisted to help prevent collision when the driver steers the vehicle to avoid collision.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 25-53 mph (40-85 km/h).

#### **Emergency steering (Evasive steering assist)**



- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency steering**" message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- If there is high risk of collision with a pedestrian and cyclist in front, and the vehicle speed to operate emergency braking has exceeded, the steering is assisted to help prevent collision when there is space to avoid collision in the driving lane.
- The recognised pedestrian or cyclist moves in the same direction as your vehicle, or in the opposite direction. In addition, there is sufficient space for an evasive movement for your vehicle. However, this function may not operate for pedestrians or cyclists moving in the horizontal direction.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 40-47 mph (65-75 km/h).

### **CAUTION**

- The steering wheel may turn automatically when emergency steering is operating.
- Emergency steering automatically cancels when risk factors disappear. If necessary, the driver must steer the vehicle.

- Emergency steering may not operate or may cancel during operation if the steering wheel is held tight or steered in the opposite direction.
- When steering is assisted to avoid collision with a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian and cyclist, Evasive steering assist will be cancelled if collisions with other objects (vehicles, motorcyclists, pedestrians, or cyclists) are expected.
- Evasive steering assist may not operate if space to avoid collision in the driving lane is insufficient.
- When driving at night, the recognition performance for the motorcyclist may decrease, that may temporarily limit or disable the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

### Information

For more information on warning messages, refer to Collision Warning in "Basic function".

### WARNING

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
- Control your vehicle at all times. Do not depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist to avoid a collision. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and reduce your vehicle speed as needed.
- Never attempt to activate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist by

intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking your vehicle if you depress the brake pedal sufficiently in response to the potential hazard detected by the function to avoid all collisions.
- Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.
- During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, your vehicle may stop suddenly. Always wear your seat belt, check your passengers have their seat belts fastened and secure loose objects that may become projectiles.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may stop operating, or may not operate properly, or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.

### WARNING

- Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking system operates normally.
- During emergency braking, braking by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist automatically cancels if you excessively depress the accelerator pedal or sharply steer your vehicle.

## CAUTION

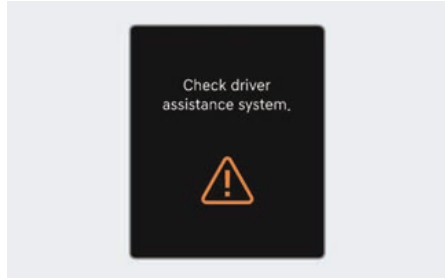
- Depending on the condition of the vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, and cyclist detected in front, and the surroundings, the speed ranges Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be reduced. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only under certain conditions that determines the risk level:
  - Condition of other vehicles
  - The direction vehicles are driven
  - Vehicle speed
  - Surroundings
- If your vehicle speed is too fast or the speed difference with the other vehicle, motorcyclist, or cyclist is large, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited or may not operate properly.
- When a collision with a surrounding vehicle is expected, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side and Evasive Steering Assist does not assist you with steering but only warn the you of a collision (if equipped).




## Information

- When a collision is imminent, braking may be assisted if you depress the brake pedal insufficiently.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

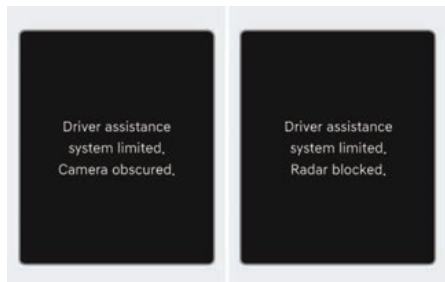
## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction*



When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear, and the , , and  warning lights illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled*






If the front view camera, front radar, bumper, or sensor is covered or blocked by foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may decrease and

temporarily limit or disable Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

The "**Driver assistance system limited.**

**Camera obscured.**" or the "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar**

**blocked.**" warning message may appear, and the , , and  warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **WARNING**

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.

### **Information**

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar (if equipped), and rear corner radar (if equipped).

### **Limitations of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist**

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are blocked, covered, or damaged by snow, water, or dirt, etc.
- The temperature near the front view camera is hot or cold.
- The camera lens is covered or blocked by windscreen tint, the windscreen is damaged, or a sticky material (sticker, bug, etc.) is on the glass.
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen.
- Washer fluid is sprayed continuously, or the wiper is on.
- You are driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog.
- The front view camera's field of view is obstructed by glare from the sun.
- Sunlight, streetlight or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface such as a puddle on the road.
- An object is placed on the dashboard.
- Your vehicle is being towed.
- The surrounding is very bright or very dark (nighttime, tunnel, etc.).
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlights of the front vehicle are turned off or are not bright.

- A front vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist is partially visible.
- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusual shape, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located in an unusual location.
- In low light conditions, the tail lights of the front vehicle are turned off or not bright.
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is too low or high
- A vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist suddenly cuts in front.
- The bumper around the front radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- The temperature around the front radar is very hot or cold.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The bicycle in front is made of material that does not reflect on the front radar well.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is detected late.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front changes lane or reduces the speed.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is bent out of shape.
- The speed of the vehicle or motorcyclist in front is slow or fast.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front steers in the opposite direction of your vehicle to avoid a collision.

- Your vehicle changes lane at low speed with a vehicle or motorcyclist in front.
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow.
- You are departing or returning to the lane.
- You are on curve or roundabout and the vehicle or motorcyclist in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle.
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape.
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill.
- Only part of a pedestrian or cyclist is detected. For example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not walking upright.
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect.




The illustration above shows the image the front view camera and front radar are capable of detecting as a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, and cyclist.

- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly.
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short.
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility.
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving at an angle to the path of your vehicle.

- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists in front of your vehicle.
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect.
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the similar shaped structure in the surroundings.
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, and other structure near an intersection.
- You are driving through steam, smoke, or shadow.
- You are driving through a tunnel or an iron bridge.
- You are driving in large, open areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, empty suburb).
- You are driving in a parking lot.
- You are driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- You are driving through roads with railroad tracks or other embedded metal objects.
- You are driving on an inclined road or curved road.
- You are driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights.
- You are driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown.
- You are driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- The vehicle moves unstably or vibrates excessively.
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- The vehicle is installed with a snow chain, spare tyre or different size wheel.


### **Junction Crossing, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side, Evasive Steering Assist function**

 if equipped

- The temperature near the front corner radar or rear corner radar is very hot or cold.
- A trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed and it blocks the rear corner radar.
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered by snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The area near the front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is blocked by a vehicle, wall, or pillar.
- You are driving on an entrance/exit ramp or through a tollbooth.
- There is a fixed object near your vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, streetlights, signs, tunnels, walls, etc.
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or passes by your vehicle in close proximity.
- The speed of the other vehicle is so fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time.
- Your vehicle passes another vehicle.
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or the vehicle moves two lanes away to the next lane.
- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected.

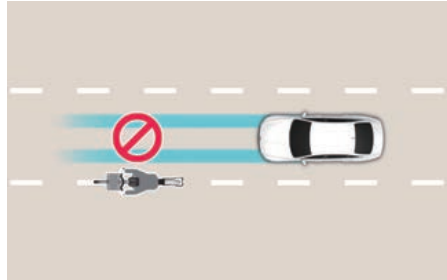
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected.
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected.
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart, or a baby stroller is detected.
- A vehicle with lower height, such as a sports car is detected.
- The lane is difficult to distinguish because:
  - The lane markings are damaged or covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The colour of the lane marking road surface is wet.
  - There are markings on the road or near the lane that looks similar to the lane markings.
  - The lane markings are covered by the shadow of objects around the road, such as median strip, guardrails, noise barriers, and trees.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings are crossing.
- There are more than two lane markings on the road.
- The lane markings are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area or tollbooth area.
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings, and road signs.
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection.
- The lane is very wide or narrow.
- There is a kerb or road edged without a lane.
- You are driving on the left or right side of the median bus lane or on the median bus lane.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking.

### Limitations of Evasive Steering Assist

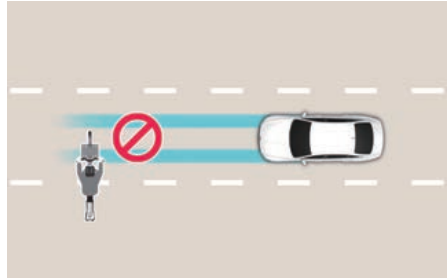
 if equipped

Evasive Steering Assist function may not work properly in the following situations when:

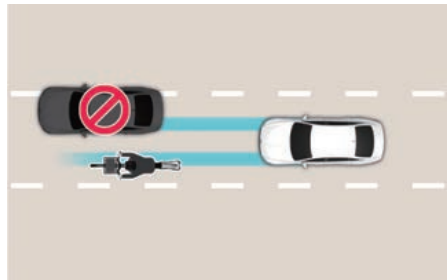
- The pedestrians or cyclists are positioned outside of the operating area.



- The pedestrians or cyclists are moving laterally.

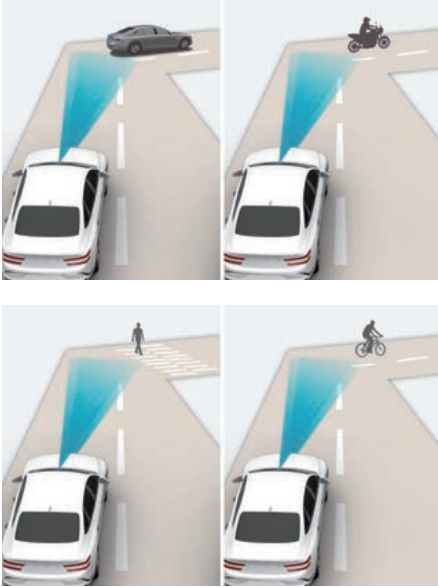


- The pedestrians or cyclists are positioned inside of the operating area, but there is not enough space available for evasive steering.



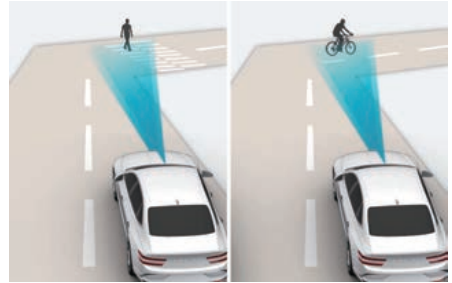
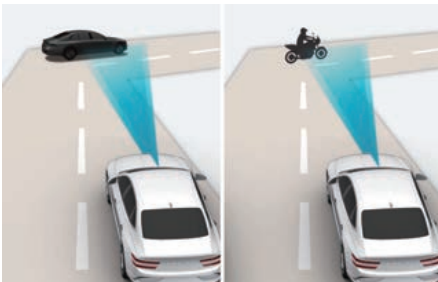
## ⚠ WARNING

### • Driving on curves



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, motorcyclists, pedestrians, or cyclists in front of you when driving on a curve adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. A warning, brake assist, or steering assist (if equipped) may not be activated when needed.

When driving on a curve, always maintain a safe distance from others on the road. Reduce your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle as needed.

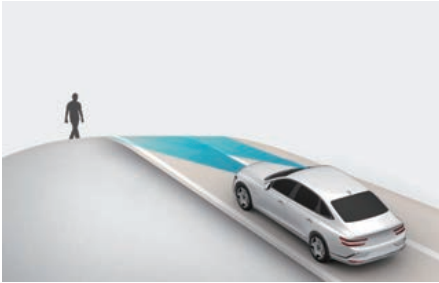


If a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curve. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn you and may brake or steer (if equipped) your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

### • Driving on hills





Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, motorcyclists, pedestrians, or cyclists in front of you whilst driving uphill or downhill, adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. A warning, brake assist, or steering assist (if equipped) may not be activated when needed.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist ahead is suddenly detected. Always maintain a safe distance from the others on the road. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.

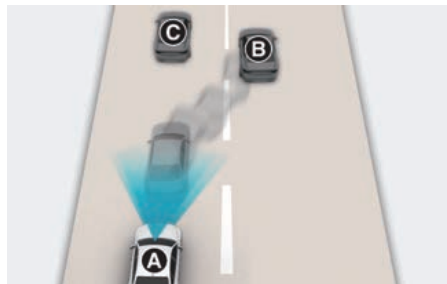
## • Changing lanes



[A] Your vehicle  
[B] Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes suddenly.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.

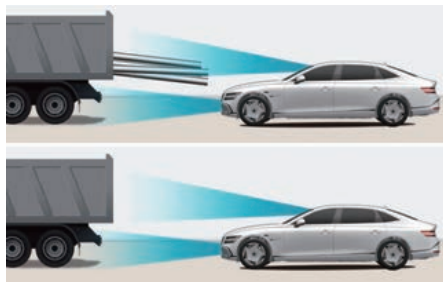


[A] Your vehicle  
[B] Lane changing vehicle  
[C] Same lane vehicle

When a vehicle in front of you departs the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect another vehicle in your lane of travel.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.

### • Detecting a vehicle



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect all potential hazards, like if the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward past the end of the vehicle or if the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.

### *i* Information

For more details on the limitations of detecting rear corner vehicles and cautions regarding the rear corner sensor, please refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

### WARNING

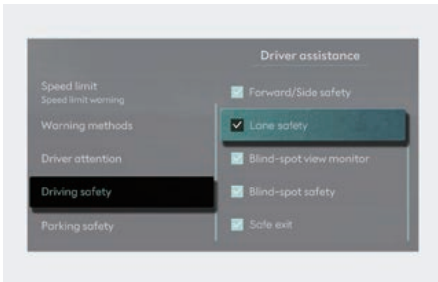
- Always turn off Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or another vehicle.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles, motorcyclists, pedestrians and cyclists are detected.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds right after the vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialized.

## Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)


Lane Keeping Assist helps detect lane markings (or road edges) whilst driving over a certain speed. Lane Keeping Assist may warn you if your vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal and may steer the vehicle to prevent it from departing its travel lane.

### Lane Keeping Assist settings

#### Lane safety



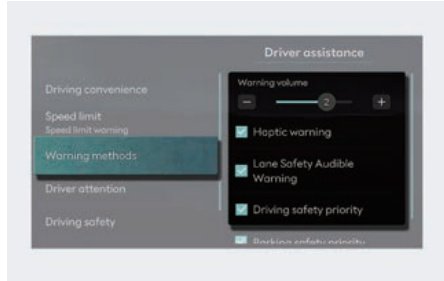
With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- If **Lane safety** is selected, Lane Keeping Assist automatically assists with steering your vehicle to help prevent your vehicle from departing its travel lane. If **Lane safety** is deselected, Lane Keeping Assist turns off and the yellow  indicator light appears on the instrument cluster.

#### WARNING

- Lane Keeping Assist does not assist with steering if you drive near the middle of the lane.
- Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Lane safety** is deselected, Lane Keeping Assist does not assist you.

### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.
- **Lane Safety Audible Warning:** The warning volume of Lane Safety can be turned on and off when the haptic warning is selected.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

#### Information



- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- **Lane Safety Audible Warning** can be set when both the **Warning volume** and the **Haptic warning** are on.
- If you turn off the haptic warning when the warning volume is '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '2'.
- If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.

- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.

## Lane Keeping Assist operation



### Turning Lane Keeping Assist On/Off



Whenever the vehicle is turned on, Lane Keeping Assist always turn on. The grey  indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster. When Lane Keeping Assist is on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist () button to turn off the function.

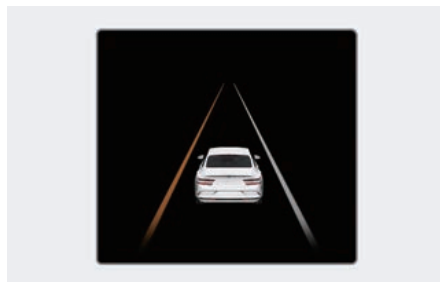
When Lane Keeping Assist is off, the  indicator turns yellow.

### *i* Information

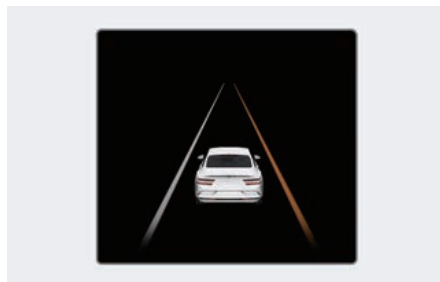
- When Lane Keeping Assist is ready to operate,  indicator turns grey on the instrument cluster.
- When Lane Keeping Assist is operating,  indicator turns green on the instrument cluster.

### Warning and control


Left




Right



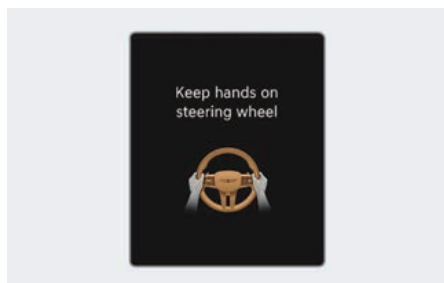
### Lane Departure Warning

- If your vehicle detects it is departing from the projected lane ahead, the green  indicator light blinks on the instrument cluster, the lane line blinks on the instrument cluster depending on which direction the vehicle is veering, and an audible warning sounds.
- Lane Departure Warning operates when your vehicle speed is about 40-120 mph (60-200 km/h).

### Lane Keeping Assist

- If your vehicle detects it is departing from the projected lane in front, the green  indicator light blinks on the instrument cluster, and the steering wheel makes adjustments to keep vehicle inside the lane.
- Lane Keeping Assist operates when your vehicle speed is about 40-120 mph (60-200 km/h).

### Hands-off warning



If you take your hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the "**Keep hands on steering wheel**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning may sound in successive stages.

### WARNING

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

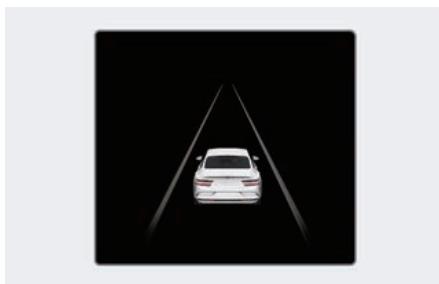
To prevent serious injury or death:

- Lane Keeping Assist may not steer if the steering wheel is held too tightly or the steering wheel is turned too far left or right.
- Always steer your vehicle. Lane Keeping Assist is not an autonomous driving system and does not steer your vehicle at all times.
- If the steering wheel is held very loosely or you have gloves on, the hands-off warning message may appear because the Lane Keeping Assist may not recognise that you have your hands on the steering wheel.
- The hands-off warning message may appear late or not at all depending on the road condition.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.

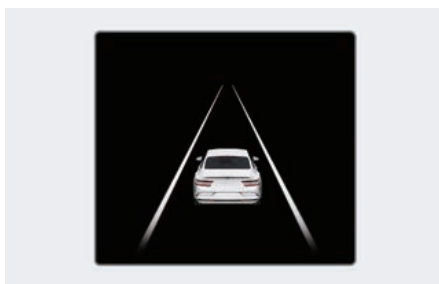
### Information

- You can steer your vehicle even when steering is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist.
- It may require more or less force to turn the steering wheel when Lane Keeping Assist is providing steering assistance.
- When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the instrument cluster changes from grey to white.
- When the lane markings (or road edges) are detected and Highway Lane Change Assist is on, the lane lines on the instrument cluster may change to green. (if equipped)

Lane undetected



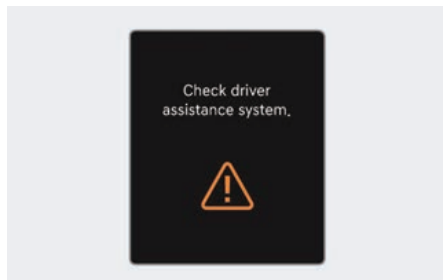
Lane detected




- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

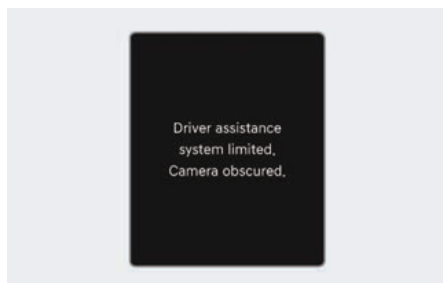
## Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations

### Lane Keeping Assist malfunction





When Lane Keeping Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear, and the yellow  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Lane Keeping Assist disabled



If the front view camera or front radar is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Lane Keeping Assist may be temporarily limited or disabled.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" warning message may appear, and the  or  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If Lane Keeping Assist does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### WARNING

- Lane Keeping Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.

### Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera.

### **Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist**

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- The lane is difficult to distinguish because:
  - The lane markings (or road edge) are damaged or covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The colour of the lane marking (or road edge) is not distinguishable from the road.
  - There are markings (or road edges) on the road or near the lane that looks similar to the lane markings (or road edge)
  - The lane markings are covered by the shadow of objects around the road, such as median strip, guardrails, noise barriers, and trees.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings (or road edges) are crossing.
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road.
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area or tollbooth area.
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs.
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection.
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow.
- There is a road edge without a lane.
- There is a boundary structure in the road, such as sidewalk or kerb.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge).

### **i Information**

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to the "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

### **! WARNING**

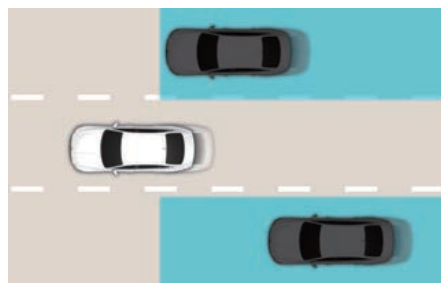
- Always monitor your vehicle speed and the distance to vehicles ahead on the road. Lane Keeping Assist is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.
- Lane Keeping Assist may be cancelled or may not work properly depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Lane Keeping Assist.
- If your vehicle is driven at high speed, Lane Keeping Assist may not steer the vehicle.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Lane Keeping Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Lane Keeping Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.
- Lane Keeping Assist may not operate for 15 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialized.
- Lane Keeping Assist does not operate when:
  - Either the turn signal or hazard warning flasher is turned on.
  - Your vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane after turning on Lane Keeping Assist or after changing lanes.

- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is controlling the brake force to the wheels.
- Your vehicle is driven on sharp curves.
- Driving below 25 mph (40 km/h) or above 130 mph (210 km/h).
- Your vehicle makes sharp lane changes.
- Your vehicle brakes suddenly.
- Loading in excess of the maximum load allowance or concentrated loading at one point in the luggage compartment can reduce the vehicle's driving stability, which can in turn reduce the effectiveness of Lane Keeping Assist.

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot areas and warn you of a possible collision with a warning message and audible warning.

If there is a collision risk when exiting a parallel space, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist with braking your vehicle to help avoid a collision.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and warns you that a vehicle is in the blind spot area.

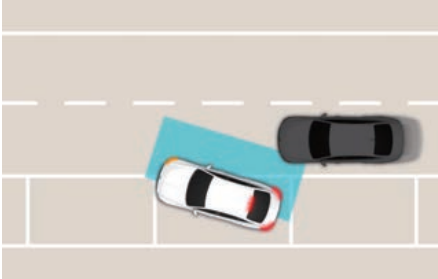
### ⚠ CAUTION

The detection range may differ depending on the speed of your vehicle. Vehicles in the blind spot area may not be detected by Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist when you pass other vehicles at high speeds.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and warns you that a vehicle is approaching at high speed from the blind spot area.

## CAUTION

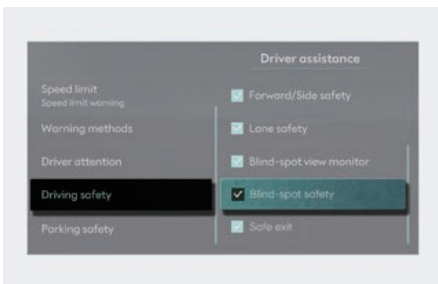
The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching you at high speed.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may brake your vehicle if there is a detected collision risk in the blind spot area when driving forward out of a parking space.

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

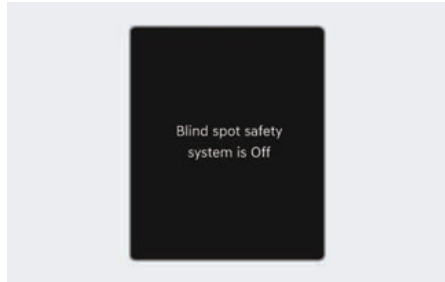
### *Blind-spot safety*



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** from the Settings menu to select the following:

- If **Blind-spot safety** is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist displays a warning message and

sounds an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist is applied for parking exit depending on the collision risk levels.



If you select **Blind-spot safety**, the warning lights on the outside rearview mirror blink for three seconds.

In addition, if the vehicle is turned on, when **Blind-spot safety** is selected, the warning lights on the outside rearview mirror blink for three seconds.

When the vehicle is restarted with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist off, the "**Blind spot safety system is Off**" message appears on the instrument cluster.

## WARNING

Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Blind-spot safety** is deselected, the function does not assist you.

## Information

When the vehicle is restarted, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist maintains its last setting.

## Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

## *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- If you turn off the haptic warning when the warning volume is '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '2'.
- If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### Collision warning (whilst driving)



When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) may illuminate.

- Vehicle detection operates when your vehicle speed is above 12 mph (20 km/h) and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

Collision warning may operate when the turn signal is turned on in the direction of a detected vehicle.

- To warn you of a potential collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) may blink, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.
- Collision warning operates when your vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h) and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the turn signal is turned off or you move away from the vehicle in the blind spot, the system returns to vehicle detection state.

## WARNING

- The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width. On narrow roads, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect other vehicles two lane over and warn you. On wide roads, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning initiated by activating the turn signal may not operate.

## Information

If the driver seat is on the left side, the collision warning may occur when you turn left. If the driver seat is on the right side, the collision warning may occur when you turn right. Maintain a proper distance from other vehicles when turning.

### *Collision-avoidance assist (whilst parallel exiting)*



To warn you of a potential collision, the warning light on outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) may blink, a warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.

- Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h) and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
- Emergency braking is assisted to help avoid collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.

After your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

Depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

## WARNING

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot prevent all collisions. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the function determines you have depressed the brake pedal sufficiently in response to the potential hazard detected by the function.
- If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is assisting to brake your vehicle and you excessively depress the accelerator pedal or sharply steer your vehicle, it stops assisted braking.
- During Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, your vehicle may stop suddenly. Always wear your seat belt, check your passengers have their seat belts fastened and secure loose objects that may become projectiles.
- Even if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist, your vehicle's braking system operates normally.

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn you or may not warn you depending on the road and driving conditions.
- Control your vehicle at all times. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed depending on the road conditions. Depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never attempt to activate Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.

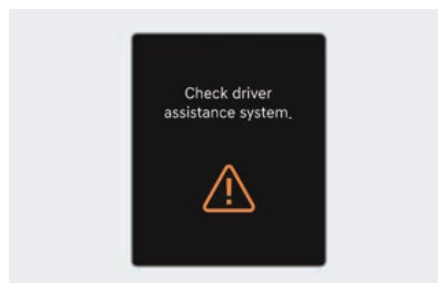
### **WARNING**


Braking is not assisted and only a warning is provided when:

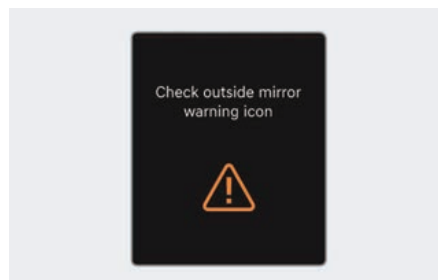
- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function.


## **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations**

### ***Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction***

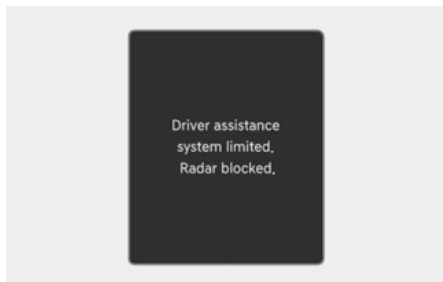


When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the **"Check driver assistance system."** warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the **"Check outside mirror warning icon"** warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled**



If the rear corner radar is blocked or covered, or when the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may reduce and temporarily limit or disable Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **WARNING**

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when

the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.

### **Information**

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the rear corner radar.

### **Limitations of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist**

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The rear corner radar or the area near the rear corner radar is covered by snow, water, or dirt.
- The rear corner radar or the area near the rear corner radar is blocked by a vehicle, wall, or pillar.
- The temperature near the rear corner radar is very hot or cold.
- You are driving on an entrance/exit ramp or through a tollbooth.
- The road pavement (or the ground near your vehicle) contains metallic components (for example, possibly due to subway construction).
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, streetlights, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)
- You are driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown.

- You are driving in large, open areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, empty parking lot).
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or passes by your vehicle in close proximity.
- The speed of the other vehicle is so fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time.
- Your vehicle passes another vehicle.
- Your vehicle changes lane.
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or the vehicle moves two lanes away to the next lane.
- A trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed and it blocks the rear corner radar.
- The area near the rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the rear corner radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- Your vehicle height is lower or higher than normal due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly when the following objects are detected:

- A motorcycle or bicycle.
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer.
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck.
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart, or baby stroller.
- A vehicle with lower height, such as sports car.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking when:

- Your vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road, or concrete patch.
- You are driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged.
- The braking system is adjusted differently from the factory default settings.
- Your vehicle makes abrupt lane changes.

### **WARNING**

#### • **Driving on curves**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect a vehicle in an adjacent lane when driving on curves and may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

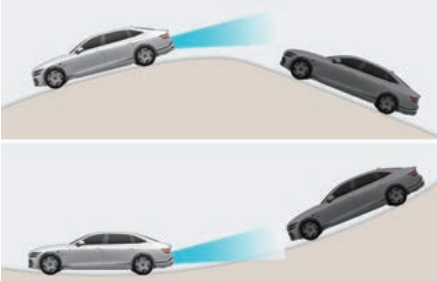
Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect a vehicle in the same lane when driving on curves and activate a warning and brake your vehicle.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

- **Driving on hills**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect a vehicle in an adjacent lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or another object when driving on hills and activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

- **Driving where the road is merging/dividing**

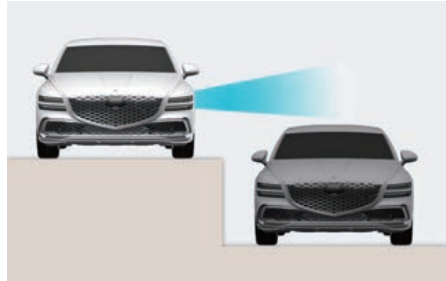


Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect a vehicle in an adjacent lane when the road merges or divides,

and may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

- **Driving where the heights of the lanes are different**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. The system may not detect a vehicle on a road with a different lane height (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.) and not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

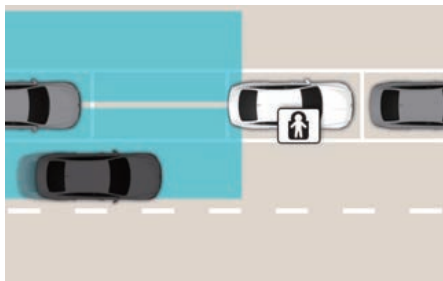
---

### **WARNING**

- Always turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 3 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the rear corner radars are initialized.
-

## Safe Exit Assist (SEA)

 if equipped



Safe Exit Assist helps detect a vehicle approach the rear corner of your vehicle, after the vehicle is stopped and a passenger opens a door.

Safe Exit Assist may warn you with an audible warning and a warning message to help avoid a collision.



In addition, if an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, Safe Exit Assist prevents the doors from opening in the following situation:

- When the electronic child safety lock (🔒) button is in the LOCK position and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the electronic child safety lock button does not unlock even if the button is pressed to prevent the rear doors from opening.

### CAUTION

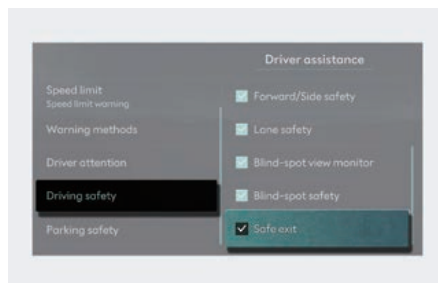
The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the detected vehicle.

Do not use Safe Exit Assist instead of the electronic child safety lock button. To protect rear seat passengers, use the electronic child safety lock button.

For more information, refer to the "Electronic child safety lock" section in chapter 5.

## Safe Exit Assist settings

### Safe Exit Assist



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Safe exit** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on Safe Exit Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

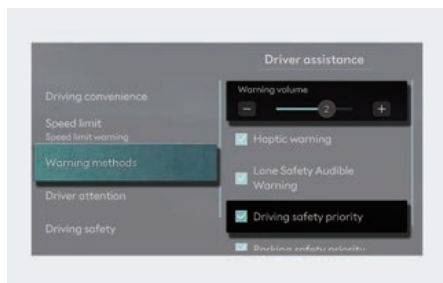
### WARNING

Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Safe exit** is deselected, the function does not assist you.

### Information

When the vehicle is restarted, Safe Exit Assist maintains the last setting.

### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

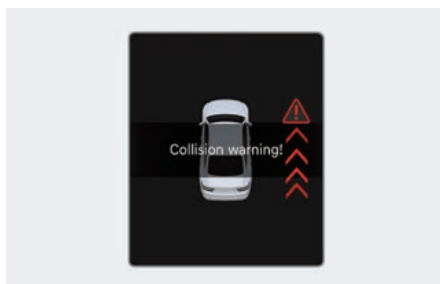
- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

### *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.

### Safe Exit Assist operation

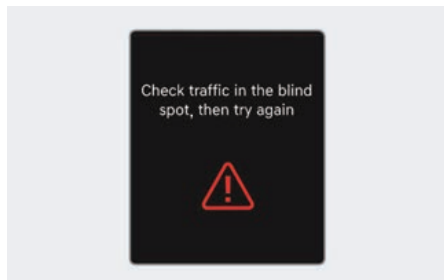
#### Collision warning when exiting your vehicle



When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected whilst a door is being opened, the warning light on the side view mirror may blink, the "**Collision warning!**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning may sound.

- Safe Exit Assist may warn you when your vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h), and the speed of the vehicle approaching the rear of your vehicle is above 4 mph (6 km/h).

### Safe Exit Assist linked with Electronic child safety lock



When Electric child safety lock is operating and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the rear doors cannot be unlocked even if you try to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button. The warning light on the outside rearview mirror may blink and the **"Check traffic in the blind spot, then try again"** warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

- Safe Exit Assist may warn you when vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h) and the speed of the vehicle approaching the rear of your vehicle is above 4 mph (6 km/h).

#### *i* Information

For more information on electric child safety lock (🔒) button, refer to the "Electronic child safety lock" section in chapter 5.

#### CAUTION

If the you press the electronic child lock (🔒) button again within 10 seconds after the warning message appears, Safe Exit Assist judges that the driver has unlocked the doors acknowledging the rear status. The electronic child safety lock turns off (button indicator OFF) and the rear doors unlock. Always check the surroundings before turning off the electronic child safety lock button.

#### *i* Information

If a rear door is opened from the outside, it opens regardless of Safe Exit Assist operation.

#### WARNING

Safe Exit Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

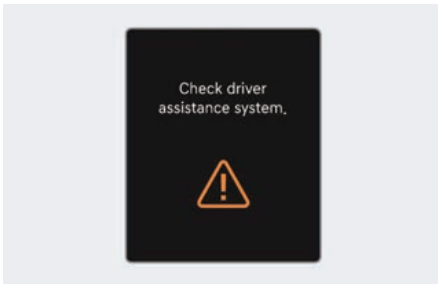
- Always check the surroundings before you or your passengers exit your vehicle.
- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Safe Exit Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Safe Exit Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- Safe Exit Assist may stop operating, or may not operate, or operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and surroundings.

## *i* Information

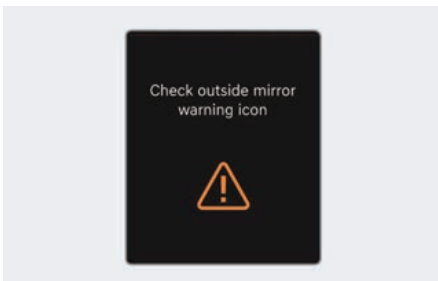
- After the vehicle is turned off, Safe Exit Assist may detect approaching vehicles for up to 3 minutes, but does not function after the doors are locked.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

## Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Safe Exit Assist malfunction*

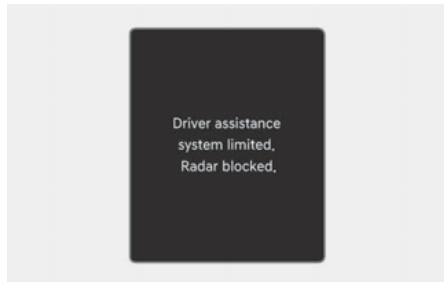


When Safe Exit Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the ⚠ warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the "**Check outside mirror warning icon**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the ⚠ warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Safe Exit Assist disabled*



If the rear corner radar is blocked or covered, or when the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may decrease and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Assist.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If Safe Exit Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### WARNING

- Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.
- Always turn off Safe Exit Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.

### Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### WARNING

- Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Safe Exit Assist may not operate for 3 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the rear corner radars are initialized.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front radar, front corner radar (if equipped), and rear corner radar.

### ***Limitations of Safe Exit Assist***

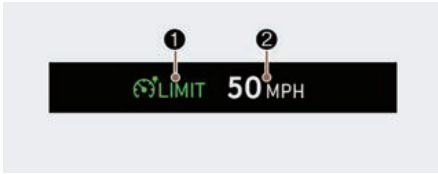
Safe Exit Assist may not operate normally, or may operate unexpectedly if:

- Trees or grass near your vehicle are overgrown.
- The road is wet.
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or slow.

### Information

For more information on the limitations on the rear corner radar, refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter.

## Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)



- (1) Speed Limit indicator  
(2) Set speed

If you drive over the preset speed limit, Manual Speed Limit Assist operates (set speed limit blinks and chime sounds) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

### Manual Speed Limit Assist operation

#### Setting speed limit

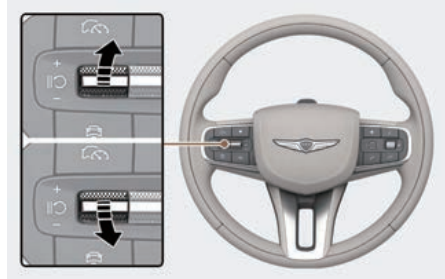
1. Press and hold the Driving Assist (🚗) button at the desired speed. The Speed Limit (🚗LIMIT) indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.



2. Push the **+** switch up or **-** switch down, and release it at the desired speed.

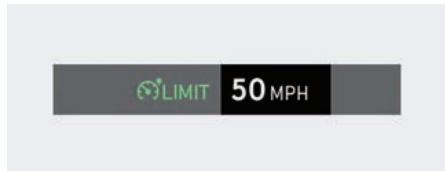
A short push of the switch upward or downward will increase or decrease the set speed by 1 mph (1 km/h).

A long push of the switch upward or downward will increase or decrease the set speed by 5 mph (10 km/h).



3. Check the set speed limit on the instrument cluster.

- If you want to drive over the set speed limit, depress the accelerator pedal far enough to activate the kickdown mechanism.
- The set speed limit blinks and chime sounds until your vehicle speed decreases below the set speed.





#### *i* Information

When the accelerator pedal is not depressed beyond the pressure point, your vehicle speed maintains within the speed limit.


### Temporarily pausing Manual Speed Limit Assist




Press the  switch to temporarily cancel the set speed limit. The set speed limit turns off, but the Speed Limit () indicator light stays on.

### Resuming Manual Speed Limit Assist





Push the **+**, **-**, or  switch.


If you push the **+** switch up or **-** switch down, the set speed is set to the current speed.

If you press the  switch, the vehicle speed resumes to the previously set speed limit.

### Turning off Manual Speed Limit Assist




Press the Driving Assist () button to turn off Manual Speed Limit Assist. The Speed Limit () indicator off.

Always press the Driving Assist () button to turn off Manual Speed Limit Assist when not in use.

### WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Set your vehicle speed to the speed limit for the road and use the appropriate unit (mph or km/h) for your country.
- Keep Manual Speed Limit Assist off when not in use, to avoid unintentionally setting a speed. Check that the Speed Limit () indicator light is off.
- Always drive defensively and pay attention to the driving task.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)

 If equipped

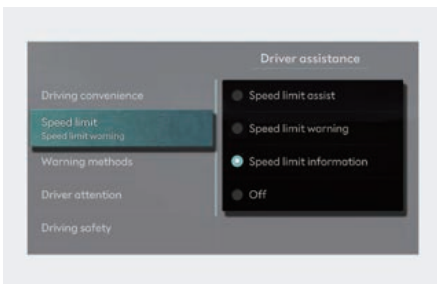
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist uses information from the detected road sign and navigation system to inform you of the speed limit and additional information, and help maintain within the speed limit on the road.

### CAUTION

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly if used in other countries.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly if the navigation system is not updated regularly.


## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings

### Speed limit



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Speed limit** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Speed limit assist:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist informs you of the speed limit and additional road signs. The function informs you to change the set speed of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control if needed.

- **Speed limit warning:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist informs you of the speed limit and additional road signs. The function warns you when your vehicle has been driven faster than the speed limit.
- **Speed limit information:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist informs you of the speed limit and additional road signs.
- **Off:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist turns off. The  warning light is illuminated.

### WARNING

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
- When the vehicle is restarted, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will always turn on. However, if "Off" and the vehicle is restarted, "Speed Limit Warning" is selected.

### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.

## *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation

### Displaying speed limit



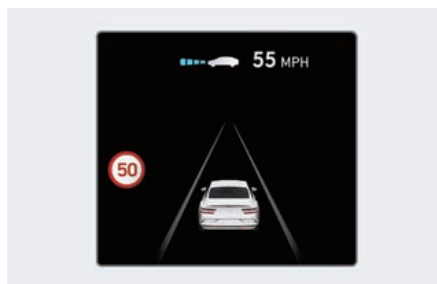
Speed limit information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

## *i* Information

- If speed limit information of the road cannot be recognised, '---' appears.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit information. Additional road sign information provided may differ depending on your country.
- Supplementary signs appear under the speed limit or overtaking restriction sign. If a supplementary sign is not recognised, it appears as blank.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ

depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.

### Warning overspeed



When driving at a speed higher than the displayed speed limit, the speed limit is blinks in red and the warning sounds.

### Changing set speed



If the speed limit changes when using Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, an arrow in the direction of up or down appears to inform you to change the set speed by pushing the **+** or **-** switch.

You can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the **+** or **-** switch.

### *Set speed auto change (if equipped with navigation)*



Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control assists you to adjust the vehicle speed according to the speed limit. When the set speed is same as the speed limit, the set speed automatically changes to the current speed limit if the speed limit changes. The function operates on the road which has a speed limit of 45 mph (70 km/h) or higher. When the function is active, the set speed on the instrument cluster appears in green.

#### **WARNING**

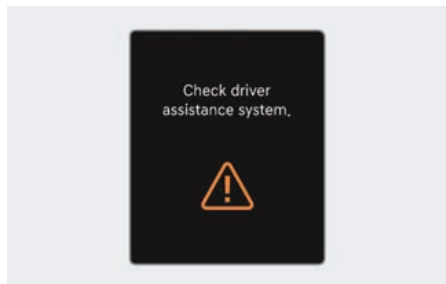
- If necessary, reduce your driving speed as needed. Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit for the road, your vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit.
- If the speed limit for the road is under 20 mph (30 km/h), the set speed changing function does not work.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operates using the speed unit set by you from the settings menu. If the speed unit is set to a unit other than the speed unit used in your country, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.



#### *i* **Information**

- For more information on Manual Speed Limit Assist operation, refer to the "Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)" section in this chapter.
- For more information on Smart Cruise Control operation, refer to the "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in this chapter.

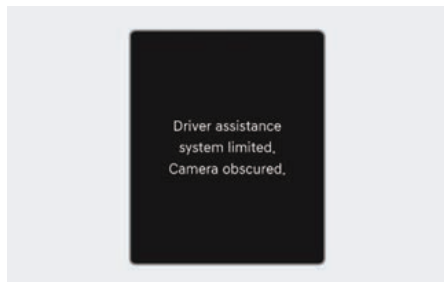
### **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations**

#### *Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction*



When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the  and  warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist disabled



If the front view camera is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is temporarily limited or disabled.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" warning message may appear, and the ☹ warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If Intelligent Speed Limit Assist does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### WARNING

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.

## Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera.

### Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate or may be limited if:

- The road sign is damaged, difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dirt, sand, oil, etc., or obscured by surrounding objects or shadows.
- The road signs do not conform to the standard designs in your country.
  - The text or picture on the road sign is different from the standard designs in your country.
  - The road sign is installed between the main road and exit road or between diverging roads.
  - A sign is attached to another vehicle.
- The distance between the driving lane and road sign is far.
- There are LED road signs.
- The numbers or pictures in the road sign is incorrectly recognised as the speed limit.
- Road signs on adjacent roads are incorrectly recognised as road signs you are driving on.
- Supplementary road signs or signboards are installed near the road sign.
- Multiple signs are installed close together.

- A minimum speed limit sign is incorrectly recognised as the maximum speed limit sign.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge.
- Headlights are not used, or the brightness of the headlights are weak at night or in the tunnel.
- Road signs are difficult to recognise due to the reflection of sunlight, streetlights, or oncoming vehicles.
- The driver is driving on a new road that is not in the navigation system yet.
- The front view camera's field of view is obstructed by glare from the sun.
- You are driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved.
- You are driving through speed bumps, or driving up and down, or left to right on steep inclines.
- Your vehicle is shaking heavily.
- You are driving your vehicle on a newly opened road.
- There is an error in the navigation map data or GPS data.
- You are not driving your vehicle based on the route guidance.
- The navigation system is being updated or restarted whilst driving.

### **WARNING**

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not display the correct speed limit or may not properly control the driving speed because it is a supplemental function to inform you of the speed limit on the road.
- Set your vehicle speed to the speed limit for the road and use the appropriate unit (mph or km/h) for your country.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate for 15 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialized.

### **Information**

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter.

---

## Driver Attention Warning (DAW)

### *Inattentive driving warning function*

Driver Attention Warning monitors your driving pattern whilst driving. When the attention level is below a certain level recommends a break.

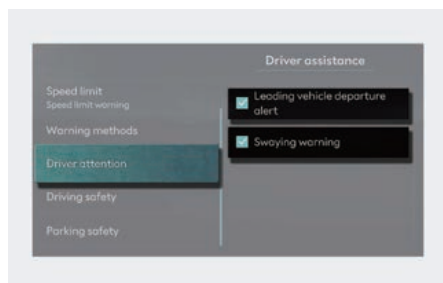
### *Leading vehicle departure alert function*

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function informs you when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

## Driver Attention Warning settings

### *Leading vehicle departure alert*

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driver attention** and then enable **Leading vehicle departure alert** in the infotainment system to use the function.



- If **Leading vehicle departure alert** is selected, the function informs you when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.
- if **Swaying warning** is selected, Driver Attention Warning will inform the driver the driver's attention level and will recommend taking a break when the level falls below a certain level.

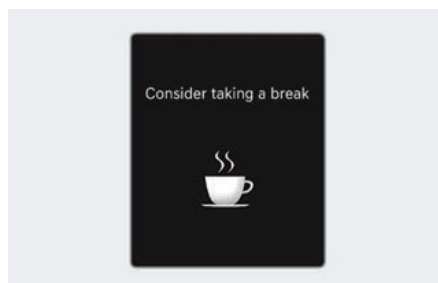
### *i* Information


Driver Attention Warning menu will not be displayed in a region where the Driver Attention Warning function operates frequently.

## Driver Attention Warning operation

### *Inattentive driving warning function*

#### Taking a break



The "**Consider taking a break**" message may appear and the  warning light may blink on the instrument cluster and an audible warning may sound, when the attention level is below a certain level.

- Driver Attention Warning does not suggest a break if the total driving time is less than 4 minutes or 4 minutes has not passed since the last break was suggested.

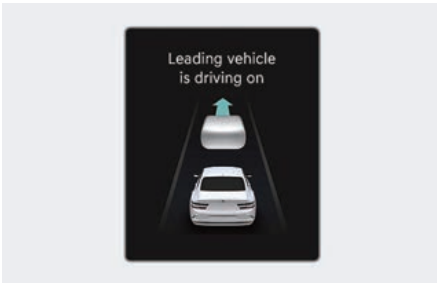
### WARNING

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

### CAUTION

- Driver Attention Warning may suggest a break depending on your driving pattern or habit, even if you do not feel fatigued.
- Driver Attention Warning is a supplemental function only and does not determine if you are paying attention to the driving task.
- If you feel fatigued or want to take a break, do so as needed at a safe location.

### *Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function*



When a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert displays the "**Leading vehicle is driving on**" message on the instrument cluster and an audible warning sounds.

### WARNING

- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not alert you.
- Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is your responsibility to operate your vehicle in a safe manner.

### CAUTION

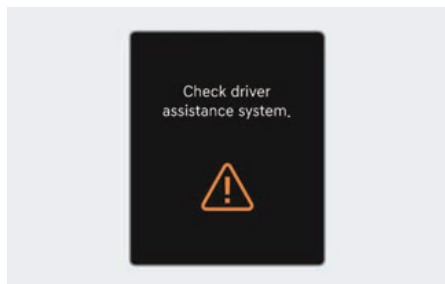
- Leading Vehicle Departure Alert is a supplemental function and may not alert you whenever the front vehicle departs from a stop.
- Always check your surroundings before driving even if the function alerts you that the front vehicle has departed.



### *i* Information

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

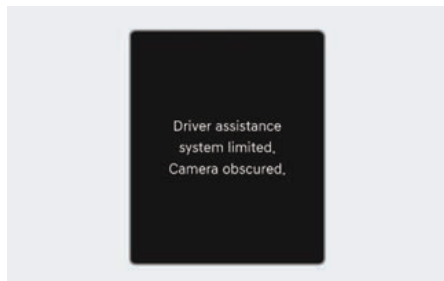
## Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

### *Driver Attention Warning malfunction*





When Driver Attention Warning is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  and  warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Driver Attention Warning disabled



If the front view camera is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Driver Attention Warning may be temporarily limited or disabled.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" warning message may appear, and the  and  warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If Driver Attention Warning does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### WARNING

- Driver Attention Warning may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.

### Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of front view camera.

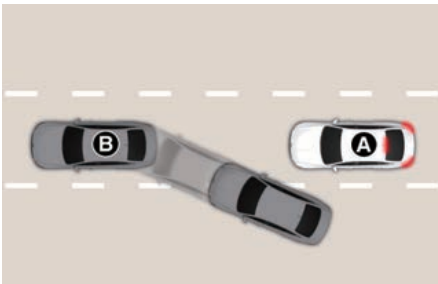
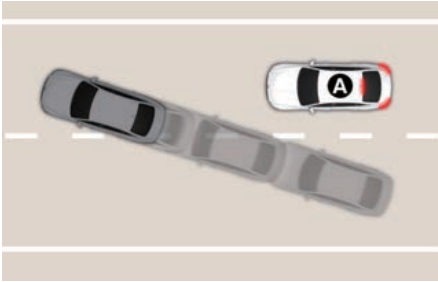
### Limitations of Driver Attention Warning

Driver Attention Warning may not work properly if:

- Your vehicle is driven aggressively or steered sharply from side to side.
- Your vehicle intentionally changes lanes frequently.
- Another Driver Assist system such as Lane Keeping Assist, is maintaining your vehicle's position within the lane.

### Leading vehicle departure alert feature

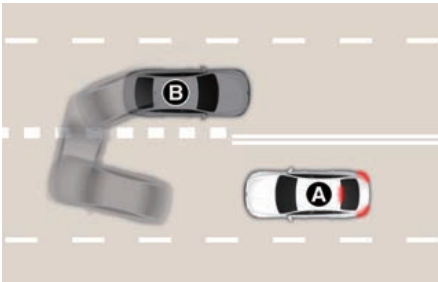
- **When the vehicle cuts in**



[A] Your vehicle  
[B] Front vehicle

If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, Leading Departure Alert may not operate properly.

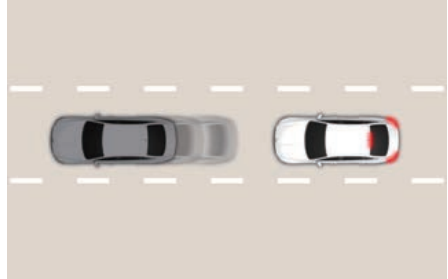
- **When the vehicle ahead sharply steers**



[A] Your vehicle  
[B] Front vehicle

If the vehicle in front makes a sharp turn, such as to turn left or right or make a U- turn, etc., Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- **When the vehicle ahead abruptly departs**



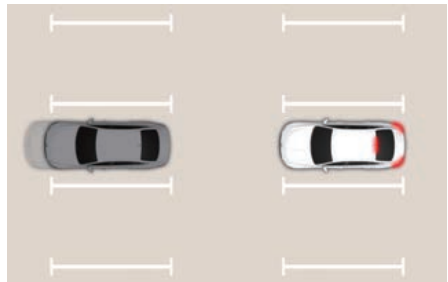
If the vehicle in front abruptly departs, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- **When a pedestrian or bicycle is between you and the vehicle ahead**



If there is a pedestrian(s) or bicycle(s) in between you and the vehicle in front, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

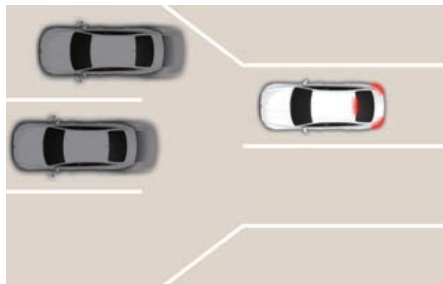
- **When in a parking lot**



If a vehicle parked in front drives away from you, Leading Vehicle Departure

Alert may alert you that the parked vehicle is driving away.

- **When driving at a tollbooth or intersection, etc.**



If you pass a tollbooth or intersection with lots of vehicles or you drive where lanes are merged or divided frequently, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

### **WARNING**

Driver Attention Warning may not operate for about 15 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialized.

### **Information**

For more information on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter.

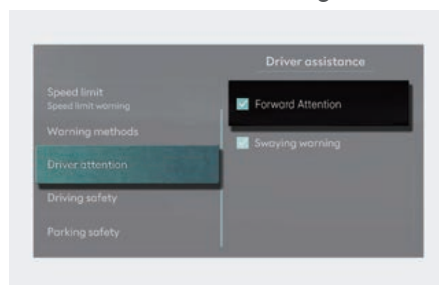
## Forward Attention Warning (FAW)

 if equipped

Forward Attention Warning uses the in-cabin camera to help prevent the driver from being distracted whilst driving with an audible warning and warning light.

## Forward Attention Warning settings

### *Forward attention warning*



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driver attention** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:


- If **Forward Attention** is enabled, the function warns the driver when the driver's gaze is not focused on the road.

### **Information**

When the vehicle is restarted, Forward Attention Warning maintains its last setting.

## Forward Attention Warning operation

### *Forward Attention Warning*

Forward Attention Warning determines whether the driver is focused on the road depending on information, such as the amount of time the driver is looking elsewhere, the amount of time the eyes are closed, etc. If Forward Attention Warning judges the driver is not focused, an audible warning sounds for about 1 second, and the  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster until off conditions are met.

#### The warning comes on:

- When the driver's gaze is not focused on the road continuously for 3 seconds whilst driving above 12 mph (20 km/h).
- When the driver's gaze is not focused on the road for 10 seconds or more in total during a 30 seconds time span whilst driving above 12 mph (20 km/h).
- When the driver's eyes are closed for over 2 seconds or more whilst driving above 6 mph (10 km/h).

#### The warning goes off:

When the driver looks forward continuously for over 2 seconds.

### **WARNING**

If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Forward Attention Warning's warning message may not be displayed and an audible warning may not be generated.

### **CAUTION**

- Forward Attention Warning may warn the driver even though the driver is focused on the road because of driving style and driving pattern.

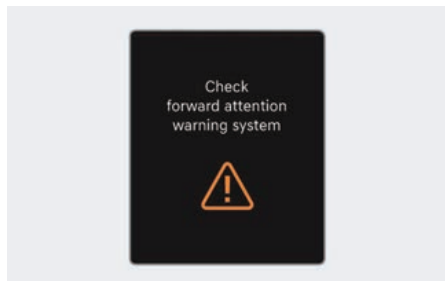
- Forward Attention Warning is a supplemental function and may not determine whether the driver is distracted whilst driving.
- The driver is responsible for safe driving and must focus on the road.


### **Information**

- Forward Attention Warning does not transmit recorded videos outside of the vehicle or store the video.
- The Warning Method for Forward Attention Warning cannot be changed.

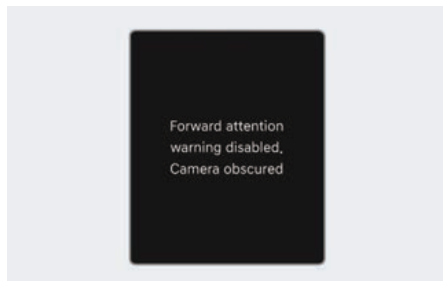
## Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

### *Forward Attention Warning malfunction*




When Forward Attention Warning is not working properly, the "**Check forward attention warning system**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster for several seconds, the  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Forward Attention Warning disabled



If there is an object right in front of the in-cabin camera or between you and the camera for a certain period of time Forward Attention Warning does not operate properly.

The "**Forward attention warning disabled. Camera obscured**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster for several seconds, the  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds.

If the object is removed or the camera is able to detect the your face, the function operates normally.

If Forward Attention Warning does not operate properly after the object is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Limitations of Forward Attention Warning

Forward Attention Warning may not operate normally, or it may operate unexpectedly if:

- You wear sunglasses, special glasses, infrared cutoff glasses, refracting glasses or thick glasses.
- You have heavy eye makeup (eyeliner, mascara, colour makeup, false eyelash) or eye piercing.
- Your view is blocked by hair, hat, etc.
- You are winking or wearing an eye patch on one eye.
- Your face is covered partially by a mask, muffler, etc.
- Your view is blocked by incoming light from outside of the vehicle.
- Light from outside, sunlight or infrared LED light of the camera is reflected by glasses or sunglasses.
- You have turned or lowered your head so that your face or an eye is hidden from the camera.
- You shake your head up and down, or adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving.
- You are improperly positioned in the your seat so that the your face is not detected.
- You are too tall or short.
- The camera is blocked by the your grip on the steering wheel.
- More than two people are looking at the instrument cluster simultaneously from the driver's seat.
- Your eyes are narrowed due to laughing or sun glare.
- A picture or mannequin that has a similar size ti your face is misrecognised.
- There are other devices using infrared light in the vehicle.



[A] In-cabin camera

- Do not impact the surface of the camera or around the camera. If the in-cabin camera is damaged, Forward Attention Warning may not work properly.
- Do not place anything on the camera or in front of the camera whilst driving. The in-cabin camera may not operate properly.
- When cleaning the camera, wipe with a soft and clean cloth to prevent damages on the surface of the camera lens. In addition, you should not use sharp tools near the camera, or use chemicals to clean the camera.
- Always keep the camera and around the area of the in-cabin camera clean and dry.
- Do not apply foreign objects, such as a sticker, around the infrared LED located near the camera.

## *i* Information

Two red lights may appear on the camera in the following conditions when:

- The outside brightness is dim or driving at night.
- The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement parking lot, garage or tunnel.
- The camera case is partially broken.

## Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)

If equipped

Left



Right



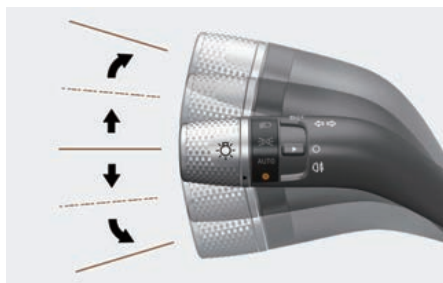
Blind-Spot View Monitor uses the wide-side view cameras to display the rear blind spot areas of your vehicle on the instrument cluster when the turn signal is turned on to help with safe lane changes.

## Blind-Spot View Monitor settings

### Setting features

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** and then enable **Blind-spot view monitor** from the Setting menu in the infotainment system to turn on the Blind-Spot View Monitor.

## Blind-Spot View Monitor operation



### Turns on if:

The left or right side turn signal turns on, and the corresponding side view camera image appears on the instrument cluster.

### Turns off if:

- The turn signal turns off.
- The hazard warning flasher is on. Blind-Spot View Monitor turns off, independent of the turn signal status.
- Other warnings on the instrument cluster may replace the side view camera image when changing lanes.

## Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction

When Blind-Spot View Monitor is not working properly, or the cluster display flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### WARNING

- The image shown on the instrument cluster may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, Blind-Spot View Monitor may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (for example, petrol, acetone).

## Smart Cruise Control (SCC)

Smart Cruise Control helps detect a vehicle ahead and maintain the desired speed and distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

### Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, if the function judges you are overtaking a vehicle in front, Smart Cruise Control accelerates your vehicle to assist you with this manoeuvre.

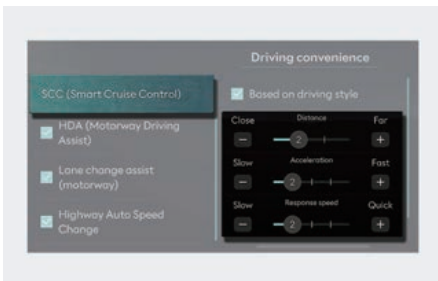
### Based on Driving Style

 If equipped

Smart Cruise Control operates based on the driver's driving style, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, and reaction speed.

## Smart Cruise Control settings

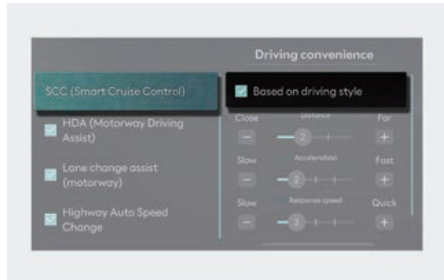
### Smart Cruise Control



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > SCC (Smart Cruise Control)** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to adjust **Distance**, **Acceleration**, and **Response speed** manually.



### Based on driving style

 If equipped



With the vehicle on, if **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > SCC (Smart Cruise Control) > Based on driving style** is selected from the Settings menu, Smart Cruise Control operates based on your driving style, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, and reaction speed.

### *i* Information

- Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating with **Based on driving style** selected, if you press and hold the Vehicle Distance () button, **Based on driving style** deactivates. If you press and hold the Vehicle Distance () button again, **Driving style setting** activates.
- Based on Driving Style setting continuously learns your driving style when the vehicle is being driven.
- When **Based on driving style** is deactivated, the driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, and reaction speed maintains in the same stage.

## Smart Cruise Control operation

### Operating conditions

#### Basic function

Smart Cruise Control operates when the following conditions are met:

- The gear is in D (Drive)
- Your vehicle speed is within the operating speed range.
  - 5-110 mph (10-180 km/h): when there is no vehicle in front
  - 0-110 mph (0-180 km/h): when there is a vehicle in front
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is enabled.

Smart Cruise Control does not operate when:

- The driver's door is opened.
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is applied.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is controlling your vehicle.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist braking control is operating. (if equipped)
- Remote Smart Parking Assist brake control is operating. (if equipped)

#### *i* Information

If stopped behind another vehicle, you have to depress the brake pedal to turn on Smart Cruise Control.

#### Operating conditions for Acceleration Assist

Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the following conditions are met:

- Your vehicle speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).
- A vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist does not operate when:

- The hazard warning flasher is on.
- Deceleration is needed to maintain the distance from the vehicle in front.

#### WARNING

- Be careful when your vehicle temporarily accelerates to overtake a vehicle in front.
- Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the conditions are met, even if you are using the function in countries with different driving direction.

### Turning on Smart Cruise Control



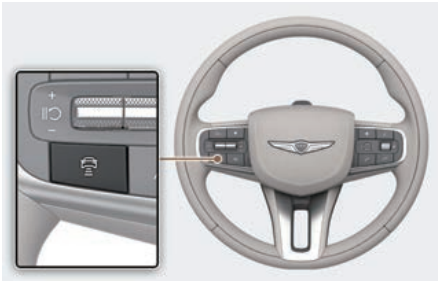
- Press the Driving Assist button to turn on Smart Cruise Control. The speed is set to the current speed on the instrument cluster.
- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed is maintained.

- If there is a vehicle in front of you, your vehicle speed may be adjusted to maintain the distance from the vehicle ahead.
- If the vehicle ahead accelerates and the distance between vehicles increase, your vehicle accelerates to the set speed, and then travels at a constant speed after your vehicle reaches the set distance.

### *i* Information

- If your vehicle speed is between 0-20 mph (0-30 km/h) when you press the Driving Assist button, Smart Cruise Control speed is set to 20 mph (30 km/h).
- If you shift from a higher gear to a lower gear using the paddle shifter, the vehicle speed may not accelerate to the set speed.

### Setting vehicle distance



Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle distance changes as follows:



If you drive at 56 mph (90 km/h):

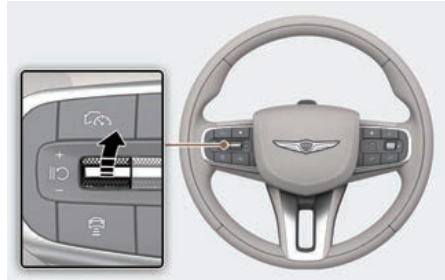
- Distance 4: about 172 ft. (52.5 m)
- Distance 3: about 130 ft. (40 m)

- Distance 2: about 106 ft. (32.5 m)
- Distance 1: about 82 ft. (25 m)

### *i* Information

When the vehicle is restarted or Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, the following distance maintains the last setting.

### Increasing set speed

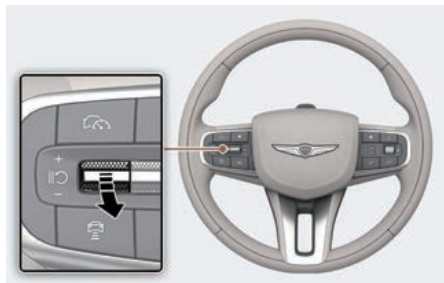


- Push the **+** switch up and release it immediately to increase the cruising speed by 1 mph (1 km/h).
- Push and hold the **+** switch up to increase to the nearest multiple of 5 mph (or multiple of 10 km/h) at first, and then increase by an additional 5 mph (10 km/h) each time.
- The speed can be set to a maximum of 110 mph (180 km/h).

### **⚠ WARNING**

Your vehicle speed may rapidly increase when you push and hold the **+** switch.

### Decreasing set speed



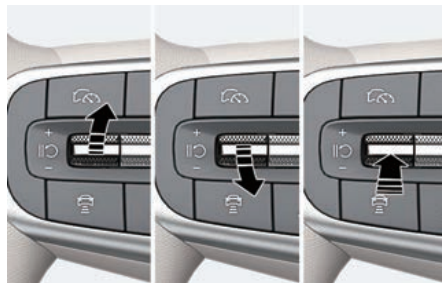
- Push the **—** switch down and release it immediately to decrease the cruising speed by 1 mph (1 km/h).
- Push and hold the **—** switch down to decrease to the nearest multiple of 5 mph (or multiple of 10 km/h) at first, and then decrease by 5 mph (10 km/h) each time.
- The speed can be set to a minimum of 20 mph (30 km/h).

### Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control



Press the **||** button or depress the brake pedal to temporarily cancel Smart Cruise Control.

### Resuming Smart Cruise Control



Push the **+**, **—**, or **||** switch.

If you push the **+** switch up or **—** switch down, your vehicle speed is set to the current speed on the instrument cluster.


If you press the **||** switch, your vehicle speed resumes to the previously set speed.

### **! WARNING**


Your vehicle speed may rapidly increase or decrease when you press the **||** switch.

### Turning off Smart Cruise Control



Press the Driving Assist () button to turn off Smart Cruise Control.

### **i Information**

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist () button to turn off Smart Cruise Control and turn on Manual Speed Limit Assist.

### CAUTION

Do not operate multiple buttons or switches simultaneously. Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.

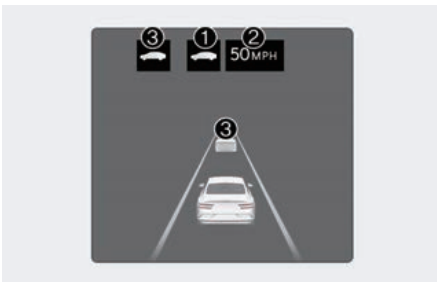
#### **Smart Cruise Control display**

The status of the Smart Cruise Control operation appears in Driving Assist view on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "View modes" section in chapter 4.

Operating



Temporarily cancelled



- When operating
  - (1) Displays whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level appears.
  - (2) Set speed appears.
  - (3) Displays whether there is a vehicle ahead and the target vehicle distance appears.
- When temporarily cancelled
  - (1) Your vehicle appears in grey.
  - (2) The previous set speed appears in grey.

- (3) Displays whether there is a vehicle ahead. If any, it appears in grey. (if equipped)

### *i* Information

- The distance from the front vehicle on the instrument cluster appears according to the actual distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- The target distance may differ depending on the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If the vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distance have changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

#### **Accelerating temporarily**



If you depress the accelerator pedal above a certain speed whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, your vehicle can speed up temporarily without changing the set speed. The set speed, distance level, and target distance blink on the instrument cluster whilst depressing the accelerator pedal. Your vehicle speed may decrease if the accelerator pedal is not depressed far enough.

## ⚠ WARNING

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because Smart Cruise Control is not controlling the speed and distance even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed depending on the road conditions.

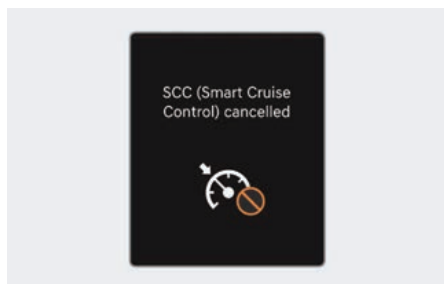
### Based on Driving Style operation

 if equipped



When Based on driving style is operating, the vehicle distance level and target distance appears white based on the driving style.

### Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control



Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled automatically when:

- Your vehicle speed is over 120 mph (190 km/h).

- Your vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time.
- Your accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for a certain period of time.
- The conditions for the Smart Cruise Control to operate are not met.

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled automatically, the "**SCC (Smart Cruise Control) cancelled**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds to warn you.

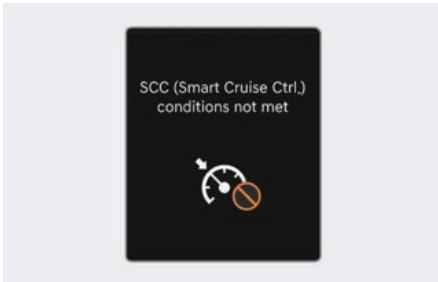
## i Information

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled whilst your vehicle is at a standstill with the function activated, the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) may be applied.

## ⚠ WARNING

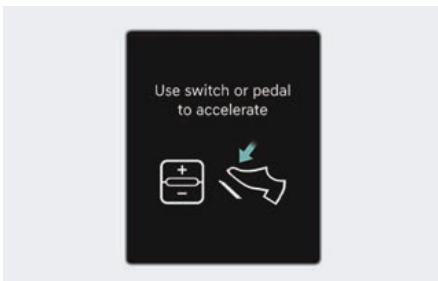
Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. When Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, it is not controlling the speed and distance from the vehicle ahead.

### **Smart Cruise Control conditions not met**



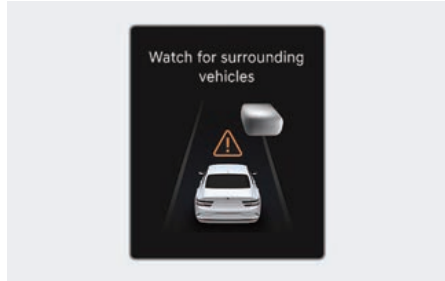
If the Driving Assist button, **+**, **-** or **||○** switch is operated when Smart Cruise Control operating conditions are not satisfied, the **"SCC (Smart Cruise Ctrl.) conditions not met"** message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds.

### **In traffic situation**



In traffic, your vehicle stops if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle starts moving as well. In addition, after your vehicle has stopped and a certain time have passed, the **"Use switch or pedal to accelerate"** message appears on the instrument cluster. Depress the accelerator pedal or push the **+**, **-** or **||○** switch to start driving.

### **Warning road conditions ahead**



The **"Watch for surrounding vehicles"** warning message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds if the vehicle in front disappears when Smart Cruise Control is maintaining the distance from the vehicle ahead whilst driving below a certain speed.

### **! WARNING**

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions.

### **Forward collision warning**

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, when the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn you of a possible collision.

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

For more information on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, refer to the "7" section in this chapter.

## WARNING

Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for proper and safe driving.

To prevent serious injury or death:

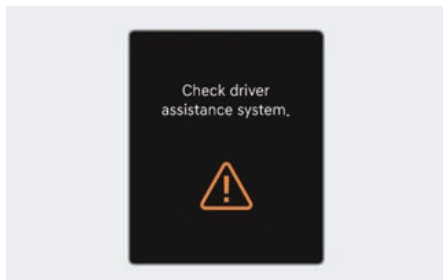
- Always monitor your vehicle speed and the distance to vehicles ahead on the road. Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.
- Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. Smart Cruise Control may not recognise unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations.
- Keep Smart Cruise Control off when not in use to avoid inadvertently setting the speed.
- Do not open the door or leave your vehicle when Smart Cruise Control is operating, even if your vehicle is stopped.
- Always check the vehicle speed and distance to the front vehicle that have been selected.
- Keep a safe distance depending on the road condition and vehicle speed. If the distance to the front vehicle is too close whilst driving at high speeds, it may cause a serious collision.
- When maintaining distance from the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle is no longer detected, Smart Cruise Control may suddenly accelerate to the set speed.
- The vehicle speed may slow down or speed up whilst driving uphill or downhill.
- Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Smart Cruise Control.
- Turn off Smart Cruise Control when your vehicle is being towed.
- Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Smart Cruise Control may not detect obstacles in front and cause a collision.
- Vehicles frequently changing lanes may cause a delay or may cause Smart Cruise Control to react to a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Smart Cruise Control may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Smart Cruise Control if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or collisions caused by you.
- Set your vehicle speed to the speed limit for the road and use the appropriate unit (mph or km/h) for your country.
- Smart Cruise Control may not operate for 15 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera, front radar, and front corner radar are initialized.


## Information

You may hear sounds when Smart Cruise Control is braking your vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

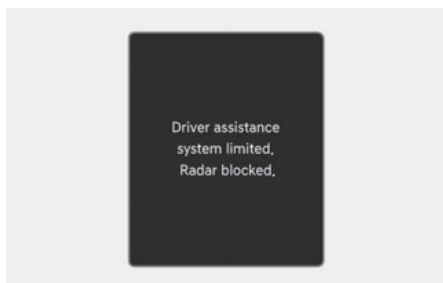
## Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations

### Smart Cruise Control malfunction



When Smart Cruise Control is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Smart Cruise Control disabled



If the front radar is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Smart Cruise Control is temporarily limited or disabled.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

If Smart Cruise Control does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an

authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### WARNING

- Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.

### Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera, front radar, and front corner radar.

### Limitations of Smart Cruise Control

Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- The sensor or the area near the sensor is blocked, covered, or damaged.
- The temperature near the front view camera is very hot or cold.
- The camera lens is covered or blocked by windscreen tint, the windscreen is damaged, or a sticky material (sticker, bug, etc.) is on the glass.
- Moisture is not removed or is frozen on the windscreen.
- Washer fluid is sprayed continuously, or the wiper is on.

- You are driving in heavy rain, snow, or thick fog.
- The front view camera's field of view is obstructed by glare from the sun.
- Sunlight, streetlight, or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface such as a puddle on the road.
- An object is placed on the dashboard.
- The surrounding is very bright or very dark (nighttime, tunnel, etc.).
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlights of the front vehicle are turned off or are not bright.
- A front vehicle is partially visible.
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights or tail lights are located in an unusual location.
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when your vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of your vehicle is visible.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is so low or high.
- Your vehicle is being towed.
- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front.
- The bumper around the front radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The temperature near the front radar is very hot or cold.
- The vehicle in front is made of a material that does not reflect on the front radar well.
- The vehicle in front is detected late.
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle.
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lanes or reduces the speed.
- The angle of the vehicle in front is out of the detection range.
- Your vehicle changes lanes at a low speed with a vehicle in front.
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow.
- You are on a curve or roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected.
- You are continuously driving in a circle.
- Your vehicle moves unstably or vibrates excessively.
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- You are driving through steam, smoke, or shadow.
- You are driving through a tunnel or an iron bridge.
- You are driving in large, open areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, empty suburb).
- You are driving in a parking lot.
- You are driving through a tollbooth, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- You are driving through roads with railroad tracks or other embedded metal objects.
- You are driving on an inclined road or curved road.
- You are driving on a sharply curved road.
- You are driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights.
- You are driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown.
- You are driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.

- You are driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- **Driving on curves**



On curves, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Your vehicle speed may be reduced if a vehicle is detected in an adjacent lane and your vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select an appropriate set speed for curves and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal depending on the road and driving conditions.

- **Driving on hills**



During uphill or downhill driving, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, your vehicle speed rapidly

decreases when a vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select an appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal depending on the road and driving conditions.

- **Changing lanes**

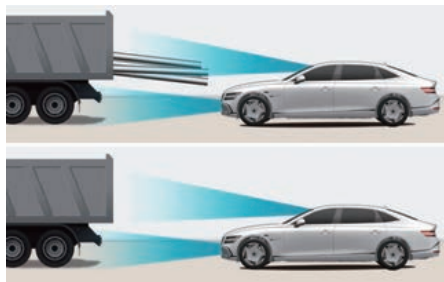
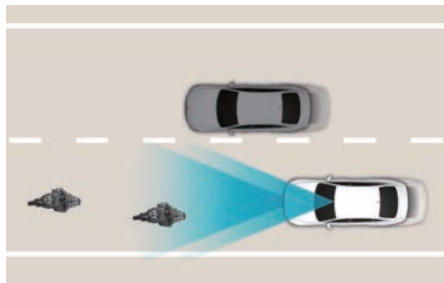


[A] Your vehicle

[B] Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the vehicle when your vehicle changes lanes abruptly. Brake as needed to reduce your driving speed.

### • Situations when detecting are limited



Some vehicles, pedestrians, or animals in your lane may not be detected by the sensor:

- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden decelerating vehicles
- Vehicles with higher ground clearance or vehicles carrying loads that extend past the end of the vehicle
- Vehicles that have the front tilted due to heavy loads
- Vehicles within about 6 ft. (2 m) from your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile, such as trailers
- Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Special vehicles

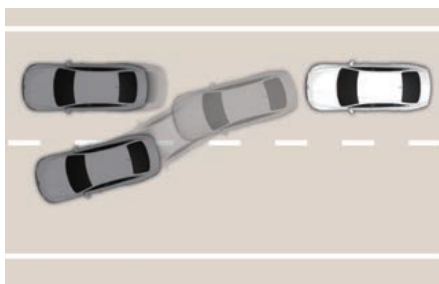
- Animals and pedestrians

Brake as needed to reduce your driving speed.

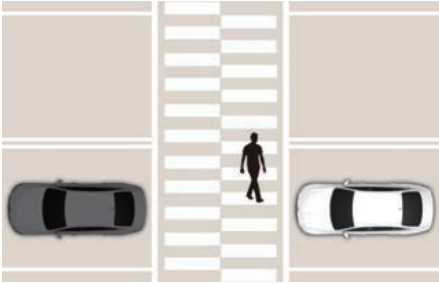
- In the following cases, the vehicle in front may not be detected by the sensor:
  - Making sharp steering inputs when driving
  - Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads
- When a vehicle ahead turns at an intersection and is no longer detected, your vehicle may accelerate.




- When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect a new vehicle that is now in front of your vehicle.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.



## Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)

 If equipped

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control helps drive at a certain speed depending on the road conditions when driving on highways (or motorways) by using information from the navigation system whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating.

### Information

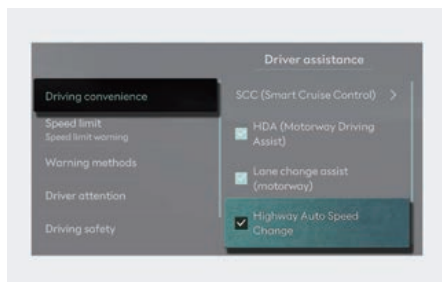
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is available only on controlled access highways (or motorways).
  - Controlled access highway is the road with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow.
- Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation system updates.
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates on main roads of highways (or motorways), and does not operate on interchanges or junctions.

---

### Highway Auto Curve Slowdown

If the vehicle speed is high, the Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function temporarily slows your vehicle or limits acceleration based on the available curve information in the navigation system.

## Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > Highway Auto Speed Change** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control and deselect to turn off the function.

### *i* Information

When there is a problem with Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control, the function cannot be set from the settings menu.

## Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may be available when:

- Smart Cruise Control is operating.
- You are driving on controlled access roads.

### *i* Information

For more information on how to operate Smart Cruise Control, refer to the "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in this chapter.

## Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control display

The following may appear on the instrument cluster:



## Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control standby

If the operating conditions are met, the green **NAV** indicator light illuminates.

## Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operating

Whilst the speed is being controlled, the green **NAV** indicator light blinks.

## Temporarily cancelled or interrupted by the driver

If Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control cannot control the vehicle, such as when Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled or the navigation system is searching for a route, the grey **NAV** indicator light illuminates.

When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, the white **NAV** indicator light blinks.



The "**Drive carefully**" warning message appears if Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not able to slow down your vehicle.

### *i* Information

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

#### Highway Auto Curve Slowdown

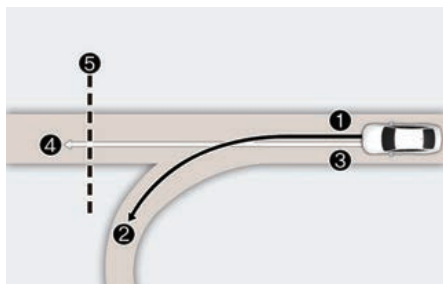
- Depending on the curve ahead on the highway (or motorway), your vehicle decelerates, and after passing the curve, your vehicle accelerates to Smart Cruise Control's set speed.
- Vehicle deceleration time may differ depending on your vehicle speed and the degree of the curve on the road. The higher the driving speed, deceleration starts faster.

## Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control

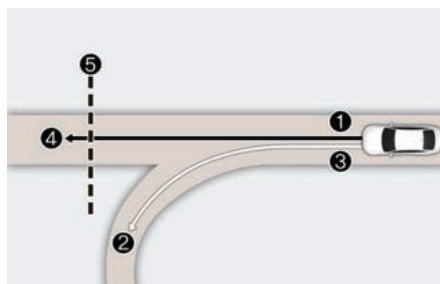
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally if:

- The navigation is not working properly.
- Map information is not transmitted due to an issue with the infotainment system.
- Speed limit and road information in the navigation system has not been updated.
- The map information differs from the actual road conditions because of real-time GPS data or map information error.
- The navigation system is searching for a route whilst driving.
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel.
- A road is divided into two or more roads and they join again.
- You go off the route set in the navigation system.
- The route to the destination is changed or cancelled by resetting the navigation system.
- Your vehicle enters a service station or rest area.
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating.
- The navigation system cannot detect the current vehicle position (for example, elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way).
- The navigation system is updated whilst driving or restarts.
- The speed limits of some sections have changed according to the road situations (for example, construction zone).
- You are driving on a road that is under facility construction.

- You are driving in lane-restricted driving situations.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy rain or heavy snow.
- You are driving on a road with sharp curves.
- When your vehicle continues on the controlled access road and does not follow the navigation route to exit the highway, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown may not operate until it is determined that you are driving on the highway. When Highway Auto Curve Slowdown operates, your vehicle may decelerate gradually or rapidly depending on the distance to the curve and the vehicle speed.



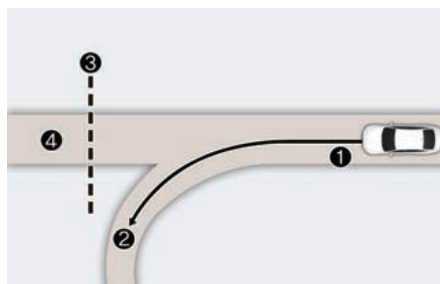
- (1) Set route
  - (2) Branch line
  - (3) Driving route
  - (4) Main road
  - (5) Curved road section
- When your vehicle does not follow the navigation route and exits the highway at an interchange or junction, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown may temporarily operate until it is determined that you have exited the highway.



- (1) Set route
- (2) Branch line
- (3) Driving route
- (4) Main road
- (5) Curved road section

- If there is no destination set on the navigation, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown operates based on the curve information for the controlled access road in the navigation system.

When you exit the highway at an interchange or junction, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown may temporarily operate using the navigation information for the highway.



- (1) Driving route
- (2) Branch line
- (3) Curved road section
- (4) Main road

## **WARNING**

Always have your eyes on the road. It is your responsibility to avoid violating traffic laws. Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always check the speed limit whilst driving. The navigation's speed limit information may differ from the actual speed limit on the road.
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is automatically cancelled when you leave the highway and enter a general road, interchange, junction, or rest area.
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate depending on the configuration of vehicles detected ahead on the road.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control.
- After you pass through a tollbooth on a highway, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates based on the outermost lane. If you enter one of the other lanes, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.
- Your vehicle accelerates if you depress the accelerator pedal whilst Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating. If the accelerator pedal is not depressed far enough, your vehicle may decelerate.
- If you accelerate and release the accelerator pedal whilst Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, your vehicle may not decelerate sufficiently or may rapidly decelerate.

- If the curve is too sharp or if it is a slight curve, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate.
- 

## **Information**

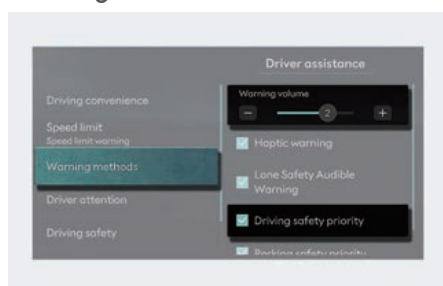
- There may be a gap in time between the navigation system's guidance and when the Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation starts and ends.
  - The speed information on the instrument cluster may differ from the navigation system.
  - Even if you are driving at a speed lower than the Smart Cruise Control's set speed, acceleration may be limited by the curves ahead on the road.
  - If Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating whilst leaving the highway and entering an interchange, junction, or rest area, the function may continue to operate for a whilst.
  - Deceleration by Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not feel sufficient due to the road conditions such as uneven road surfaces or narrow lanes.
-

## Lane Following Assist (LFA)

Lane Following Assist helps detect lane markings and/or a vehicle ahead on the road, and provide steering assist to your vehicle in the lane.

### Lane Following Assist settings

#### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

#### *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.

## Lane Following Assist operation

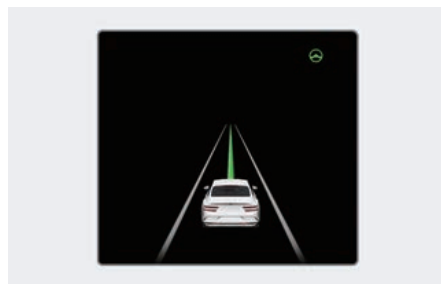
### Turning Lane Following Assist On/Off



With the vehicle on, press the Lane Driving Assist (/Ⓢ) button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Following Assist. The grey or green Ⓢ indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.


Press the button again to turn off the function.

### Lane Following Assist

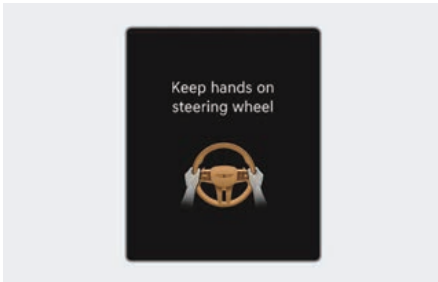


If the both lane markings and/or vehicle ahead are detected and your vehicle speed is below 110 mph (180 km/h), the green Ⓢ indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster, and Lane Following Assist helps centre the vehicle in the lane by assisting the steering wheel.

## *i* Information

When the steering wheel is not assisted, the white  indicator light blinks and changes to grey.

### *Hands-off warning*

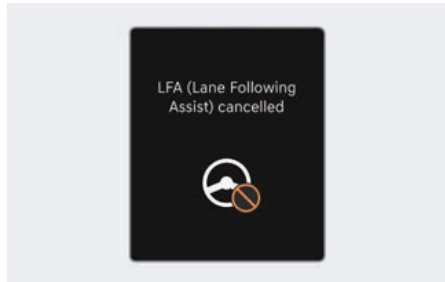


If you take your hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the "**Keep hands on steering wheel**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning may sound in successive stages.

- First stage: Warning message
- Second stage: Warning message (red steering wheel) with a warning sound

## *i* Information

For more details on precautions of the steering wheel grip sensor, refer to the "Steering wheel grip sensor" section in chapter 5.



If you do not have your hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the "**LFA (Lane Following Assist) cancelled**" warning message may appear and Lane Following Assist is automatically cancelled.

## WARNING

Always safely steer your vehicle and maintain the position of your vehicle in its lane.

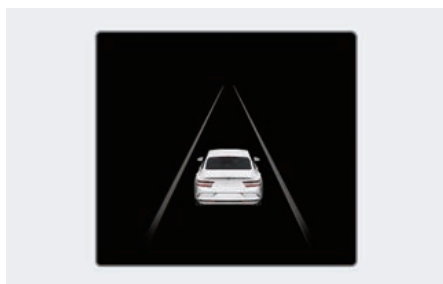
To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
- Lane Following Assist may not steer if the steering wheel is held too tightly, or the steering wheel is turned too far left or right.
- If the steering wheel is held very loosely or you have gloves on, the hands-off warning message may appear because the Lane Following Assist may not recognise that you have your hands on the steering wheel.
- The hands-off warning message may appear late or not at all depending on the road condition.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.

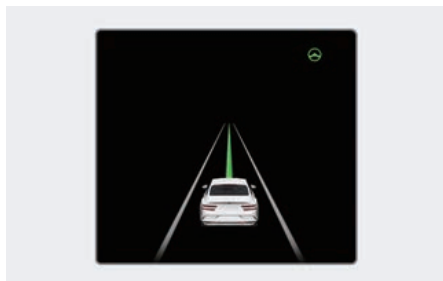
## *i* Information

- The status of the Lane Following Assist operation appears in Driving Assist view on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "View modes" section in chapter 4.
- When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the instrument cluster changes from grey to white.

Lane undetected



Lane detected

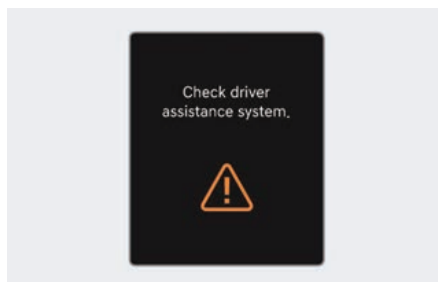



- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
- If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by Lane Following Assist can be limited depending on the vehicle in front or driving condition.
- You can steer your vehicle even when steering is assisted by Lane Following Assist.
- It may require more or less force to turn the steering wheel when Lane

Following Assist is providing steering assistance.

## Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Lane Following Assist malfunction*



When Lane Following Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## *i* Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera.

### Limitations of Lane Following Assist

#### **i** Information

For more information on Lane Following Assist limitations and precautions, refer to the "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in this chapter.

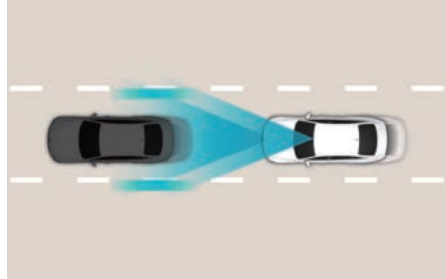
#### **!** WARNING

Loading in excess of the maximum load allowance or concentrated loading at one point in the luggage compartment can reduce the vehicle's driving stability, which can in turn reduce the effectiveness of Lane Following Assist.

## Highway Driving Assist (HDA)

**+** if equipped

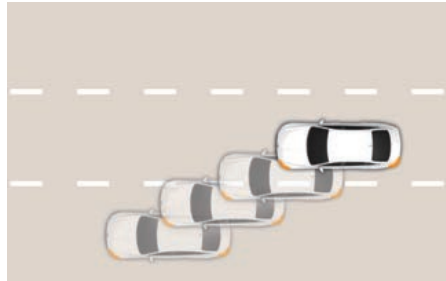
### Basic function



Highway Driving Assist helps maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and centre the vehicle in the lane whilst driving on the highway (or motorway).

### Highway Lane Change Assist

**+** if equipped

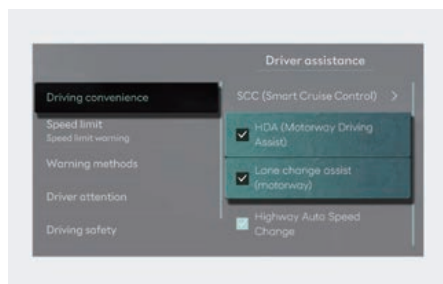


Highway Lane Change Assist function helps change lanes to the direction you operate the turn signal switch if the function judges that lane change is possible.

## *i* Information

- Highway Driving Assist is available only on controlled access highways.
  - Controlled access highway is the road with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow.
- Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation system updates.
- Highway Driving Assist does not operate on interchanges or junctions.

## Highway Driving Assist settings



With the vehicle on, select or deselect **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience** from the Settings menu to turn each function on and off.

## Highway Driving Assist

If **HDA (Motorway Driving Assist)** is selected, the function helps maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and help centre your vehicle in the lane whilst driving on the highway (or motorway).

## Highway Lane Change Assist

**if equipped**

If **Lane change assist (motorway)** is selected, the function helps you change lanes.

## *i* Information

- When **HDA (Motorway Driving Assist)** is deselected, the setting for **Lane change assist (motorway)** cannot be changed.
- When there is a problem with Highway Driving Assist, the function cannot be set from the Settings menu. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the function maintains the last setting.

## **! WARNING**

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

## Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

## i Information

- If you change the warning volume, the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

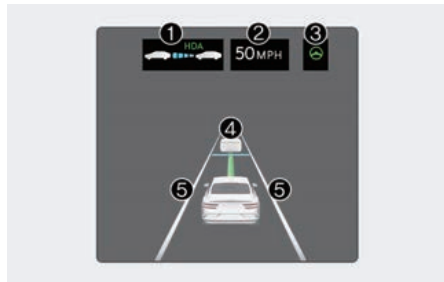
## Highway Driving Assist operation

### Basic function

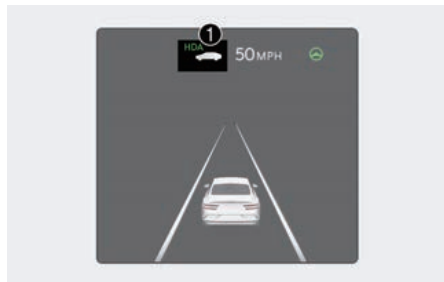
#### Highway Driving Assist display

The status of the Highway Driving Assist operation appears in Driving Assist mode on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "View modes" section in chapter 4.

Operating state



Standby state



1. Indicates if there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level appears.

- Highway Driving Assist (HDA) indicator
  - Green HDA: Operating state
  - Grey HDA: Standby state
  - White HDA blink: Accelerator pedal depressed
  - Non-display: Off state

2. Set speed appears.

3. Lane Following Assist light appears.

4. Detected ahead and the selected vehicle distance appears.
5. Whether the lane is detected or not appears.

### *i* Information

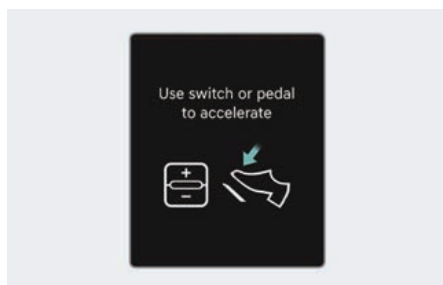
- For more information on the display, refer to the "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" and "Lane Following Assist (LFA)" sections in this chapter.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

### Highway Driving Assist operation

Highway Driving Assist operates when:

- You have pressed the Driving Assist button after entering or driving on controlled access roads.
- Entering or driving on controlled access roads with both Lane Following Assist and Smart Cruise Control operating.

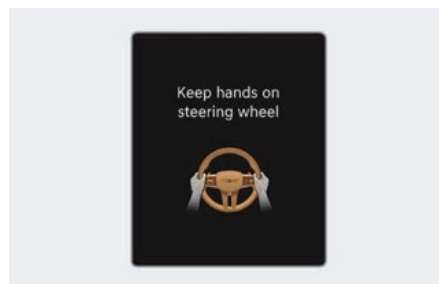
### Restarting after stopping



When Highway Driving Assist is operating, your vehicle stops if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving within 30 seconds after the stop, your vehicle starts as well. If your vehicle has stopped and 30 seconds have passed, the "**Use switch or pedal to accelerate**" message appears on the instrument cluster.

Depress the accelerator pedal or push the **+**, **-** or **||** **○** switch to accelerate.

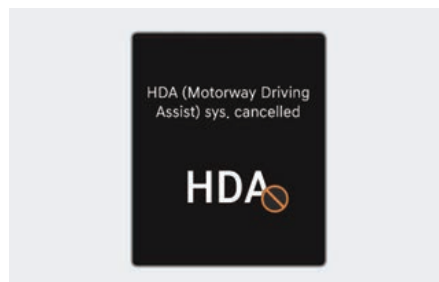
### Hands-off warning



If you take your hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the "**Keep hands on steering wheel**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds in successive stages.

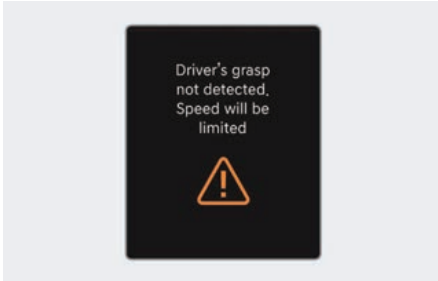
First stage: Warning message

Second stage: Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning



If you do not have your hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the "**HDA (Motorway Driving Assist) sys. cancelled**" warning message may appear and Highway Driving Assist and Lane Change Assist are automatically cancelled.


### Driving speed limit

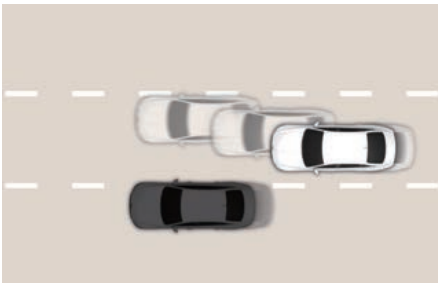


When Highway Driving Assist is cancelled by the hands-off warning, The driving speed will be limited.

Whilst Driving Speed Limit function is operating, the **"Driver's grasp not detected. Speed will be limited"** warning message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds continuously.

### Driving to one side within lane

 if equipped








When vehicle speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h), if a detected vehicle around you is driving at a close distance, your vehicle controls the steering in the opposite direction of the vehicle. If a vehicle is detected at both sides of the lane and are driving close to you, the function does not veer to the opposite side of the lane.

### Highway Driving Assist standby

When the Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled whilst Highway Driving Assist is operating, Highway Driving Assist goes into the standby state. At this time, Lane Following Assist operates normally.

#### Information

- Driving Speed Limit helps you drive below 40 mph (60 km/h). At this time, the vehicle decelerates due to the vehicle ahead. After the vehicle has decelerated, it cannot automatically accelerate.
- Driving Speed Limit cancels when:
  - The driver grabs the steering wheel again
  - The driver turns on Lane Following Assist by pressing the Lane Driving Assist () button
  - , ,  switch, or  button is operated, or the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal is depressed

## Highway Lane Change Assist

 if equipped

### Highway Lane Change Assist display

The status of the Highway Lane Change Assist operation appears in Driving Assist mode on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "View modes" section in chapter 4.

Ready/Operating



Standby/Cancelled



#### 1. Highway Lane Change Assist (HLC) indicator

- Green on: Ready state
- Green blink: Operating state
- Grey on: Standby state
- White blink: Cancelled state (displayed only a certain time)

#### 2. Lane line

- The lane line is displayed same as the Highway Lane Change Assist (HLC) indicator. However, if the function is in standby, it displays whether the lane line is detected.

#### 3. Green arrow and shade

- The green arrow is displayed when a certain amount of time has passed after the function has started operating, and until the lane change has completed.

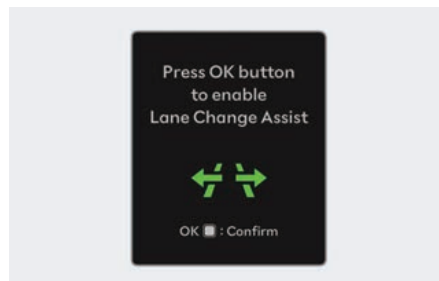
#### 4. Message

- Message appears when the function does not operate even though the turn signal is used.
- Message appears when the function is cancelled whilst operating.

### To turn on Highway Lane Change Assist

Highway Lane Change Assist function turns on when the Driving Assist button or Lane Driving Assist button is used to turn on Highway Driving Assist.

### Highway Lane Change Assist ready to operate



Whilst Highway Lane Change Assist function is on, the function is ready to operate when all the following conditions are met:

- Highway Driving Assist is operating.
- Lane Following Assist is operating.
- A vehicle in the rear area of your vehicle is detected more than once after the vehicle is turned on.
- Your vehicle speed is above 20 mph (30 km/h).
- When your vehicle is between 20-50 mph (30-80 km/h), a vehicle is detected in the rear area of your

vehicle's left and right side lanes, and there is no risk of collision when changing a lane.

- Hands-off warning is not displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Hazard warning flasher is off.

### **i** Information

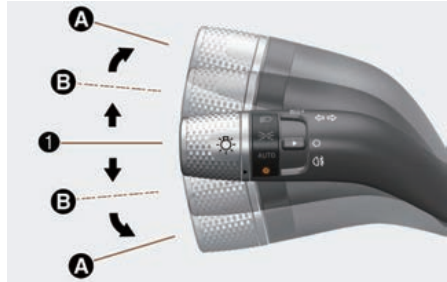
Whilst Lane Change Assist function is turned on (indicator on), Lane Following Assist does not cancel even if the turn signal indicator or hazard warning flasher is operating.

- Lane Change Assist function turns off automatically when driven in the following road conditions:
  - There is only one driving lane.
  - There is a road with a intersection or crosswalk ahead.
  - There is a road with no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrails, etc.
  - There is a pedestrian or cyclist on the road ahead.
- When the function is in the ready state, and vehicle speed is below 15.5 mph (25 km/h), the function changes to the standby state.
- When your vehicle is between 20-50 mph (30-80 km/h), and a vehicle is not detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes, the function changes to the standby state.
- If there is a collision risk, the function changes to the standby state.

### **⚠** WARNING

When Highway Lane Change Assist function turns off whilst operating, steering assist is temporarily cancelled. Always be cautious whilst driving.

### Highway Lane Change Assist operating



Highway Lane Change Assist function operates, when you push the turn signal lever up or down to the [A] or [B] position whilst the function is in the ready state (indicator is green), and all of the following conditions are met:

- You have your hand on the steering wheel.
- There is no collision risk in the direction of lane change.
- There is a single dotted lane line in the direction of lane change.
- There are no Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist and Blind Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist warnings.
- The vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane (should not be driving close to one side of the lane).
- The road you are driving on, or the road you are about to change lane is a road that the function can operate.

### **i** Information

- Highway Lane Change Assist operates when the turn signal lever is positioned at [A].

If the turn signal lever is released to the centre (1) before stepping on the lane, Highway Lane Change Assist cancels. If the turn signal lever is released to the centre (1) after stepping on the lane, Highway Lane Change Assist changes the lane and turns off the turn signal after the lane change is complete.

- When the turn signal lever is placed at [B] position for a certain period of time, the green arrow appears. At this time, even when the lever is released and returns to the original position (1), lane change is still assisted.

Whilst lane change is being made by the function, the turn signal indicator blinks even when the turn signal lever is not held, and the turn signal indicator turns off when lane change is complete.

### Highway Lane Change Assist standby

Highway Lane Change Assist function is in the standby state when one of the ready state condition is not met, or when entering or driving on one of the following roads:

- Road within a certain distance from the tollbooth on the main road of the highway
- The road ahead ends without an interchange or junction
- Road with sharp curves
- Road with narrow lanes
- Road that is under construction

### Highway Lane Change Assist cancel

You may cancel the function by:

- Turning on the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane change.
- Turning the steering wheel sharply.

### WARNING

- Highway Lane Change Assist automatically cancels when:
  - Highway Driving Assist is turned off.
  - Lane Following Assist or Smart Cruise Control is turned off or temporarily cancelled.
  - Hands-off warning message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - The hazard warning flasher is turned on.

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist or Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist warning message is displayed.

- Possible collision is detected in the next lane, even though there are no Forward-Collision Avoidance Assist and Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist warning.

- Entering a road under construction.

- The target lane to make a lane change disappears.

- There is a problem with the turn signal lights.

- Highway Lane Change Assist function turns off (The function turns off when the function is turned off from the settings menu, when the road changes to a one-way road, when there is an intersection or crosswalk ahead, when you enter a road with no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrail, etc., or when there is a pedestrian or cyclist on the driving lane.).

- Your vehicle speed is below 15.5 mph (25 km/h).

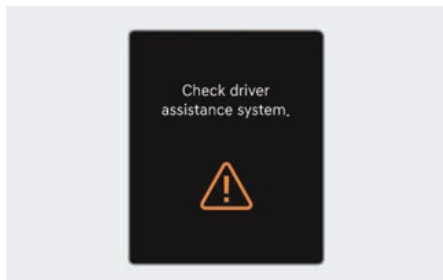
- When your vehicle is between 20-50 mph (30-80 km/h), and a vehicle is not detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes.


- There is a risk of collision with a vehicle in the rear area of your vehicle.

- Whilst the function is operating, when the function is cancelled, depending on the driving conditions, the vehicle may drive to the middle of the driving lane or steering assist may stop. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
- The function may not operate properly on roads with pedestrians or cyclists, such as an intersection or crosswalk. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

## Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations

### Highway Driving Assist malfunction



When Highway Driving Assist is not working properly, the **"Check driver assistance system."** warning message may appear and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

#### **WARNING**

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. Highway Driving Assist is a supplemental function only and it is not a self driving or autonomous driving system.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
- Always have your eyes on the road and pay attention. It is your responsibility to avoid violating traffic laws.
- Highway Driving Assist may not be able to recognise all traffic situations and may not detect possible collision hazards. Obstacles such as vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, or unspecified objects or structures (for example, guardrails and tollbooth) may not be detected.

- Highway Driving Assist turns off automatically under the following situations:
  - You are driving on roads that Highway Driving Assist does not operate, such as rest area, intersection, junction, etc. However, Highway Driving Assist may be maintained in some sections.
  - The navigation does not operate properly such as when the navigation system is updating or restarting.
- Highway Driving Assist may inadvertently operate or turn off depending on the road conditions (based on the navigation system information) and surroundings.
- Lane Following Assist may be temporarily disabled when the front view camera cannot detect lanes properly or the hands-off warning is on.
- The hands-off warning message may appear early or late depending on how the steering wheel is held or road conditions.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Highway Driving Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- When your vehicle is driven at high speeds through a curve, your vehicle may depart from your driving lane if you do not maintain control.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Highway Driving Assist.
- Highway Driving Assist may not operate right after the vehicle is started or when the sensors or navigation system is initialized.

#### **Information**

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar, and rear corner radar.

### Limitations of Highway Driving Assist


Highway Driving Assist may not operate normally or may not operate if:

- The map information differs from the actual road conditions because the navigation system has not been updated, or there is a real-time GPS data or map information error.
- The infotainment system is overloaded by simultaneously performing functions such as route search, video playback, voice recognition, etc.
- GPS signals are blocked in an area such as tunnel.
- You depart from the navigation route or the route to the destination is changed or cancelled.
- Your vehicle enters a service station or rest area.
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating.
- The navigation system cannot detect the current vehicle position (for example, elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way).
- A trailer or towbar mounted carrier is connected to your vehicle.

### *i* Information

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar, and rear corner radar, refer to the "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

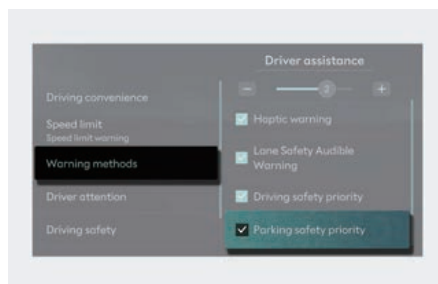
## Rear View Monitor (RVM)

 if equipped

Rear View Monitor displays the area behind your vehicle to assist you when parking or driving.

## Rear View Monitor settings

### Warning methods



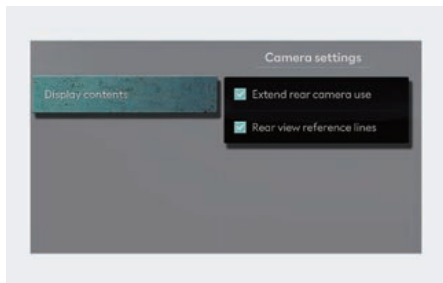
With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Parking safety priority:** The vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when a parking assist view is active.

### *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

## Camera settings



To change the settings of Rear View Monitor's display contents, press the setup icon (⚙️) on the screen whilst Rear View Monitor is operating, or select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Camera settings** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system whilst the vehicle is on.

- If **Display contents** is selected, you can change settings for **Extend rear camera use** and **Rear view reference lines**.

### Extended rear view monitor

If **Extend rear camera use** is selected, the rear view maintains on the screen when shifting from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive). When your vehicle exceeds a certain speed, the rear view stops displaying.

### Rear view parking guide line

If **Rear view reference lines** is selected, the rear view parking guide appears when the rear view and rear top view is displayed.

## Information

- The rear view horizontal guideline shows the distance of about 20 in. (0.5 m), 40 in. (1 m) and 91 in. (2.3 m) from the vehicle.
- The rear top view horizontal guideline shows the distance of 20 in. (0.5 m) and 60 in. (1.5 m) from the vehicle.

## Rear View Monitor operation

### Parking/View button

Press the Parking/View button (P) whilst the gear is in P (Park), D (Drive) or N (Neutral) to turn on the Rear View Monitor.



### Rear view



The rear view appears on the screen.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) on the Rear View Monitor screen.

### Turns on if:

- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.

**Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).
- You shift the gear to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

### **i** Information

The rear view cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).

**Extended rear view function**

The rear view maintains on the screen when you shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive).

**Turns on if:**

- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.

**Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).
- Your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Rear top view**

Select the rear top view mode from the view buttons (2).

The top view appears on the screen and the distance from the vehicle appears in the back of your vehicle.

**Rear view whilst driving**

The rear view maintains on the screen whilst driving, it is to assist with backing up.

**Turns on if:**

- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Turns off if:

- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).

### Information

- The rear view in all modes cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- When the rear view is turned on, the last view mode appears.
- The rear parking guidelines appear when the rear view or rear top view is displayed. (The parking guidelines appear only when **Rear view reference lines** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.).
- The rear view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the rear view whilst driving is on, the rear top view is disabled.

---

## Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations

### *Rear View Monitor malfunction*

When Rear View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not appear normally, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Detecting sensors*

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the wide-rear view camera.

### *Limitations of Rear View Monitor*

When your vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or your vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.

### WARNING

- Always turn your head to check blind spots. The rear view camera does not cover the entire area behind your vehicle.
- The distance to the object shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance. This is because the image shown on Rear View Monitor is displayed by calibrating the image from the camera.

When the vehicle is tilted by cargo loading, parking guidelines may not be correct. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.

- Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, the Rear View Monitor may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (for example, petrol, acetone).
-

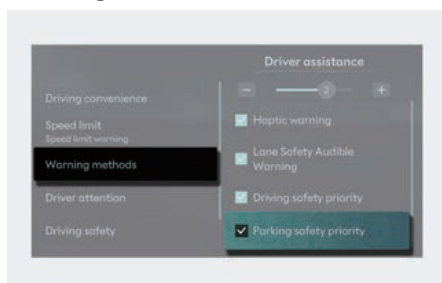
## Surround View Monitor (SVM)

 if equipped

Surround View Monitor displays images around your vehicle through the infotainment system screen when parking or driving.

## Surround View Monitor settings

### Warning methods



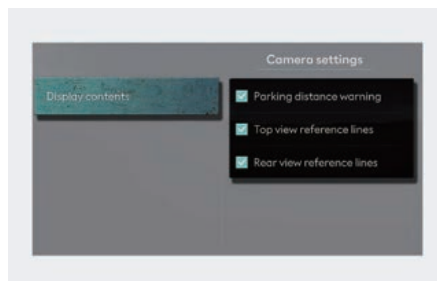
With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Parking safety priority:** The vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when a parking assist view is active.

### Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

### Camera settings



To change the settings of Surround View Monitor's display contents, press the setup icon (⚙️) on the screen whilst Surround View Monitor is operating, or select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Camera settings** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system whilst the vehicle is on.

- If **Display contents** is selected, you can change settings for **Parking distance warning**, **Top view reference lines** and **Rear view reference lines**.

### Parking distance warning

If **Parking distance warning** is selected, the parking distance warning appears on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

### Top view reference lines

If **Top view reference lines** is selected, the parking guideline appears on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

### Information

The rear top view horizontal guideline shows 20 in. (0.5 m) and 79 in. (2 m) from the vehicle.

### Rear view reference lines

If **Rear view reference lines** is selected, the parking guideline appears in the rear view.

#### *i* Information

The rear view horizontal guideline shows the distance of about 20 in. (0.5 m), 40 in. (1 m) and 91 in. (2.3 m) from the vehicle.

### Surround View Monitor Auto On

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Surround view monitor auto On** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to use the function.

#### *i* Information

For more information on Surround view monitor auto On, refer to "Surround View Monitor operation" in this chapter.

## Surround View Monitor operation

Press the Parking/View button (P) to turn on Surround View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.



### Front view



The front view appears on the screen when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to assist parking. The front view has top view, front view, side view, and 3D view.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.

#### Turns on if:

- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.
- **Surround view monitor auto On** function is operating.

(**Surround view monitor auto On** must be selected from the Settings menu.)

#### *i* Information

When the front view is turned on, the last view mode appears.

#### Turns off if:

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).
- Your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

## *i* Information

Surround View Monitor turns off when vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h). The function does not turn on again even if vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

### **Front view whilst driving**

The front view maintains on the screen whilst driving.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.

#### **Turns on if:**

- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

#### **Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).

## *i* Information

- When the front view whilst driving is turned on, the last view mode appears.
- The front view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h) once it is on.
- When the front view whilst driving is on, the front top view and side view are disabled.

### **Rear view**



The rear view appears on the screen to assist parking. The rear view has top view, rear view, side view, and 3D view.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.

#### **Turns on if:**

- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

#### **Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear from N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the Home button (3) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- Your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) when the gear is in D (Drive).
- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park).

## *i* Information

The rear view cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse) even if the infotainment system buttons (4) are pressed.

### **Rear View whilst driving**

The rear view maintains on the screen whilst driving, it is to assist with backing up.

#### **Turns on if:**

- You press the rear view mode from view buttons (2) after pressing the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

#### **Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).

## *i* Information

- When the rear view whilst driving is turned on, the last view mode appears.
- The rear parking guidelines do not appear when the rear view is displayed whilst driving.
- The rear view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the rear view whilst driving is on, the rear top view and rear side view are disabled.

### **3D view**



The 3D view shows the image around the vehicle from various angles.

Tap the screen to change vehicle angles. Press the 3D view button (2) again to return to the initial angle.

#### **Turns on if:**

- You press the 3D view button (2) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- You press the 3D view button (2) when Surround View Monitor is turned on when the gear is in R (Reverse).

#### **Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear from N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the Home button (3) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- Your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) when the gear is in D (Drive).
- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park).

## *i* Information

3D view does not display guidelines.

## Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations

### *Surround View Monitor malfunction*

When Surround View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not appear normally, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Detecting sensors*

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the wide-front view camera, wide-side view camera, and wide-rear view camera.

### *Limitations of Surround View Monitor*

- When your vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or your vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may not display the surround view properly and an icon may appear at the top left of the screen if:
  - The boot is opened.
  - The driver or front passenger door is opened.
  - The outside rearview mirror is folded.

### **WARNING**

- Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before driving.
- The distance to the object shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance. This is because the image shown on Surround View Monitor is displayed by calibrating the image from the camera.

When the vehicle is tilted by cargo loading, parking guidelines may not be correct. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.

- Surround View Monitor is designed to be used on a flat surface. When your vehicle is used on roads with different heights such as kerbs and speed bumps, the image on the screen may not look correct.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, the Surround View Monitor may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone etc.).

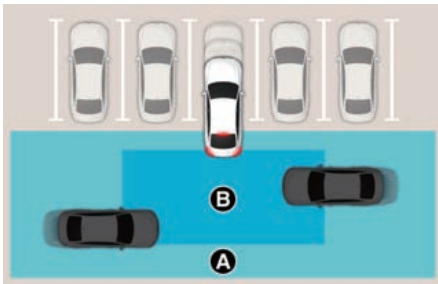
### **Information**

Surround View Monitor uses the cameras installed on the vehicle to show images around the vehicle through the infotainment system. The image shown on the screen may look unnatural depending on the surroundings.

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)

 If equipped

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect vehicles approaching from the rear left or right whilst your vehicle is reversing, and warns you of a possible collision with a warning message and an audible warning. Braking may also be assisted to avoid a collision.



[A] Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range

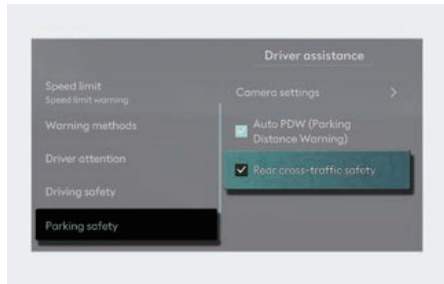
[B] Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range

### CAUTION

The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the detected vehicle.

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### *Rear cross-traffic safety*

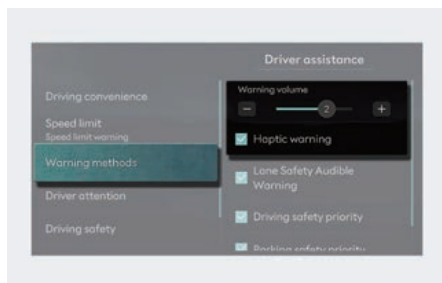


With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Rear cross-traffic safety** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

### WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist turns on. If **Rear cross-traffic safety** is deselected after the vehicle is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not function until the next time your vehicle is started.

## Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

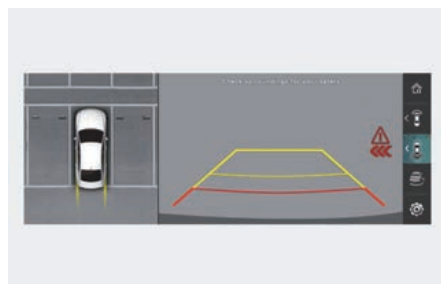
- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.

### *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### Collision warning



To warn you of an approaching vehicle from the rear left or right of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror may blink, a warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.

When Rear View Monitor or Surround View Monitor is operating, a warning may appear on the infotainment system screen.

Collision warning may operate if:

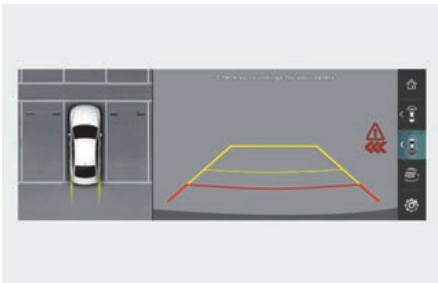
- You shift the gear to R (Reverse) and your vehicle speed is below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- The approaching vehicle is detected within about 82 ft. (25 m) from the left or right of your vehicle.

- The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left or right is above 3 mph (5 km/h).

### *i* Information

- If the operating conditions are met, a warning is provided whenever a vehicle approaches from the left or right even though your vehicle speed is 0 mph (0 km/h).
- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

### *Emergency braking*



To warn you of an approaching vehicle from the rear left or right of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror may blink, a warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.

When Rear View Monitor or Surround View Monitor is operating, a warning may

appear on the infotainment system screen.

If a collision is imminent, emergency braking is assisted to help prevent collision with approaching vehicles from the left and right side or your vehicle.

Emergency braking may operate if:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) and your vehicle speed is below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- The approaching vehicle is detected within about 5 ft. (1.5 m) from the left or right of your vehicle.
- The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left or right is above 3 mph (5 km/h).

### WARNING

Brake control ends when:

- The approaching vehicle is out of the detection range.
- The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle.
- The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle.
- The approaching vehicle speed slows down.
- You depress the brake pedal sufficiently in response to the potential hazard detected by the function.

### *Stopping vehicle and ending brake control*

After your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

Depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped.
- During Emergency Braking, braking control by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be

automatically cancelled when you depress the brake pedal with sufficient force.

### **WARNING**

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Only change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- Always look over your shoulder for possible hazards and make sure it is safe to back up.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- During Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, your vehicle may stop suddenly. Always wear your seatbelt, check your occupants have their seat belts fastened and secure loose objects that may become projectiles.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if you apply the brake pedal with sufficient force in response to the potential hazard detected by the system.
- Even if there is an issue with Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's braking system operates normally.
- When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking assist is automatically cancelled when you depress the accelerator pedal with sufficient force.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn you late or may not warn you depending on the road and driving conditions.

- Control your vehicle at all times. It is your responsibility to operate your vehicle in a safe manner. Do not solely rely on the Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist to avoid a collision. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and If needed, reduce your vehicle speed or depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed or to stop your vehicle.
- Never attempt to activate Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.

### **WARNING**

Braking is not assisted and only a warning is provided when:

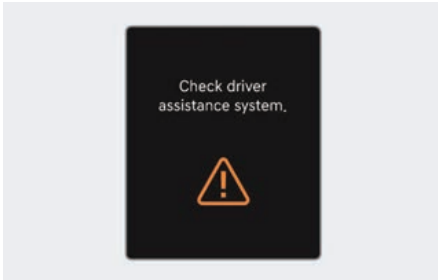
- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is controlling the brake force to the wheels.


### **Information**

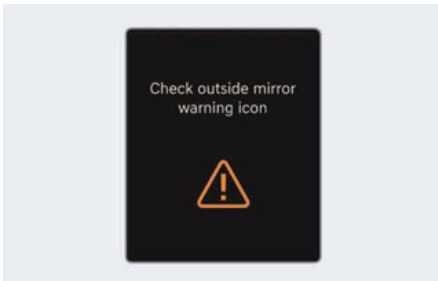
After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates once for left or right vehicle's approach.


## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction*

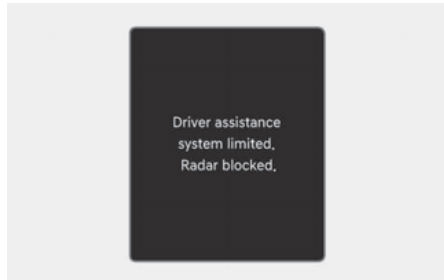


When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the "**Check outside mirror warning icon**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. If recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled*



If the rear corner radar is blocked or covered, or when the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may reduce and temporarily limit or disable Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## WARNING

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.
- Always turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.

## Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the rear corner radar.

### **Limitations of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist**

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally, or may operate unexpectedly if:

- Departing from where trees or grass are overgrown.
- Departing from where roads are wet.
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow.

Braking may not be assisted if:

- Your vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road, or concrete patch.

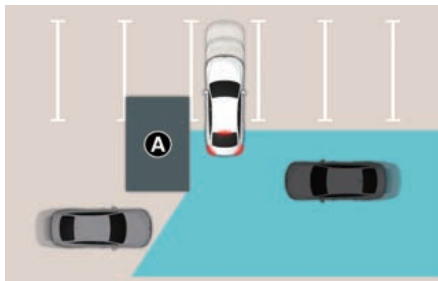
- You are driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged.
- The braking system is adjusted differently from the factory default settings.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating (if equipped).

## Information

For more information on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter.

## WARNING

- **Driving near a vehicle or structure**



[A] Structure

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving near another vehicle or a structure, and it may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. The system may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- **When your vehicle is in a complex parking environment**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles that are parking or pulling out near your vehicle (for example, leaving beside your vehicle, parking or pulling out behind your vehicle, approaching your vehicle making a turn). If this occurs, the function may activate a warning and brake your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

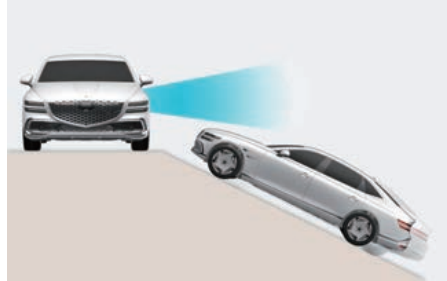
- **When your vehicle is parked diagonally**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when backing up diagonally, and may not detect any vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

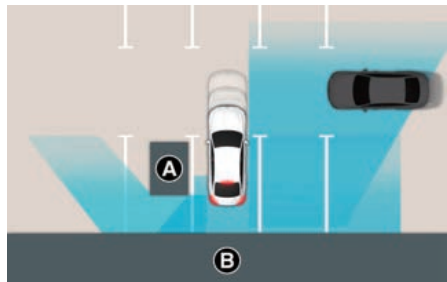
- **When your vehicle is on or near a slope**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when your vehicle is on an uphill or downhill slope, and may not detect any vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may activate a warning and brake your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- **Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure**

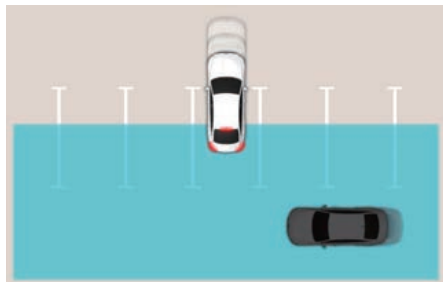


[A] Structure  
[B] Wall

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by in front of you when parking in reverse into a parking space with a wall or structure in the rear or side area. If this occurs, the function may activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- When your vehicle is parked rearward



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by behind you when parking in reverse into a parking space. If this occurs, the function may activate a warning and brake your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

## WARNING

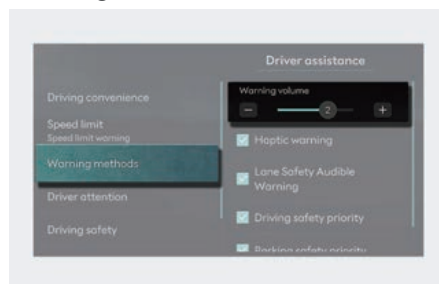
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 3 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the rear corner radars are initialized.

## Parking Distance Warning (PDW)

Parking Distance Warning uses the front ultrasonic sensors, side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped), and rear ultrasonic sensors to detect and warn you if an obstacle is within a certain distance when your vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

## Parking Distance Warning settings

### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.

## *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

### **Parking Distance Warning Auto On**

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to use Parking Distance Warning Auto On.

## *i* Information

When **Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)** is selected, the Parking Safety (P $\Delta$ ) button indicator stays on.

## **Parking Distance Warning operation**

### **Parking Safety button**



Press the Parking Safety (P $\Delta$ ) button to turn on Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the function.

- When Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light off), if you shift the gear to R (Reverse), Parking Distance Warning automatically turns on.

### **Forward Parking Distance Warning**

Forward Parking Distance Warning may operate if:

- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to D (Drive).
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety button indicator light is on.
- An obstacle is detected whilst driving in D (Drive).







**(Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning) must be selected from the Settings menu.)**

## *i* Information

- Forward Parking Distance Warning operates only when the vehicle's forward speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- If your vehicle speed is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h), Forward Parking Distance Warning turns off (button

indicator light off). Although you slow down to less than 6 mph (10 km/h) again, Forward Parking Distance Warning does not turn on again.

- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the front outer corner warning illuminates (within 24 in. (60 cm)).

Distance from object	Warning indicator		Warning sound
	Cluster	Infotainment	
24-48 in. (60-120 cm)			Buzzer beeps intermittently (front inside)
12-24 in. (30-60 cm)			Buzzer beeps more frequently
within 12 in. (30 cm)			Buzzer beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator illuminates whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person or object in its sensing range and an audible warning sounds.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, an audible warning sounds for the object closest to your vehicle.
- When the distance from the vehicle to the object is above 24 in. (60 cm), Forward Parking Distance Warning may not display the front outer corner warning in the cluster.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

## Side Parking Distance Warning

 if equipped







Side Parking Distance Warning may operate if:

- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).
- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to D (Drive).
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P $\text{Ⓜ}$ ) button indicator light is on.
- An obstacle is detected whilst driving in D (Drive).

(Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning) must be selected from the Settings menu.)

## i Information

- Side Parking Distance Warning operates when the vehicle's forward speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Side Parking Distance Warning operates only when Forward or Reverse Parking Distance Warning is on.

Distance from object	Warning indicator		Warning sound
	Cluster	Infotainment	
24-48 in. (60-120 cm)			-
12-24 in. (30-60 cm)			-
within 12 in. (30 cm)			Buzzer beeps continuously







- The corresponding indicator illuminates whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person or object in its sensing range.

- If an object located within 12 in. (30 cm) from the side of the vehicle's path is detected, an audible warning sounds.
- If an object outside the side of the vehicle's path is detected, the warning indicator appears.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

**Reverse Parking Distance Warning**

Reverse Parking Distance Warning may operate if:

- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).

Distance from object	Warning indicator		Warning sound
	Cluster	Infotainment	
24-48 in. (60-120 cm)			Buzzer beeps intermittently
12-24 in. (30-60 cm)			Buzzer beeps more frequently
within 12 in. (30 cm)			Buzzer beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator illuminates whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person or object in its sensing range and an audible warning sounds.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the audible warning sounds for the object closest to your vehicle.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

**Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations**

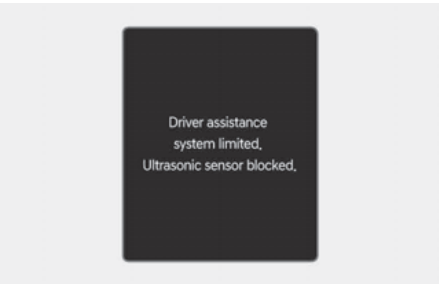
**Parking Distance Warning malfunction**

After starting the vehicle, a beep sounds when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Parking Distance Warning is operating normally.

If one or more of the following occurs, check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The **"Check driver assistance system."** warning message appears on the instrument cluster.
- If it still does not work properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**Parking Distance Warning disabled**



If the ultrasonic sensor is blocked or covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, the detecting performance may reduce and temporarily limit or disable Parking Distance Warning.

The **"Driver assistance system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked."** warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the vehicle is restarted.

If the Parking Distance Warning does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **i** Information



- When the Parking Distance Warning is operating, if the function is not working normally or the ultrasonic sensor is blocked, the ⚠ warning light may illuminate in the direction of the corresponding sensor.
- You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front, side (if equipped), and rear ultrasonic sensors.

### **Limitations of Parking Distance Warning**

- Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:
  - Any sensor is covered or blocked with snow, water, or dirt. Parking Distance Warning operates normally again when unblocked or uncovered.
  - The weather is very hot or cold.
  - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled.
  - The surface of the sensor has been damaged or scratched with a sharp object.
  - The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer.
  - Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle.
- Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
  - Heavy rain or water spray is present.
  - Water flows on the surface of the sensor.
  - The sensor is covered with snow or ice.
  - An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle.
  - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads, or bushes.
  - Your vehicle's bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified.
  - Equipment, license plate, or accessories are attached near the ultrasonic sensors.
- The following objects may not be detected:
  - Slim objects such as ropes, chains, or small poles.
  - Narrow objects such as corners of a square column.

- Objects that tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material, or snow.
- Objects less than 40 in. (100 cm) high and less than 6 in. (14 cm) wide.
- Pedestrians, animals, or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors.
- An object in the side area between the front side ultrasonic sensor and the rear side ultrasonic sensor or an object approaching the side area.

### WARNING

- The operation of Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function only.
- Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Parking Distance Warning.
- Always turn your head and look for potential hazards around your vehicle when parking.
- To prevent serious injury or death, pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by ultrasonic sensors, due to the object's distance, size, or material.

## Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)

 If equipped

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect pedestrians or objects when backing up. The function may warn you or assist you with braking to help reduce the possibility of a collision.

## Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.

### *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

### **Parking Safety**

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- If **Backward safety** is selected, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you and assists braking when a collision with a pedestrian or object is imminent from behind.

### *i* Information

When the vehicle is restarted, **Rear safety** is set as default.

## Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### *Turning Reverse Parking Collision Avoidance Assist On/Off*



Press and hold the Parking Safety (P with a triangle) button more than 2 seconds, to turn the Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist on or off.

### **Operating conditions**

If Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects a collision risk with a pedestrian or object, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you with an audible warning and warning message on the instrument cluster. When Surround View Monitor is operating, a warning may appear on the infotainment system screen.

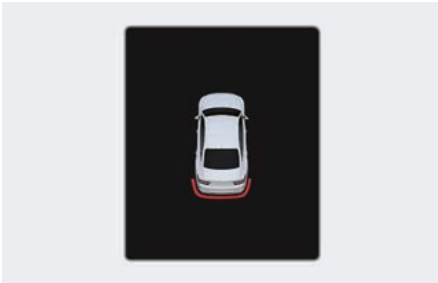
If Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking.

If **Backward safety** is selected from the settings menu, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is in ready status when all of the following conditions are met:

- The boot and door are closed.
- The EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is released.

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- Vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h) (for detecting pedestrians).
- Vehicle speed is below 2 mph (4 km/h) (for detecting objects).
- Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions.

When Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist activates, a line appears behind the vehicle image in the instrument cluster.



### *i* Information

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only once after shifting the gear to R (Reverse). To reactivate Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist, shift the gear from another gear to R (Reverse).

### *Off conditions*

If Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking. Immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings because the brake assist ends within 5 minutes.

Braking control ends when:

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or D (Drive).

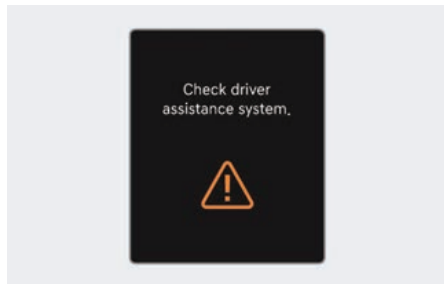
- You depress the brake pedal with sufficient force.

### *i* Information

When Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is activated whilst reversing, braking control is released after 5 minutes and the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is applied.

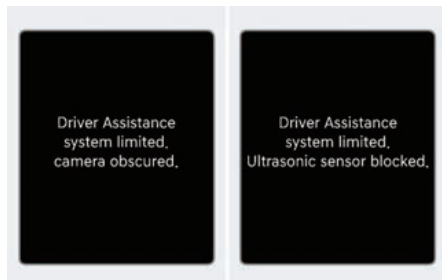
## Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction*



When Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or other related functions does not work properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist turns off automatically. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" or "**Driver assistance system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster if:

- The wide-rear view camera or ultrasonic sensor(s) is covered or blocked with foreign material, such as snow or rain, etc.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly. Check the wide-rear view camera and ultrasonic sensor(s) are clean.

### *i* Information



- When the Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Warning is operating, if the function is not working normally or the ultrasonic sensor is blocked, the ⚠ warning light may

illuminate in the direction of the corresponding sensor.

- You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

## Limitations of Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking or warn you even if there are pedestrians or objects if:

- Problems with vehicle
  - Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed on the rear of your vehicle.
  - Your vehicle has been damaged due to an accident or other causes.
  - Bumper height or rear ultrasonic sensor installation locations have been modified.
  - Wide-rear view camera or rear ultrasonic sensor(s) is damaged.
  - Wide-rear view camera or rear ultrasonic sensor(s) is covered or blocked with snow, water, or dirt, etc.
  - Wide-rear view camera is obscured by a light source or by inclement weather, such as heavy rain, thick fog, snow, etc.
- Problems with the surroundings
  - The surrounding is very bright or dark.
  - The weather is very hot or cold.
  - The wind is either greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) or blowing perpendicular to the rear bumper.
  - Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle.
  - An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle.
  - The road is slippery or inclined.
- Problems with pedestrian or object

- The pedestrian is in a state that is difficult to detect.
- There is an elevation difference between your vehicle and the pedestrian.
- The pedestrian blends into the background when seen from the front view camera.
- The pedestrian is near the rear edge of the vehicle.
- The pedestrian is not standing upright.
- The pedestrian is very short or tall.
- The pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves well.
- Size, thickness, height, or shape of the object does not reflect ultrasonic waves well (for example, pole, bush, kerbs, carts, edge of a wall, etc.).
- The pedestrian or object is moving.
- The pedestrian or object is very close to the rear of your vehicle.
- There is a wall behind the pedestrian or object.
- The object is not located at the rear centre of your vehicle.
- The object is not parallel to the rear bumper.
- The sensors cannot detect pedestrians or objects.
- Problems with driving condition
  - You drive the vehicle immediately after shifting to R (Reverse).
  - You accelerate your vehicle or drive in circles.
  - You drive your vehicle immediately after starting the vehicle.

### **WARNING**

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always pay attention to road and traffic conditions whilst driving. Brake as needed to avoid collisions. Do not solely rely on Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist.
- Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no pedestrians or objects before driving.
- The performance of Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may differ under certain conditions. If your vehicle speed is greater than 2 mph (4 km/h), Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist provides collision avoidance assist only when pedestrians are detected.
- Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors due to the object's distance, size, or material.

### **CAUTION**

- Noise may be heard when sudden braking occurs to avoid a collision.
- When another system's warning message appears or an audible warning is heard, Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been damaged, replaced, or repaired.
- Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.

- Always turn off Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There is only a warning when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is controlling the brake force to the wheels.
- Check the brake fluid and brake pad condition periodically. Depending on the condition, brake operation performance may reduce.

### *i* Information

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can detect a pedestrian or an object when:

- A pedestrian is standing behind the vehicle.
- A large obstacle, such as a vehicle, is parked in the behind your vehicle.

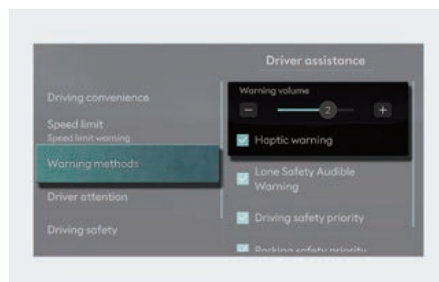
## Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)

 if equipped

Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect pedestrians or objects when driving at low speed. The function may warn you or assist you with braking to help reduce the possibility of a collision.

## Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.

## *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
- When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

## **Parking Safety**

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- If **Forward/Side safety** is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you and assists braking when a collision with a pedestrian or object is imminent from the front or side.
- If **Backward safety** is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you and assists braking when a collision with a pedestrian or object is imminent from behind.

## *i* Information

**Forward/Side safety** can be selected only when **Backward safety** is selected. When the vehicle is restarted and **Backward safety** is selected, and **Forward/Side safety** maintains the last setting.

## **Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation**

### *Turning Parking Collision Avoidance Assist On/Off*



Press and hold the Parking Safety (P with a triangle) button more than 2 seconds, to turn the Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist on or off.

### **Operating conditions**

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects a collision risk with a pedestrian or object, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you with an audible warning and warning message on the instrument cluster. When Surround View Monitor is operating, a warning may appear on the infotainment system screen.

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking.

If **Backward safety** is selected from the settings menu, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is in ready status when all of the following conditions are met:

### Rear safety

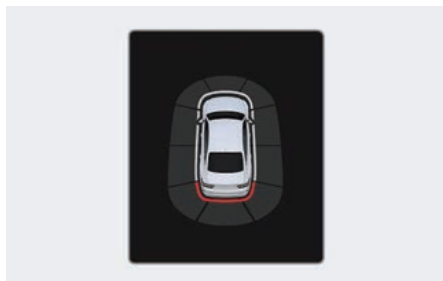
- The boot and door are closed.
- The EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is released.
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- Vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h) (for detecting pedestrians).
- Vehicle speed is below 2 mph (4 km/h) (for detecting objects).
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions.

### Front/Side safety

- The boot and door are closed.
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released.
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Vehicle speed is below 2 mph (4 km/h) (for detecting pedestrians and objects).
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the wide view cameras and the ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions.

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist activates, a line appears near the vehicle image in the instrument cluster.

- Rear Safety: Appears behind the vehicle image.
- Front/Side Safety: Appears in front or side of the vehicle image.



### *i* Information

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only once after shifting the gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive). To reactivate Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist, shift the gear from another gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

### Off conditions

#### Rear safety

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking. Immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings because the brake assist ends within 5 minutes.

Braking control ends when:

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or D (Drive).
- You depress the brake pedal with sufficient force.

### *i* Information

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is activated whilst reversing, braking control is released after 5 minutes and the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is applied.

### Front/Side safety

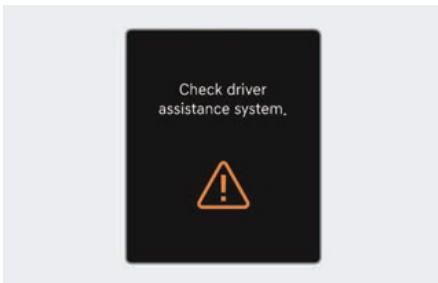
If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking. Immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings because the brake assist ends within 2 seconds when in D (Drive) or 5 minutes when in R (Reverse).

Braking control ends when:

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or R (Reverse).
- You depress the brake pedal with sufficient force.

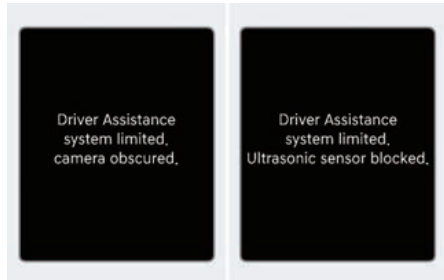
## Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction*



When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or other related functions does not work properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist turns off automatically. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled*




The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" or "**Driver assistance system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster if:

- The wide view camera(s) or ultrasonic sensor(s) is covered or blocked with foreign material, such as snow or rain, etc.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly. Check the wide view camera(s) and ultrasonic sensor(s) are clean.

## *i* Information



- When the Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Warning is operating, if the function is not working normally or the ultrasonic sensor is blocked, the  warning light may illuminate in the direction of the corresponding sensor.
- You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

### **Limitations of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist**

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking or warn you even if there are pedestrians or objects if:

- Problems with vehicle
  - Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed on your vehicle.
  - Your vehicle has been damaged due to an accident or other causes.
  - Bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation locations have been modified.
  - Wide view camera(s) or ultrasonic sensor(s) is damaged.
  - Wide view camera(s) or the ultrasonic sensor(s) is covered or blocked with snow, water, or dirt, etc.
  - Wide view camera(s) is obscured by a light source or by inclement weather, such as heavy rain, thick fog, snow, etc.
- Problems with the surroundings
  - The surrounding is very bright or dark.
  - The weather is very hot or cold.
  - The wind is either greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) or blowing perpendicular to the rear bumper.
  - Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle.
  - An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle.
  - The road is slippery or inclined.
- Problems with pedestrian or object
  - The pedestrian is in a state that is difficult to detect.
  - There is an elevation difference between your vehicle and the pedestrian.
  - The pedestrian blends into the background when seen from the front view camera.
  - The pedestrian is near the front or rear edge of the vehicle.
  - The pedestrian is not standing upright.
  - The pedestrian is very short or tall.
  - The pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves well.
  - Size, thickness, height, or shape of the object does not reflect ultrasonic waves well (for example, pole, bush, kerbs, carts, edge of a wall, etc.).
  - The pedestrian or object is moving.
  - The pedestrian or object is very close to your vehicle.
  - There is a wall behind the pedestrian or object.
  - The object is not located at the front or rear centre of your vehicle.
  - The object is not parallel to the front or rear bumper.

- The sensors cannot detect pedestrians or objects.
- Problems with driving condition
  - You drive the vehicle immediately after shifting to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
  - You accelerate your vehicle or drive in circles.
  - You drive your vehicle immediately after starting the vehicle.

### **WARNING**

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always pay attention to road and traffic conditions whilst driving. Brake as needed to avoid collisions. Do not solely rely on Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist.
- Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no pedestrians or objects before driving.
- The performance of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may differ under certain conditions. If your vehicle speed is greater than 2 mph (4 km/h), Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist provides collision avoidance assist only when pedestrians are detected.
- Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors due to the object's distance, size, or material.

### **CAUTION**

- Noise may be heard when sudden braking occurs to avoid a collision.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist if

the surrounding environment is too noisy.

- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been damaged, replaced, or repaired.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Always turn off Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There is only a warning when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is controlling the brake force to the wheels.
- Check the brake fluid and brake pad condition periodically. Depending on the condition, brake operation performance may reduce.

---

### **Information**

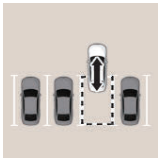
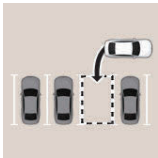

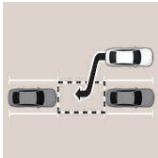
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can detect a pedestrian or an object when:

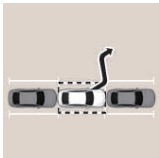
- A pedestrian is standing near the vehicle.
  - A large obstacle, such as a vehicle, is parked in the near your vehicle.
-

## Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)

 if equipped

Remote Smart Parking Assist uses vehicle sensors to help you park and exit parking spaces remotely from outside the vehicle by controlling the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshifts.

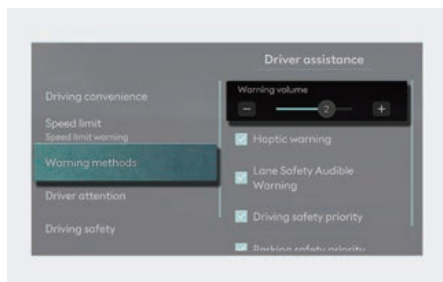
Function	Description
Remote Operation	Remotely moving forward or backward 
	Perpendicular reverse parking 
Smart Parking or Remote Parking	Diagonal reverse parking 
	Parallel reverse parking 

Function	Description
Smart Exit	Parallel forward exit 

- Remote Parking and Remote Operation function may be operated from outside the vehicle using the smart key.
- Smart Parking and Remote Parking function may be operated from inside the vehicle.
- Smart Parking and Remote Parking function helps you with perpendicular reverse parking, diagonal reverse parking, and parallel reverse parking.
- Smart Exit function helps you with parallel forward exit.
- When Remote Smart Parking Assist operates, Parking Distance Warning and Surround View Monitor also operates. For more information, refer to the "Parking Distance Warning (PDW)" and "Surround View Monitor (SVM)" sections in this chapter.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist helps parking by detecting the parking lines with the wide view camera.

## Remote Smart Parking Assist settings

### Warning methods



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:



- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.





### *i* Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
  - The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
-

## Remote Smart Parking Assist operation

### Remote Smart Parking Assist button

Parking/View button	Smart key
	

Location	Name	Symbol	Description
Inside vehicle	Parking/View button		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold the Parking/View button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist. Also, Forward/Reverse Parking Distance warning automatically turns on. However, functions may differ depending on the situations. Refer to each function's description for more details in the following pages.</li> <li>Press and hold the Parking/View button whilst Smart Parking or Smart Exit function is on to operate the function.</li> </ul>
	Remote Start button		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Remote Start button after the door is locked with the vehicle off to start the vehicle remotely.</li> <li>Press the Remote Start button whilst Remote Parking or Remote Operation function is operating to end function operation.</li> </ul>
Smart key	Forward button		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using Remote Parking function, regardless of which direction the button is pressed, parking is supported whilst the button is pressed.</li> </ul>
	Backward button		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using the Remote Operation function, the vehicle moves in the direction of the button whilst the button is pressed.</li> </ul>

## Remote Operation

### Operating order

#### 1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and backward

There are two ways to operate the Remote Operation function.

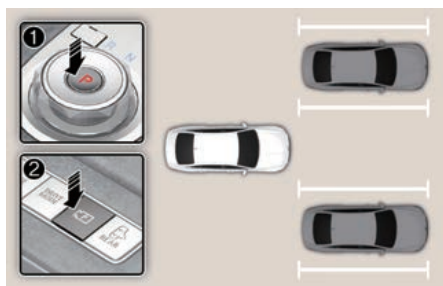
Method (1) Using the function with vehicle off.

1. Within a certain range from the vehicle press the door lock (🔒) button on the smart key and lock all doors.



2. Press and hold the Remote Start (🔑) button within 4 seconds until the vehicle starts.

For more information on remotely starting the vehicle, refer to the "Remote start" section in chapter 6.



Method (2) Using the function with vehicle on.

1. Park the vehicle in front of the space where you want to use the Remote Operation function, and shift the gear to P (Park) (1).

2. Press and hold the Parking/View button (2) to turn on Smart Parking Assist.

- The "Under REMOTE Control" message appears on the infotainment system screen.

3. Get out of the vehicle with the smart key and close all doors and boot.

### i Information

- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use the Remote Operation function.
- Method (2) can be used after the vehicle has been driven above 3 mph (5 km/h).
- If the function is turned on again after perpendicular parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Remote Operation function can be used with Method (2).
- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function. If a smart key is inside the vehicle, the Remote Operation function does not work.

#### 2. Remotely moving forward and backward



[A] Forward  
[B] Backward

- Press and hold the Forward (👉) or Backward (👈) button on the smart key.
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls the steering

wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift. Your vehicle moves in the direction of the button pressed.

- If you do not hold down the Forward (⬆) or Backward (⬇) button, your vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the button is pressed and held again.
- When your vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward (⬆) or Backward (⬇) button.
- Get in your vehicle with the smart key or press the Remote Start (⏻) button on the smart key from outside the vehicle.
  - A message appears informing you that remotely moving your vehicle forward or backward is complete on the infotainment system screen. The gear is shifted to P (Park) and the EPB is applied.
  - The vehicle remains on if you are in the vehicle. The vehicle turns off if you press the Remote Start (⏻) button.

### **i** Information

- Check that all smart keys are outside your vehicle before using the Remote Operation function.
- Remote Operation function operates only when the smart key is within 13 ft. (4 m) from your vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Forward or Backward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance from the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detection range of the smart key may differ depending on radio waves in the area such as transmission towers or broadcast stations.
- When remotely moving forward using Method (1), it is intended to be a departure scenario, and your vehicle moves 13 ft. (4 m) to check for pedestrians, animals, or objects around

your vehicle. Your vehicle makes small steering changes when driving forward.

- When remotely moving forward using Method (2), it is recognised as a parking situation, and immediately controls the steering wheel depending on the condition ahead to assist with entering the parking space and aligning your vehicle. The function performance may be reduced depending on the pedestrians, animals, and objects near your vehicle or other factors.
- When moving remotely backward, both Method (1) and (2) align the steering wheel and then only move your vehicle in a straight path.

### **! WARNING**

- When using Remote Operation function, make sure all passengers have exited your vehicle and are standing in a safe location away from your vehicle.
- If your vehicle's battery is discharged or Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunctions when parked in a narrow parking space, the Remote Operation function does not operate. Always park your vehicle in a space wide enough for you to get in or out of your vehicle.
- Depending on the parking space or the movement of other vehicle after you have parked, you may not be able to exit from the space using the Remote Operation function.
- Before leaving your vehicle, close the windows. Make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.

Remote Operation function operation status

Operation status	Smart key LED
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off

**i** Information

If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (about 13 ft. (4 m)), the smart key LED does not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

How to turn off Remote Operation function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View (P/V) button whilst the infotainment system guides you using method 2.
- Shift the gear except to P (Park) whilst the infotainment system guides you using method 2.
- Press the Parking Safety (P/▲) button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system.
- Press the Remote Start (R/⏻) button on the smart key whilst the vehicle is being controlled by Remote Operation function. Remote Operation function and the vehicle turn off.
- Get on your vehicle with the smart key. Remote Operation function turns off and the vehicle remains on.

The function pauses in the following conditions when:

- There is a pedestrian, animal, or object detected in the direction your vehicle is moving.
- The door or boot is open.
- The Forward (F) or Backward (B) button is not continuously pressed.
- Multiple buttons are pressed simultaneously on a smart key.
- The smart key is not operated within 13 ft. (4 m) from your vehicle.
- A button on another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is backing whilst remotely controlled.
- Your vehicle moves about 22 ft. (7 m) whilst the smart key button is pressed with Remote Operation function (maximum travel distance per button press).

The function cancels in the following conditions when:

- The steering wheel is turned.
- The gear is shifted whilst your vehicle is moving.
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst the vehicle is moving.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed when all the doors are closed.
- The smart key is outside your vehicle when the brake pedal is depressed whilst the driver's door is open.
- Rapid acceleration occurs.
- Vehicle skid occurs.
- An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.

- About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Remote Operation function was initiated.
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute.
- The total travel distance of your vehicle has exceeded about 45 ft. (14 m) after Remote Operation function is operated.
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
- There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low.
- ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.
- Theft Alarm System sounds.
- When Remote Operation function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).
- The charging door is open.

### **Smart Parking, Remote Parking**

#### **Operating order**

Parking function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready for parking
2. Searching for parking space
3. Select parking type and operating mode
4. Smart Parking
5. Remote Parking
  - Parking function includes Smart Parking and Remote Parking.

#### **1. Getting ready for parking**

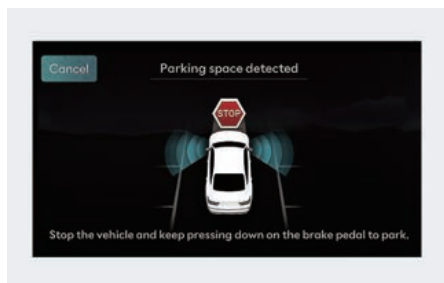


- With the vehicle on, depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to D (Drive) or N (Neutral).
- Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.

#### **i Information**

- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Parking function.
- If you drive above 3 mph (5 km/h) with the vehicle on, you may use the Parking function with the gear shifted to N (Neutral).

## 2. Searching for parking space

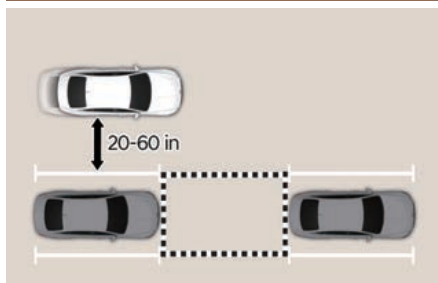


- Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of about 40 in. (100 cm) from the parked vehicles.
  - When searching for a parking space is complete, a message appears informing you that searching for a parking space is complete.
  - Select Parking Type appears on the infotainment system screen and the selected parking space appears on Top View screen of Surround View Monitor.

### *i* Information

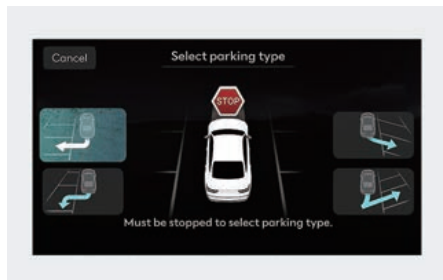
- Remote Smart Parking Assist searches for parking lines or parking spaces that are next to parked vehicles, or parking spaces with parked vehicles in front or rear.
- Whilst searching for a parking space, when the vehicle speed is above 12 mph (20 km/h), a message appears on the infotainment system screen informing you to slow down. When vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h), Parking function turns off.
- Searching for a parking space is completed when there is enough space to move the vehicle in addition to the parking space.
- Even if you are informed that searching for a parking space is complete, Remote Smart Parking Assist may search for a parking space again depending on surroundings.

### *i* Information



- If the distance is below 20 in. (0.5 m) or over 60 in. (1.5 m), Remote Smart Parking Assist may not search for a parking space.
- If you do not maintain a certain distance from the parked vehicle, the performance to search for a parking space may reduce.
- Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.
- If the parking space is on an incline or if your vehicle is not straight when searching for a parking space, the parking type displayed may be different from the actual parking type which should be selected. If this occurs, do not select the parking type, and search for another parking space.

### 3. Select parking type and operating mode



(1) Parking type - Perpendicular reverse (Left/Right), Parallel reverse (Left/Right), Diagonal reverse (Left/Right)

With the vehicle stopped by depressing the brake pedal, select parking type.

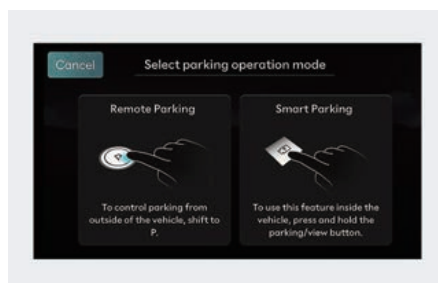
#### *i* Information

- If you continue to drive without stopping after the parking type selection screen appears, Remote Smart Parking Assist returns to the previous stage and searches for a parking space.
- If the Parking function is cancelled unintentionally by pressing the Parking/View (P) button before the parking type is selected, you can return to the parking type selection stage by pressing and holding the button again whilst the vehicle is stopped.

#### CAUTION

Before selecting the Parking type, you should check whether the parking space is suitable.

If the searched parking space is narrow or unsuitable for parking, do not select the Parking type and move the vehicle to search for another parking space.



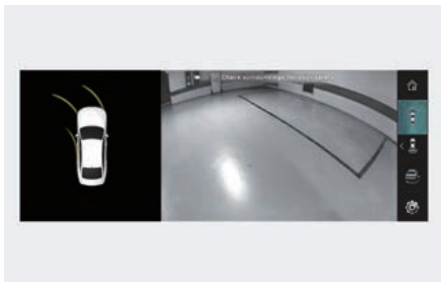
(2) Operating mode - Remote Parking, Smart Parking

After selecting a parking type, the infotainment system screen guides you with Remote Parking function and Smart Parking function. Follow the instructions to operate Remote Smart Parking Assist.

#### *i* Information

- Operating instructions is displayed on the screen for each desired function you select.
- Do not take your foot off the brake pedal during the Parking function guide. When the vehicle moves, Remote Smart Parking Assist turns off.
- If Remote Smart Parking Assist cannot activate Remote Parking function, only the Smart Parking guide is displayed on the infotainment system screen.

## 4. Smart Parking

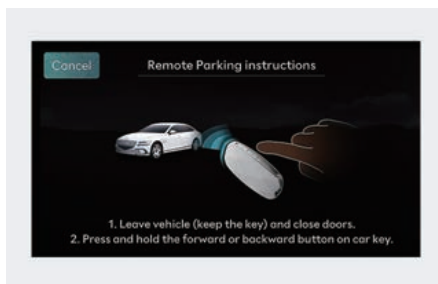


- Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift.
  - Whilst Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.
  - When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message appears informing you that parking your vehicle is complete on the infotainment system screen.

## i Information

- Smart Parking function does not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- The parking location indicator is displayed on the Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by the Smart Parking function.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by depressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Parking function is operating. The vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

## 5. Remote Parking



- Shift the gear to P (Park), get out of your vehicle with the smart key and close all doors.
- Press and hold the Forward (F) or Backward (B) button on the smart key.
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift. Your vehicle moves in the direction of the button pressed.

- If you do not hold down the Forward (⏮) or Backward (⏭) button, your vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the button is pressed and held again.
- When your vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward (⏮) or Backward (⏭) button.
  - A message appears informing you that parking your vehicle is complete on the infotainment system screen. The gear is shifted to P (Park) and the EPB is applied.

### *i* Information

- Check that all smart keys are outside your vehicle before using the Remote Parking function.
- Remote Parking function only operates when the smart key is within 13 ft. (4 m) from your vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Remote Forward or Backward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detection range of the smart key may differ depending on radio waves in the area such as transmission towers or broadcast stations.
- The parking location indicator is displayed on the Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by the Remote Parking function.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

### WARNING

- When using Remote Parking function, make sure all passengers have exited your vehicle and are standing in a safe location away from your vehicle.
- Before leaving your vehicle, close the windows. Make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.

**Parking function operation status**

- Smart Parking function

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.




- Remote Parking function

Operation status	Smart key LED	Turn signal
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	-
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	-
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	-




***i* Information**

If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (about 13 ft. (4m)), the smart key LED does not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

### ***How to turn off Parking function whilst operating***

- Press the Parking/View () button in the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
  - Select operating mode
- Press the Parking Safety () button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system screen to turn off Parking function.
- Whilst Smart Parking function is operating:
  - If the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Parking function turns off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not applied.
- Whilst Remote Parking function is operating:
  - Press the Remote Start () button on the smart key. Parking function turns off.
  - Get on the vehicle with the smart key. Parking function turns off. At this time, the vehicle remains on.

### ***The function pauses in the following conditions when:***

- Smart Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction your vehicle is moving.
  - The door or boot is open.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is backing whilst remotely controlled.
  - The Parking/View () button is not continuously pressed.
  - The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.
- Remote Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction your vehicle is moving.
  - The door or boot is open.
  - The Forward () or Backward () button is not continuously pressed.
  - Multiple buttons are pressed simultaneously on a smart key.
  - The smart key is not operated within 13 ft. (4 m) from your vehicle.
  - A button on another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key.
  - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is backing whilst remotely controlled.

When Parking function is paused, the vehicle will automatically stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

***The function cancels in the following conditions when:***

- Smart Parking

- The steering wheel is turned.
- The gear is shifted whilst your vehicle is moving.
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst your vehicle is moving.
- The bonnet is open.
- The driver's door is open with the seat belt unfastened.
- Rapid acceleration occurs.
- Vehicle skid occurs.
- An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.
- There are pedestrians, animals, or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time.
- About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Smart Parking function was initiated.
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute.
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
- ABS, TCS, or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.
- The charging door is open.

When Smart Parking function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

- Remote Parking

- The steering wheel is turned.
- The gear is shifted.
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst your vehicle is moving.
- The bonnet is open.

- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed when all the doors are closed.
- The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is depressed whilst the driver's door is open.
- Rapid acceleration occurs.
- Vehicle skid occurs.
- An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.
- There are pedestrians, animals, or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time.
- About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Remote Parking function was initiated.
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute.
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
- There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low.
- ABS, TCS, or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.
- Theft Alarm System sounds.
- The charging door is open.

When Remote Parking function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

## Smart Exit

### Operating order

Smart Exit function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready for exit
2. Checking space
3. Select exit direction
4. Smart Exit

#### 1. Getting ready for exit

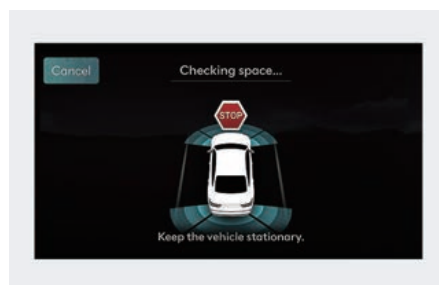
1. With the vehicle on, depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park) or N (Neutral).
2. Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.



### *i* Information

- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Smart Exit function.
- Drive below 3 mph (5 km/h) with the vehicle on and shift the gear to N (Neutral), Smart Exit function can be used.
- If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Smart Exit function can be used.

## 2. Checking space



1. When the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, the vehicle sensors detect the distance from nearby objects and check for space to exit.
  - When checking for space is complete, a message appears informing you that searching for a parking space is complete.

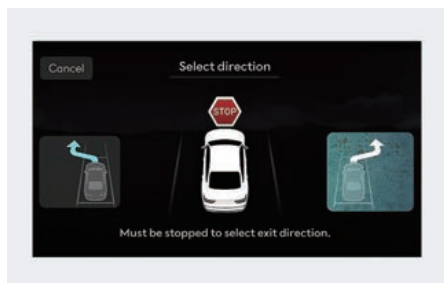
### **! WARNING**

- Whilst checking for space, if there is a collision risk with pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction of vehicle exit, for your safety, Smart Exit function can be turned off.
- Even if check for space is completed, objects in the blind spot area cannot be detected by the sensors. The driver must directly check the blind spot area and continue using the function.

### *i* Information

Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Smart Exit function may not search for a exit space even if there is a exit space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for exiting.

### 3. Select exit direction

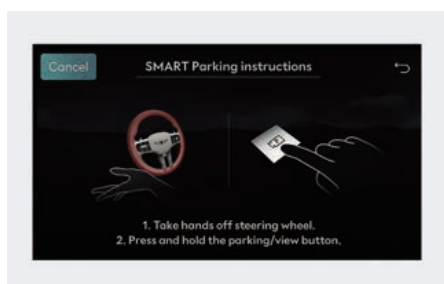



1. With the vehicle stopped by depressing the brake pedal, the infotainment system screen displays the possible directions for parallel exit.
2. Touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired exit direction.

#### CAUTION

- Before selecting the Exit Direction, the driver should check whether the space for exit is suitable.
- If the searched exit space by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable (surrounding vehicles are parked vertically, etc.), do not use the Smart Exit function.

### 4. Smart Exit



1. Press the Parking/View () button when the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls

the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift.

- Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.
- When the vehicle reaches the target exit location, a message appears informing you that parking your vehicle is complete on the infotainment system screen.

#### Information

- Smart Exit function does not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by depressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Exit function is operating. The vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- If exit is completed whilst depressing the brake pedal, Smart Exit function is completed with the gear in D (Drive).
- If exit is completed whilst depressing the accelerator pedal, you must take your foot off the accelerator pedal once for the accelerator pedal to operate.
- If there is no vehicle operation such as depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal within 4 seconds after exit is complete, the vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park) and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).
- After Exit function is complete, always check the surroundings before driving.

### Smart Exit operation status

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the exit direction blinks until the exit is complete or Smart Exit is cancelled.

#### How to turn off Smart function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View (P/V) button in the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Press the Parking Safety (P/A) button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system screen to turn off Exit function.
- Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Exiting function turns off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not applied.

#### The function pauses in the following conditions when:

- There is a pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction your vehicle is moving.
- The door or boot is open.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is backing whilst remotely controlled.
- The Parking/View (P/V) button is not continuously pressed.
- The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.

When Exit function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the

function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

#### The function cancels in the following conditions when:

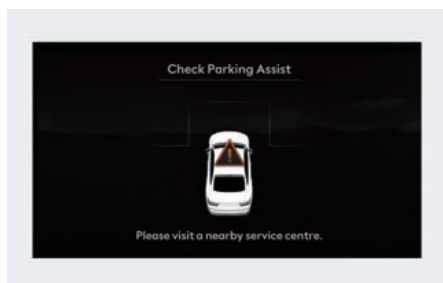
- Smart Exit
  - The steering wheel is turned.
  - The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving.
  - EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst your vehicle is moving.
  - The bonnet is open.
  - The driver's door is open with the seat belt unfastened.
  - Rapid acceleration occurs.
  - Vehicle skid occurs.
  - An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.
  - There are pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time.
  - About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Smart Exit function was initiated.
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
  - The function was paused for more than 1 minute.
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
  - ABS, TCS, or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.
  - The charging door is open.

When Smart Exit function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

## Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations

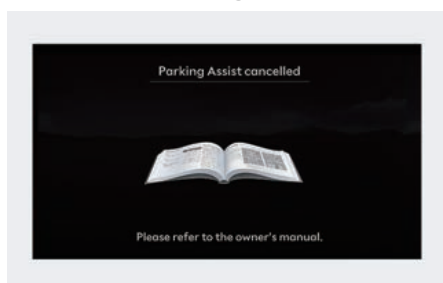
### Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction

#### Remote Smart Parking Assist check



When Remote Smart Parking Assist is not working properly, the "**Check Parking Assist**" warning message may appear on the infotainment system screen. If the message appears, stop using Remote Smart Parking Assist, and we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

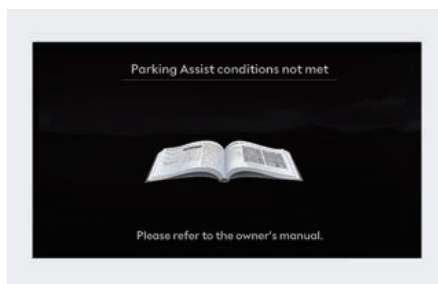
#### Remote Smart Parking Assist cancelled



When Remote Parking Assist is operating, the function can be cancelled, and the "**Parking Assist cancelled**" warning message may appear on the infotainment system screen. Other messages may appear depending on the given situation. Follow the instructions provided whilst parking your vehicle with Remote Parking

Assist. Always look around and pay attention when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.

#### Remote Smart Parking Assist conditions not met



The "**Parking Assist conditions not met**" warning message may appear on the infotainment system screen if:

- Parking/View (P) button has been pressed and held whilst ready to operate. After a whilst, press and hold the Parking/View (P) button again to see if Remote Smart Parking Assist operates.
- The smart key's battery is low. Check the battery and replace it if needed.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "Driver Assistance System sensors" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the wide-front/side/rear view cameras and front/side/rear ultrasonic sensors.

#### WARNING

Do not manually adjust the outside rearview mirror or use the Remote Smart Parking Assist after a hard impact on the outside rearview mirror.

### ***Limitations of Remote Smart Parking Assist***

In the following circumstances, the use of Remote Smart Parking Assist may be limited, there may be a risk of collision, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may turn off. You may have to park your vehicle or to drive away from the parked location without using this function.

- An object is attached to the steering wheel.
- Your vehicle has snow chains, spare tyre, or different size wheels installed.
- Tyre pressure is lower or higher than the standard tyre pressure.
- Your vehicle is loaded with cargo longer or wider than your vehicle or a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is connected to your vehicle.
- There is an issue with the wheel alignment.
- Your vehicle is leaning severely to one side.
- Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer towbar.
- The license plate is installed in a location different from the intended location.
- There is a person, animal, or object above or below the ultrasonic sensor when Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated.
- The parking space is narrow, curved or angled.
- There is an obstacle such as person, animal, or object (trash can, bicycle, motorcycle, shopping cart, narrow pillar, etc.) detected near the parking space.
- There is a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher detected near the parking space.
- The road surface is bumpy (kerbstone, speed bump, etc.) or slippery.
- The parking space is near a vehicle with higher ground clearance or a larger vehicle such as truck.
- The parking space is inclined.
- There is a heavy wind.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating on uneven roads, gravel roads, bushes, etc.
- The weather is very hot or cold.
- The ultrasonic sensor is covered or blocked with snow, water, or dirt.
- A wireless transmission device operates near the ultrasonic sensors.
- An ultrasonic sensor with a similar frequency is near your vehicle.
- A sensor has been damaged or scratched by a sharp object.
- When the ultrasonic sensor cannot detect the following objects:
  - Slim objects such as ropes, chains, or small poles.
  - Narrow objects such as corners of a square column.
  - Objects less than 40 in. (100 cm) in height and narrower than 6 in. (14 cm) in diameter.
  - Objects that tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material, or snow.
  - Pedestrians, animals, or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors.
- The cameras may not properly recognise or may not recognise the parking line and objects when:
  - There are small objects (kerb, etc.), sharp objects, or thin objects (rope, etc.) around.
  - People, animals or objects are too close or too far from the vehicle.
  - Objects are on a higher position, such as pickup trucks.
  - The camera is covered or blocked by dirt or moisture.

- The camera is exposed to bright light.
- The surrounding is too dark.
- Light is reflected from the surface.

Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally under the following circumstances:

- Parking on inclines



Park or exit your vehicle manually on inclines.

- Parking in snow



Snow may interfere with sensor operation, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel if the road is slippery where you are parking.

- Parking on uneven road



Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel when the vehicle slips, or the vehicle cannot move due to road conditions such as pebbles or fragmented stones.

- Parking behind a truck



Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist around vehicles with higher ground clearance, such as a bus, truck, etc. It may lead to an accident.

- Parking near a pillar



Remote Smart Parking Assist performance may be reduced or collided with an obstacle may occur when there is a narrow object, circular pillar, square pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as a fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space. Park or exit your vehicle manually.

- Parking next to a misaligned vehicle



If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used, when parking next to a misaligned vehicle, your vehicle may cross the parking marking on the opposite side of the parked vehicle.

- Parking in angled spaces



Remote Operation may not operate properly in a diagonal parking space.

- Leaving a parking space near a wall or parking in a narrow space



- Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally when leaving a parking space that is narrow and near a wall. Always check for pedestrians, animals, objects whilst leaving.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist does not search for parking spaces at areas with narrow parking spaces that are narrower than the minimum space required for parking.

- Parking in abnormal spaces



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work normally when the parking lines are not parallel. Do not park even though the parking space is recognised by the sensor.

- Parking on inclined parking space



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work normally on a inclined or curved road surface. Do not park even though the parking space is recognised by the sensor.

### **WARNING**

You are responsible for parking and exiting safely when using Remote Smart Parking Assist. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals, or objects around the vehicle when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- When using Remote Smart Parking Assist, stay out of the path of your vehicle.
- A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object are in the blind spot area of the sensors or are very close to the sensors.
- A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object suddenly enters the path of your vehicle whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating.
- Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist under the influence of alcohol.
- Do not let children or other people use the smart key.
- Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist continuously for a long time. It may adversely affect Remote Smart Parking Assist performance.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally if your vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment such as when your vehicle tilts to one side. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded Products.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist may suddenly brake to help avoid a collision.
- Only use Remote Smart Parking Assist in parking spaces large enough for your vehicle.

## *i* Information

- If the 3rd stage warning (continuous beep) of Forward/Backward Parking Distance Warning sounds whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating, it means the obstacle detected is close to your vehicle and Remote Smart Parking Assist temporarily stops operating.
- The vehicle may move with the stop lights on when the brakes are applied by Remote Smart Parking Assist.
- The Remote Smart Parking Assist's performance may temporarily reduce or may turn off when the vehicle is turned on after being parked in cold weather for a long time.

## Declaration of conformity

### Front radar

 if equipped

The radio frequency components (Front Radar) complies:

- For Europe and CE certified countries



Model : LRR-25

Hereby LRR-25 has been so constructed that it can be operated in at least one Member State without infringing applicable requirements of use of radio spectrum. (RED article 10.2)

Hereby, HL Klemove Corp declares that the radio equipment type LRR-25 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following as next page. (Case 1 : Include DoC in manual)


Case 2 : <https://hlklemove.com/solutions.html>

- For United Kingdom



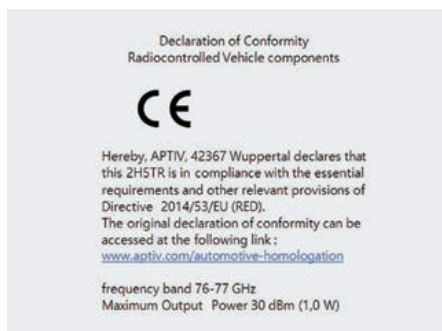
<https://hlklemove.com/solutions.html>

## Front corner radar/Rear corner radar

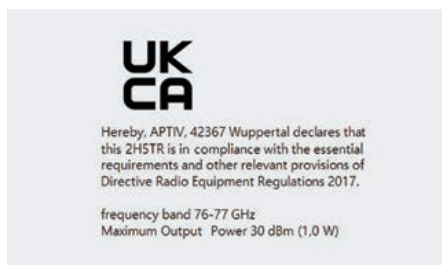
 if equipped

The radio frequency components (Front corner radar/Rear corner radar) complies:

- For Europe and CE certified countries



- For United Kingdom



## 8. Emergency situations

Hazard warning flasher .....	8-2
In case of an emergency whilst driving .....	8-2
If the vehicle stalls whilst driving.....	8-2
If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing .....	8-2
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving.....	8-3
If the vehicle does not start .....	8-3
Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge.....	8-3
Jump starting (12 V Battery) .....	8-4
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .....	8-7
Check tyre pressure.....	8-7
Tyre pressure monitoring system .....	8-8
Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale .....	8-9
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator .....	8-10
Changing a tyre with TPMS.....	8-10
If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit).....	8-12
Introduction.....	8-12
Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit.....	8-13
Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit.....	8-14
Using the Tyre Mobility Kit .....	8-15
How to adjust tyre pressure .....	8-17
Towing.....	8-18
Towing service .....	8-18
Removable towing hook.....	8-19
Emergency commodity.....	8-20
Fire extinguisher .....	8-20
First aid kit .....	8-20
Triangle reflector.....	8-20
Tyre pressure gauge .....	8-20
Pan-European eCall system (For Europe).....	8-22
Information on data processing (For Europe).....	8-24
Pan-European eCall System (For Europe).....	8-26

## Hazard warning flasher



The hazard warning flasher warns other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever making emergency repairs or when stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn on or off the hazard warning flasher, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Start/Stop button in any position. The hazard warning flasher button is located in the centre fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates regardless of whether your vehicle is DRIVE READY (READY indicator ON) or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

## In case of an emergency whilst driving

### If the vehicle stalls whilst driving

- Reduce the vehicle speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the vehicle again. If your vehicle does not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or seek other qualified assistance.

### If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or intersection, if safe to do so, shift the gear to N (Neutral) and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

## If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road because this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on a firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, shift the gear to P (Park), apply the regenerative brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Make sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When you have a flat tyre, refer to the "12" section in this chapter.

## If the vehicle does not start

### Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge

- Be sure the gear is in P (Park). The vehicle starts only when the gear is in P (Park).
- Check the 12 V battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the 12 V battery is drained.

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it.

This could cause damage to your vehicle.

## Jump starting (12 V Battery)

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, have a service technician or towing service do it for you.

### **WARNING**

To prevent serious injury or death to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:

Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen gas is always present in battery cells. It is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulfuric acid which that is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
- Never attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage.

Never touch these components with the **READY** indicator ON or when the Start/Stop button is in the **DRIVE READY** position.

- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the READY indicator ON or when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.
- Do not allow the positive (+) and negative (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.
- The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.
- Do not directly connect the negative (-) to the jump cable. Connect the negative (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle.  
The direct negative (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.
- Be sure to use only 12 V battery to jump start. Using batteries with other voltages to jump start can damage the battery or even provoke an explosion.

### WARNING

- Keep sparks away from the battery as the explosive gas is generated by the sparks whilst the battery is running.
- When connecting the supplementary battery and the discharged battery with a jump cable because the jump start does not operate with jump start terminal in the motor compartment, do not directly connect the negative (-) to the jump cable.  
Connect the negative (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct negative (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.
- The battery contains dilute sulfuric acid, which is highly corrosive, so be careful not to let the battery liquid get on your body, clothes, or car body. If dilute sulfuric acid gets on your body or eyes, immediately rinse the area with

clean water for about 15 minutes and then consult a doctor.

### Information

Your vehicle has a battery in the luggage compartment, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the motor compartment.

If jump start does not operate with the jump start terminal in the motor compartment, use the battery terminal in the boot.

### *Jump starting procedure*

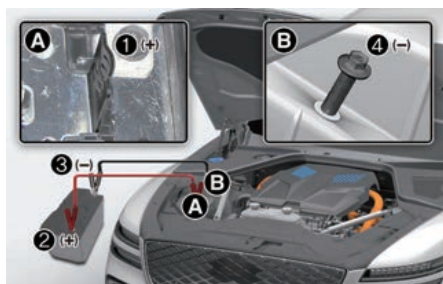
### Information

Your vehicle has a battery in the luggage compartment, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the motor compartment.

1. Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables can reach. Do not allow the vehicles to touch.
2. Avoid fans or any moving parts in the motor compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
3. Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and apply the parking brake. Turn both vehicles OFF.
4. Open the bonnet.
5. Open the service cover.
6. Remove the motor compartment fuse box cover.

### CAUTION

Before jump starting, make sure to correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals to avoid reverse polarity connections.



7. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
8. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
9. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
10. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

### **WARNING**

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) jumper terminal of the discharged battery. A spark could cause the battery to explode and lead to a personal injury or vehicle damage.

11. Start the assisting vehicle and let it run at about for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle.

12. Keep your vehicle operating for at least 30 minutes at idle or driving to assure make sure your battery receives enough charge to be able to start on its own after the vehicle is shut off. A completely discharged battery may require as long as 60 minutes runtime to fully recharge it. If the vehicle is run for less, the vehicle may not restart.

If your vehicle does not start after a few attempts, it probably requires service. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).

### **WARNING**

Whilst jump starting your vehicle, avoid the positive (+) and negative (-) cables to come in contact. A spark could cause personal injury.

## NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- Only use a 12 V power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.
- Always be sure that the battery cover and cable are tightened after finishing jump start your vehicle. Otherwise it may cause damage to the relevant parts, noise trouble, or entrance of foreign substances.

## i Information



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose used batteries in accordance with local law(s) or regulations.

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



- [A] Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale and Tyre Pressure Telltale (Shown on the Cluster display)  
[B] Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator

## Check tyre pressure



- You can check the tyre pressure in the Normal view on the cluster display. Refer to the "View modes" section in chapter 4.
- Tyre pressure is displayed after a few minutes of driving.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, "Drive to display" message appears.
- The displayed tyre pressure values may differ from those measured with a tyre pressure gauge.

- You can change the tyre pressure unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > General > Units > Tyre air pressure > psi/kPa/bar**

### Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Tyre pressure monitoring system

### WARNING

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

---

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes

the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

Under-inflation also reduces energy efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## NOTICE

If any of the below happens, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

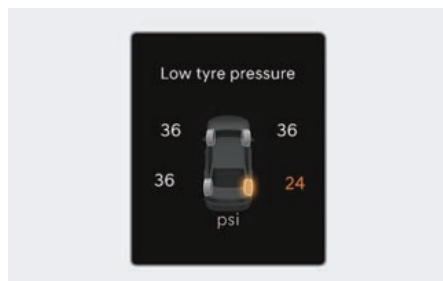
1. The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON position or when the vehicle is running.
2. The TPMS Malfunction Indicator remains illuminated after blinking for about 1 minute.
3. The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale remains illuminated.

## Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale

Low tyre pressure warning light



Low tyre pressure position telltale



When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and a warning message displayed on the cluster display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will indicate which tyre is significantly underinflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre.

The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated (when the vehicle is driven about 10 minutes at speed above 15.5 mph (25 km/h) until you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

## ⚠ WARNING

In winter or cold weather, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale may be illuminated if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

### **WARNING**

Low pressure damage

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

### **TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator**



The TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after it blinks for about one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

### **NOTICE**

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tyre.

### **NOTICE**

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.

Additionally, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate if snow chains are used or electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starters, navigation, etc. This may interfere with normal operation of the TPMS.

### **Changing a tyre with TPMS**

If you have a flat tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the flat tyre be repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible or replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre.

### **NOTICE**

Do not use a puncture-repair kit not approved by Genesis Branded Vehicle. Tyre sealant not approved by Genesis Branded Vehicle or the equivalent specified for your vehicle may damage the tyre pressure sensor.

The spare tyre (if equipped) does not come with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor. When the low pressure tyre or the flat tyre is replaced with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on. Also, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is driven at speed above 15.5 mph (25 km/h) for about 10 minutes.

Once the original wheel equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor is

reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale and TPMS Malfunction Indicator will go off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicators do not extinguish after a few minutes we recommend to consult an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem (except for the spare tyre). You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tyres serviced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

You may not be able to identify a tyre with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

### WARNING

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

### WARNING

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions and may void the warranty.

### WARNING

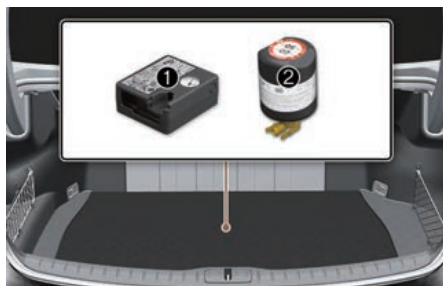
For Europe

- Do not modify the vehicle; it may interfere with the TPMS function.
- The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.

For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- If you use the wheels on the market, we recommend that you use a TPMS sensor approved by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent approved for your vehicle. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.

## If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit)



For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

- (1) Compressor
- (2) Sealant bottle

The Tyre Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tyre, we recommend the tyre be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent approved for your vehicle as soon as possible.

### CAUTION

When two or more tyres are flat, do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit because the sealant provided with the Tyre Mobility Kit must be used for only one flat tyre.

### WARNING

Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tyre walls. This can result in an accident due to tyre failure.

### WARNING

Have your tyre repaired as soon as possible. The tyre may lose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tyre Mobility Kit.

## Introduction

With the Tyre Mobility Kit you can stay mobile even after experiencing a tyre puncture.

The compressor and sealing compound system effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger vehicle tyre caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tyre.

After you ensure that the tyre is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tyre (distance up to 120 miles (200 km)) at a max. speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) in order to reach a service station or tyre dealer for the tyre replacement.

It is possible that some tyres, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tyre may adversely affect tyre performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving manoeuvres, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is being used.

The Tyre Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tyre repair method and is to be used for one tyre only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit".

### WARNING

Do not use the TMK if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the TMK.

## Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit

- Park your vehicle at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tyre Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on a fairly level ground, always apply your parking brake.
- Only use the Tyre Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger vehicle tyres. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the Tyre Mobility Kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- When the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may not be effective for tyre damage larger than about 0.16 inch (4 mm).

If the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tyre.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the vehicle is DRIVE READY (READY indicator ON).

Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.

- Never leave the Tyre Mobility Kit unattended whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 minutes at a time or it may overheat.

- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30 °C (-22 °F).
- In case of skin contact with the sealant, wash the area thoroughly with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of eye contact with the sealant, flush your eyes for at least 15 minutes. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of swallowing the sealant, rinse the mouth and drink plenty of water. Never give anything to an unconscious person and seek medical attention immediately.
- Long time exposure to the sealant may cause damage to bodily tissue such as kidney, etc.

## Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit



- (1) Speed restriction label
- (2) Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
- (3) Filling hose
- (4) Holder for the sealant bottle
- (5) Connectors and cable for power outlet direct connection
- (6) ON/OFF switch
- (7) Compressor
- (8) Pressure gauge for displaying the tyre inflation pressure
- (9) Button for reducing the tyre inflation pressure

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

### **WARNING**

Do not use the tyre sealant after the sealant has expired. (The expiration date is on the sealant container.) This can increase the risk of tyre failure.

### WARNING

- Keep out of reach of children.
- Avoid contact with eyes.
- Do not swallow.

## Using the Tyre Mobility Kit

### WARNING



Detach the speed restriction label from the sealant bottle, and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.

### CAUTION

If only the tyre pressure needs to be adjusted, refer to "How to adjust tyre pressure" in this chapter.

Before using the Tyre Mobility Kit, be fully aware of the explanation on the sealant.

1. Shake the sealant bottle (2).
2. Connect the filling hose (3) to the sealant bottle (2) in the direction of [A] and connect the sealant bottle to the compressor holder (4) in the direction of [B].



3. Ensure that the compressor is switched OFF.
4. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw the filling hose (3) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.



### NOTICE

Securely install the sealant filling hose to the valve. If not, sealant may flow backward, possibly clogging the filling hose.

5. Plug the compressor power cord (5) into the vehicle power outlet.



### NOTICE

Only use the front passenger side power outlet when connecting the power cord.

6. With the vehicle is DRIVE READY (READY indicator ON), switch on the compressor and let it run for about 5-7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper inflation pressure. (Refer to the "Tyres and wheels" section in chapter 2). The inflation pressure of the tyre after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

Be careful not to overinflate the tyre and stay away from the tyre when filling it.

### CAUTION

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tyre pressure is below 200 kpa (29 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tyre failure.

7. Switch off the compressor.  
8. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tyre valve.

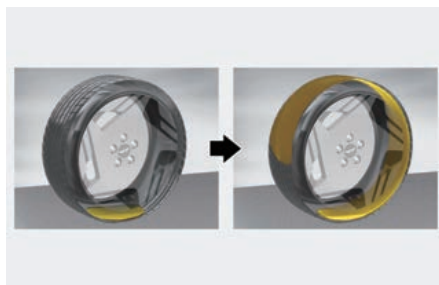
Return the Tyre Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.

### WARNING

Do not leave your vehicle running in a poorly ventilated area for extended periods of time. Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation can occur.

9. Immediately drive about 4-6 miles (7-10 km or about 10 minutes) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h).



Whilst driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.

10. After driving about 4-6 miles (7-10 km or about 10 minutes), stop at a safe location.

11. Connect the filling hose (3) directly into the tyre valve.



12. Plug the compressor power cord (5) into the vehicle power outlet.
13. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recommended tyre inflation.  
With the vehicle is DRIVE READY (READY indicator ON), proceed as follows:

#### To increase the inflation pressure:

Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

#### To reduce the inflation pressure:

Press the button (9) on the compressor.

### NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

### i Information

The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre pressure, the compressor needs to be turned off.

### CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to step 9. Then repeat steps 10 to 13.

Use of the TMK may be ineffectual for tyre damage larger than about 0.16 in (4 mm).

We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit.

### WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be inflated to the proper pressure (Refer to the "Tyres and wheels" section in chapter 2). If it is not, do not continue driving. Call for road side service or towing.

### CAUTION

#### Tyre pressure sensor

The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tyre with a new one and inspect the tyre pressure sensors. We recommend that you get this done at an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### i Information

When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tyre and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 101-116 lbf-ft (14-16 kgf-m).

## How to adjust tyre pressure

1. After driving about 4-6 miles (7-10 km or about 10 minutes), stop at a safe location.
2. Connect the filling hose (3) directly into the tyre valve.



3. Plug the compressor power cord (5) into the vehicle power outlet.

4. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recommended tyre inflation.

With the vehicle is DRIVE READY (READY indicator ON), proceed as follows:

### To increase the inflation pressure:

Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

### To reduce the inflation pressure:

Press the button (9) on the compressor.

## NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

## i Information

The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre pressure, the compressor needs to be turned off.

## ! CAUTION

Do not use the sealant when the tyre pressure only needs to be adjusted.

## ! WARNING

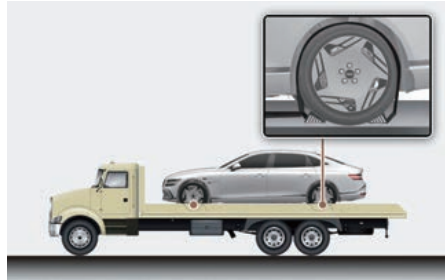
The tyre inflation pressure must be inflated to the proper pressure (Refer to the "11" section in chapter 2). If it is not inflated to the proper pressure, do not continue driving.

Call for road side service or towing.

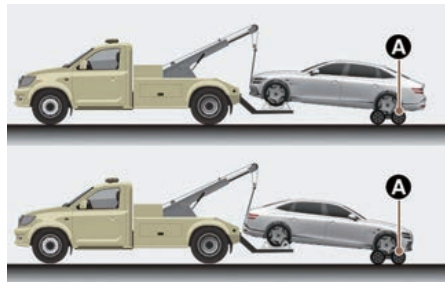
## Towing

### Towing service

Flatbed Towing



Wheel lift Towing



[A] Dollies

If towing is necessary, contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or a commercial tow-truck service.

AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed with all the wheels off the ground.

***Precautions when moving a short distance using towing hook and so on before towing a vehicle***

Move short distances within 33 ft. (10 m) at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less only when loading on a tow truck or if the vehicle needs to be repositioned.

At this time, the gear must be in the N (Neutral) position and the parking brake must be released. If it is impossible to operate the reduction gear and parking brake, move the vehicle by using dollies, tyre skate, etc with all wheel lifted.

**NOTICE**

To prevent damage when towing:

- Do not lift using the trailer towbar or body and chassis parts.
- Do not tow vehicles with sling-type equipment. Only use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.



**NOTICE**

Always shift the gear to N (Neutral) to prevent damage to the reduction gear before towing.

**Removable towing hook**

We recommend that your vehicle be towed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or a commercial tow-truck service.

Only use the towing hook to move short distances (within 33 ft. (10 m) at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less) or to lift the vehicle before towing.

1. Open the boot, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.

Front



Rear



- (1) Install
- (2) Remove
2. Remove the hole cover by pressing the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

## Emergency commodity

 if equipped

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency commodities to help you respond to emergency situation.

## Fire extinguisher

### NOTICE

This vehicle is equipped with the powder-type fire extinguisher exclusively for the fire caused by the electricity in the vehicle. Using water or other inappropriate fire extinguisher may cause the electric shock and collateral damage. If the fire cannot be controlled by the fire extinguisher equipped in the vehicle, avoid approaching to the fire and call fire station. Make sure to announce that the fire is caused by the electric vehicle.

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, follow these steps carefully.

1. Pull out the safety pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle towards the base of the fire.
3. Stand about 8 ft. (2.5 m) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch carefully since it may re-ignite.

## First aid kit

Supplies for use in giving first aid such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape, etc., are provided.

## Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to problems.

## Tyre pressure gauge

 if equipped

Tyres normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a air periodically and usually it is not a sign of a leaking tyre, but of normal wear. Always check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold because tyre pressure increases with temperature.


To check the tyre pressure, take the following steps:

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tyre.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tyre valve. Some air will leak as you begin and more will leak if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tyre pressure on the gauge to see whether the tyre pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tyre pressure to the specified pressure. Refer to the "Tyres and wheels" section in chapter 2.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

 **WARNING**

- When an accident occur, park the vehicle to a safe place. To avoid the leak of electricity in high voltage battery, turn the vehicle off and pull the yellow label in the high voltage battery switch to shut down the high voltage battery. Also, disconnect the auxiliary battery (12 V) cable to shut down. Be sure to disconnect both positive (+) cable and negative (-) cable.
  - Do not touch the exposed electric wires. Do not touch high voltage wires (orange), connectors and other electric components.
  - When an accident occur, the lethal gas and fluid from damaged high voltage battery can be leaked. Be aware not to touch or exposed to the gas and fluid. When flammable or poison gas leak inside the vehicle, open windows and evacuate to a safe place. When leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water. When the fluid contacts with your skin, wash it with salt water. Get immediate medical attention afterward.
  - When the vehicle is flooded, immediately turn the vehicle off and evacuate to a safe place. For your safety we recommend to call the fire station and or contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
  - When the fire spread to the high voltage battery, the additional fire may occur. In this situation, be sure to accompany a fire truck when the vehicle is being towed.
-

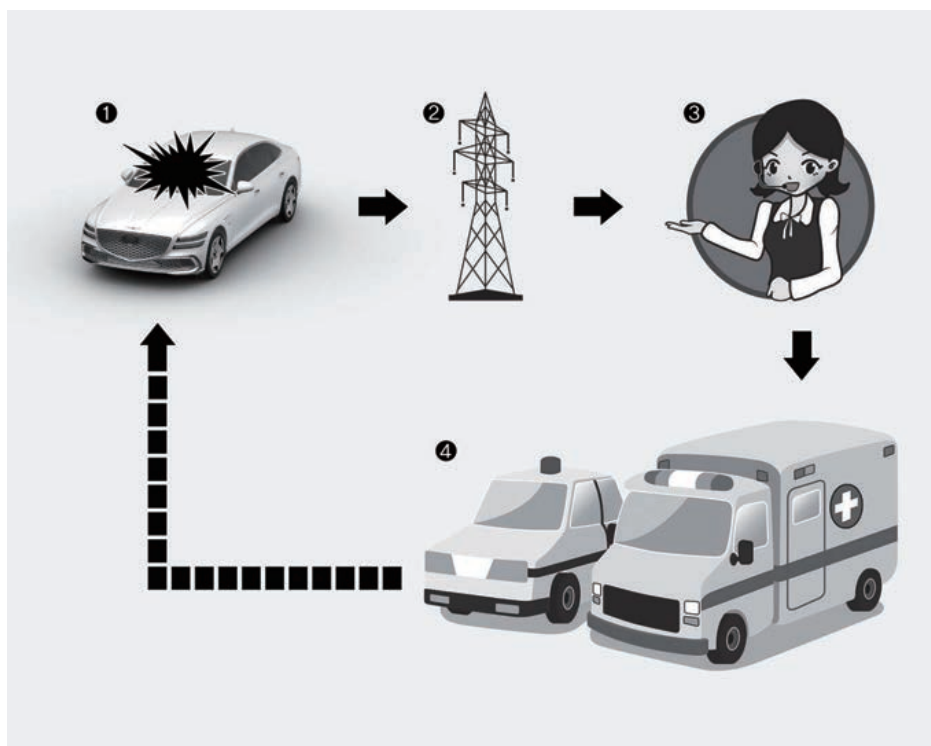
## Pan-European eCall system (For Europe)

 If equipped

The vehicle is equipped with a device\* connected with the Pan-European eCall system for making emergency call to response teams. The Pan-European eCall system is an automatic emergency call service made in event of a traffic accident or other\*\* accidents on the roads of Europe. (only in countries with regulation on this system)

The system allows contacting with an officer of the single duty dispatch service in case of accidents on the roads of Europe. (only in countries with regulation on this system)

The Pan-European eCall system given conditions, stated in the Owner's Manual as well as Warranty and Service book transmits data to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) including such information as vehicle location, vehicle type, VIN (vehicle identification number of the vehicle).

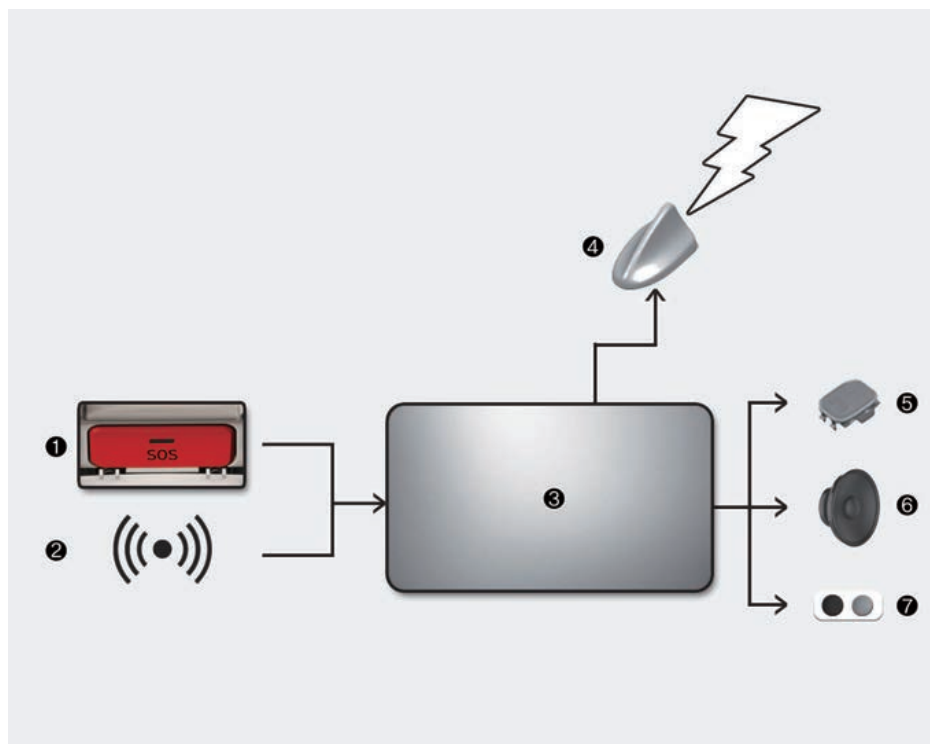


- (1) Road accident
- (2) Wireless network
- (3) Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP)
- (4) Rescue

\*: Pan-European eCall device in the Owner's Manual means equipment, installed in the vehicle, which provides connection with the Pan-European eCall system.

\*\* : "Other accidents" mean any accidents on the roads of Europe (only in countries with regulation on this system) resulted in injured people and/or necessity of provision of assistance. In case of registration of any accident, it is necessary to stop a vehicle, press button SOS (location of the button is specified on the picture in the chapter "Pan-European eCall (if equipped)") of the Owner's Manual. When making a call, the system gathers information about the vehicle (from which a call was made), after which connects the car with an officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) to tell about the reason of the emergency call. Once the data which is stored in the Pan-European eCall system is delivered to the rescue centre to assist the driver and passengers with proper rescue operations, the data will be deleted after rescue operation is completed.

### *Description of the ecall in-vehicle system (For Europe)*



- (1) SOS Button
- (2) Crash signal
- (3) Emergency Call System
- (4) Antenna
- (5) Mic
- (6) Speaker
- (7) LEDs

Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: refer to this section. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident.

It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

Instructions for manual activation of the system: refer to this section.

In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: refer to this section.

### Information on data processing (For Europe)

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC\* and 2002/58/EC\*\* of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC\*\*\*.

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

#### *Types of data and its recipients*

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (petrol/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen)
- Vehicle recent locations and direction of travel
- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp
- Any additional data

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.

\*: Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

\*\* : Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

\*\*\*: Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data

(General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

### ***Arrangements for data processing***

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

### ***Modalities for exercising data subject's rights***

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact service responsible for handling access requests.

## Pan-European eCall System (For Europe)



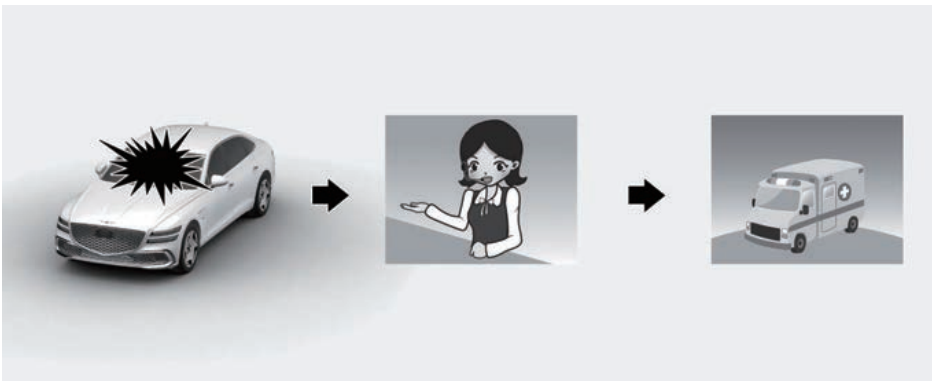
- (1) SOS button
- (2) LED

Elements of the Pan-European eCall system, installed in passenger compartment:

- **SOS** button: The driver or passenger makes an emergency call to the single duty dispatch service by pressing the button.
- **LED**: The red and green LED illuminates for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position. After that they will switch off at normal operation of the system.

If there are some problems in the system, the LED remains in red.

### *Automatic accident reporting (For Europe)*



1. System operation in the event of a traffic accident
2. Connection with the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP)
3. Emergency services

The Pan-European eCall device automatically makes an emergency call to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) for proper rescuing operations in event of vehicle accident.

For proper emergency services and support the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the accident data to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) when a traffic accident is detected.

In this case, the emergency call cannot be hung up by pressing the SOS button and the Pan-European eCall system remains connected until the emergency service officer, receiving the call, disconnects the emergency call.

In minor traffic accidents the Pan-European eCall system may not execute an emergency call. However, an emergency call may be made manually by pressing the SOS button.

### CAUTION

Operation of the system is impossible in case of absence of mobile transmission and GPS and Galileo signals.

### *Manual accident reporting (For Europe)*



The driver or passenger manually can make an emergency call to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP), by pressing SOS button to call the necessary emergency services.

A call to the emergency services through the Pan-European eCall system can be cancelled by pressing the SOS button again only before the call connection.

After activation of emergency call in the manual mode (for proper emergency services and support), the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the road accident data / or data on other accident to the officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) (during emergency call) by pressing the SOS button.

If the driver or passenger accidentally presses the SOS button, it can be cancelled by pressing the button again. (For Russia)

It can be cancelled by pressing the button again in 3 seconds. It can't be cancelled after that. (Except Russia)

In case of road accident or other accident for activation of emergency call in manual mode it is necessary to:

1. Stop the vehicle in accordance with traffic rules to ensure safety to yourself and other participants of road traffic.

2. Press the SOS button. When pressing the button SOS, registration of the device in the wireless telephonic communication networks is carried out, minimum data set about vehicle and its location is collected in accordance with of the technical requirements of the device. And then, the connection with the officer of the Pan-European eCall system is made for clearing up reasons (conditions) of the emergency call.
  3. After clearing up reasons of the emergency call, the officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) sends emergency services and completes the emergency call.
- If the emergency call is not carried out in accordance with the procedure, mentioned above, the emergency call will be considered as erroneous.

### **WARNING**

Emergency power supply of the Pan-European eCall system from the battery

- The Pan-European eCall system battery supplies power during 1 hour in case main power source of the vehicle is cut off due to the collision during the emergency situations.
- The Pan-European eCall system battery should be replaced every 4 years. For more information refer to the "Normal maintenance schedule" in chapter 9.

LED illumination in red (system malfunction)

If red LED illuminates in normal driving conditions, this can indicate malfunction of the Pan-European eCall system. We recommend that system be checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Operation of the Pan-European eCall system device, installed in your vehicle is not guaranteed. Owner of the vehicle incurs liability for consequences, occurred as a result of nonobservance of conditions, mentioned above.

Arbitrary Removal or Modification

The Pan-European eCall system calls emergency services for assistance. Thus, any arbitrary removal or changes to the Pan-European eCall system settings may affect your driving safety. Also, it may even make an erroneous emergency call to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP). Thereby, we kindly ask you not to make any changes by yourself or by the third parties in the settings of the equipment of the Pan-European eCall system, installed in your vehicle.

---

### **NOTICE**

The mobile network operators will phase out the 2G and 3G in many countries around the world. The decision to phase out 2G and/or 3G network technology was solely at the discretion of mobile network operators and therefore beyond the control of Genesis Branded Vehicle.

Due to decision of the network operators to discontinue their 2G and/or 3G, the automatic/manual eCall will no longer be available in the event of an accident or a situation requiring an emergency service.

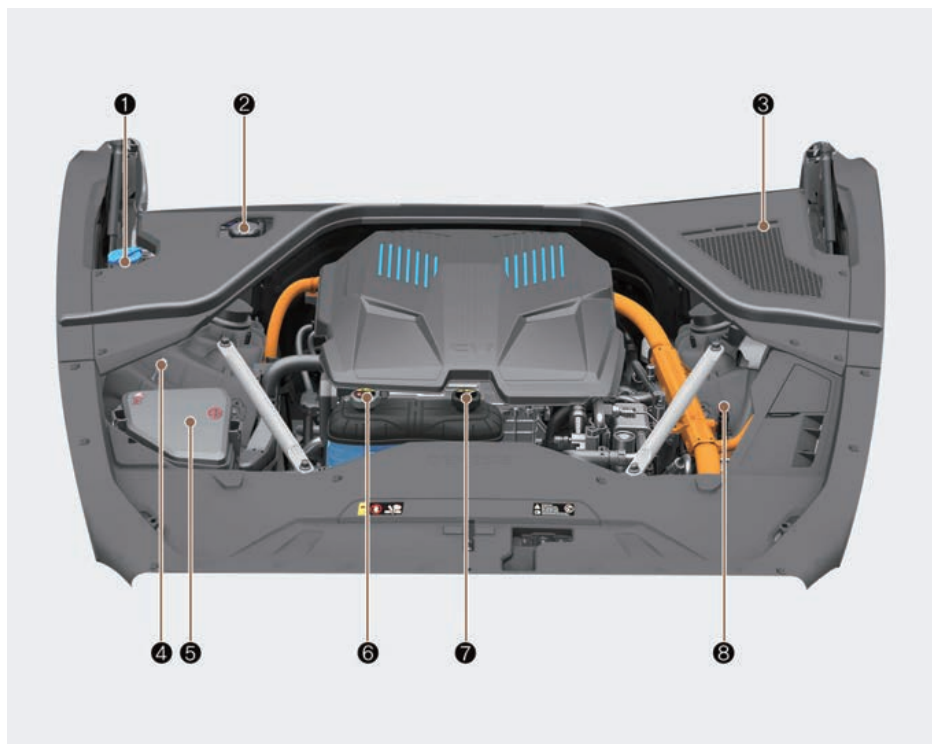
---

# 9. Maintenance

Motor compartment overview .....	9-3
Maintenance services .....	9-4
Owner's responsibility .....	9-4
Owner maintenance precautions .....	9-4
Owner maintenance .....	9-5
Owner maintenance schedule .....	9-5
Scheduled maintenance services .....	9-7
Normal maintenance schedule .....	9-8
Maintenance under severe usage conditions .....	9-10
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items .....	9-11
Cooling system .....	9-11
Coolant .....	9-11
Reduction gear fluid .....	9-11
Brake hoses and lines .....	9-11
Brake fluid .....	9-11
Brake discs, pads, calipers, and rotors .....	9-11
Drive shafts and boots .....	9-11
Suspension mounting bolts .....	9-11
Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint .....	9-11
Air conditioning refrigerant .....	9-11
Coolant .....	9-12
Checking the coolant level .....	9-12
Changing coolant .....	9-13
Brake fluid .....	9-14
Checking the brake fluid level .....	9-14
Reduction gear fluid .....	9-14
Washer fluid .....	9-15
Checking the washer fluid level .....	9-15
Cabin air filter .....	9-15
Filter inspection .....	9-15
Filter replacement .....	9-15
Wiper blades .....	9-17
Blade inspection .....	9-17
Blade replacement .....	9-17
Battery (12 V) .....	9-18

For best battery service .....	9-19
Battery replacement .....	9-20
Battery capacity label .....	9-20
Battery recharging .....	9-20
Reset items .....	9-21
Tyres and wheels.....	9-22
Tyre care .....	9-22
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures .....	9-22
Check tyre inflation pressure.....	9-23
Tyre rotation .....	9-23
Wheel alignment and tyre balance .....	9-24
Tyre replacement .....	9-24
Wheel replacement.....	9-25
Tyre traction.....	9-25
Tyre maintenance.....	9-25
Tyre sidewall labelling .....	9-25
Low aspect ratio tyres.....	9-28
Summer tyres .....	9-28
Fuses .....	9-28
Instrument panel fuse replacement.....	9-29
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement.....	9-30
Fuse/relay panel description .....	9-32
Light bulbs .....	9-48
Headlight, position light, turn signal light, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement .....	9-49
Headlight aiming (for Europe).....	9-49
Side repeater light replacement.....	9-52
Puddle light replacement .....	9-52
Rear combination light replacement .....	9-52
Reverse guide light replacement .....	9-53
Rear fog light replacement.....	9-53
High mounted stop light replacement .....	9-53
License plate light replacement.....	9-54
Interior light replacement.....	9-54
Appearance care .....	9-55
Exterior care.....	9-55
Interior care .....	9-59

## Motor compartment overview



The actual motor compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

- (1) Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
- (2) Brake fluid reservoir
- (3) Cabin air filter
- (4) Jump-start negative (chassis) terminal
- (5) Fuse box
- (6) Low conductivity coolant reservoir
- (7) Coolant reservoir
- (8) Emergency cable

## Maintenance services

Exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products meets Genesis Branded Vehicle's high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis Branded Vehicle to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

### Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

Retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

## Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete, or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could cause vehicle damage or a collision that results in serious injury or death.

Your vehicle must not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety, or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

### NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect the warranty coverage. For more information, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle.

---

## Owner maintenance

### WARNING

Performing maintenance on the vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge, experience, or proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend to have it done by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Before performing maintenance:

- Park your vehicle on level ground. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Block the tyres (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving.  
Remove loose clothing or jewellery that can become entangled in moving parts.
- Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery parts.

### WARNING

Make sure to turn the Start/Stop button to the OFF position to shut down the vehicle before performing maintenance work on the vehicle.

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe and dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts, and lubricants used.

The electric control system in the vehicle may cause malfunction or other negative impact on the artificial heart and the artificial internal organs. Be sure to inquire the impact of the electric control system on the artificial organs from the medical product corporation.

## Owner maintenance schedule

### *When you stop for charging:*

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tyres.

### *Whilst operating your vehicle:*

- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or "pulls" to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel, or "hard-to-push" brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your gear shift occurs, check the shift gear fluid level.
- Check the shift gear P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

### ***At least monthly:***

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the headlights, stoplights, turn signals, and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel bolts.

### **⚠ WARNING**



Be careful when checking your coolant level if the motor compartment is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

---

### ***At least once a year:***

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate the door, bonnet locks, and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate the shift gear linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery (12 V) and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

### ***At least twice a year:***

- Check the radiator, heater, and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

## Scheduled maintenance services

If any of the following conditions apply, follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 5 miles (8 km) in normal temperature or less than 10 miles (16 km) in freezing temperature
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled, or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust conditions
- Driving in heavy traffic area with the ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) whilst consuming more than 50 % of electric energy.
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- Using for towing or camping, and driving with loading on the roof
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, or other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

## Normal maintenance schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good vehicle performance.

Keep receipts for all vehicle services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean, or replace.

R: Replace or change.

Maintenance intervals	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
	Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
	Miles×1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160
	km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240
Maintenance item									
Cooling system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant <sup>*1</sup>	Standard	At first, replace at 125,000 miles (200,000 km) or 10 years; after that, replace every 25,000 miles (40,000 km) or 24 months							
	Low Conductivity	Replace every 40,000 miles (60,000 km) or 36 months <sup>*2</sup>							
Reduction gear fluid			I		I		I		I
12 V auxiliary battery condition		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
All electrical system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake pedal		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front suspension ball joints		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Maintenance intervals	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
	Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
	Miles×1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160
	km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240
Maintenance item									
Bolt and nuts on chassis and body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner refrigerant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner compressor		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cabin air filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Pan-European eCall system battery (if equipped)		Replace every 4 years							

\*1 When replacing or adding coolant, we recommend that you visit an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

\*2 For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

## Maintenance under severe usage conditions

The following items must be serviced more frequently on the vehicles mainly used under severe and low mileage driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean, or replace

R: Replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance Intervals	Driving condition
Reduction gear fluid	R	Every 80,000 miles (120,000 km)	B, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I
Cabin air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, D, F

### Severe driving conditions

- A. Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 5 miles (8 km) in normal temperature or less than 10 miles (16 km) in freezing temperature
- B. Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled, or salt-spread roads
- C. Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- D. Driving in the heavy dust conditions
- E. Driving in heavy traffic area with the ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) whilst consuming more than 50 % of electric energy.
- F. Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- G. Using for towing or camping, and driving with loading on the roof
- H. Driving as patrol car, taxi, or other commercial use of vehicle towing
- I. Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- J. Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

## Explanation of scheduled maintenance items

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses, and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

### Reduction gear fluid

The reduction gear fluid should be inspected according to the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

### Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration, and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

### Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

### Brake discs, pads, calipers, and rotors

Check the pads, the disc, and the rotor for any excessive wear-out. Inspect calipers for any fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to <http://service.hyundai-motor.com>.

### Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

### Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

### Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

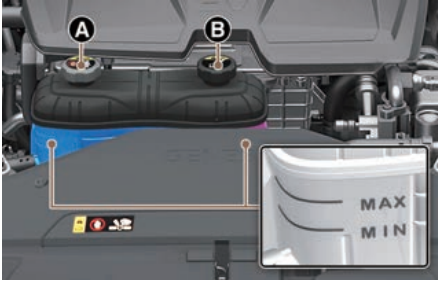
With the vehicle stopped and the vehicle off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

## Coolant

### Checking the coolant level



- [A] Low conductivity coolant  
[B] Standard coolant

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between the **MAX** (Maximum) and the **MIN** (Minimum) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the motor compartment is cool.

If the coolant is low, we recommend to have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

#### WARNING

Since specific coolant water (Blue colour, Low conductivity) is applied for electric vehicles, replenishment of other antifreeze or water may cause problems to the vehicle.

#### WARNING



The electric motor for the cooling fan may continue to operate or start up when the vehicle is not running and can cause serious injury.

Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan. The electric motor for the cooling fan is controlled by vehicle coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. As the vehicle coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

#### WARNING

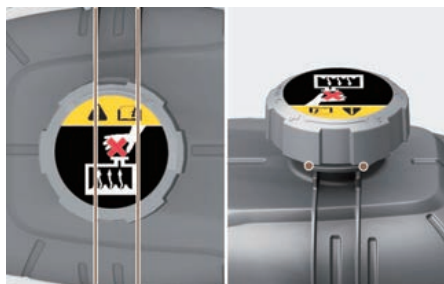


Check the coolant level when the motor compartment is cooled. Coolant level is influenced by temperature, and if the coolant reservoir cap is removed when coolant temperature is high, hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.

## ⚠ WARNING

Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise, the motor may be overheated whilst driving.

Motor compartment front view



1. Check if the coolant cap label is straight in front.
2. Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap is securely interlocked.

### Recommended coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water, distilled water, or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory.
- An incorrect coolant mixture may result in severe malfunction or motor damage.
- Do not use alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60 % antifreeze or less than 35 % antifreeze, which could reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixing percentage, refer to the following table:

Ambient temperature	Mixture percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15 °C (5 °F)	35	65
-25 °C (-13 °F)	40	60
-35 °C (-31 °F)	50	50
-45 °C (-49 °F)	60	40

## i Information

If in doubt about the mix ratio, a 50 % water and 50 % antifreeze mix is the easiest to mix together because it is the same quantity for each.

## Changing coolant

We recommend that the coolant be changed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

## ⚠ WARNING

Do not use coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.

Coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Coolant may also cause damage to paint and body trim.

## NOTICE

To prevent damage to motor parts, put a thick towel around the coolant cap before refilling the coolant to prevent the coolant from overflowing into motor parts.

## Brake fluid

### Checking the brake fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level must be between the **MAX** (Maximum) and **MIN** (Minimum) marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add the specified brake fluid to the **MAX** level. If the fluid level is excessively low or frequent additions are required, we recommend that the brake system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

#### **WARNING**

If brake fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

#### **NOTICE**

- Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, because paint damage may occur.
- Never use brake fluid that has been exposed to open air for an extended time and dispose of it properly.
- Do not use a wrong type of brake fluid. A few drops of mineral based oil in your brake system may damage the brake system parts.

#### **Information**

Use only the brake fluid specified in the "Recommended lubricants and capacities" section in chapter 2.

## Reduction gear fluid

There is no reduction gear fluid level gauge in the vehicle. Check the reduction gear fluid every 40,000 miles (60,000 km) regularly. If the vehicle is driven under severe condition, check the maintenance under severe usage condition and we recommend that have you to consult an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Washer fluid

### Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water can be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer fluid with antifreeze in cold climates to prevent freezing.

#### **WARNING**

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Do not use coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Coolant can severely limit your visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
- Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.
- Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin.
- Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.

## Cabin air filter

### Filter inspection

The cabin air filter must be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle operates in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long time, have it inspected more frequently and replaced immediately. Replace the cabin air filter by following the procedure below and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

### Filter replacement

1. Open the glove box and remove the support rod (1).

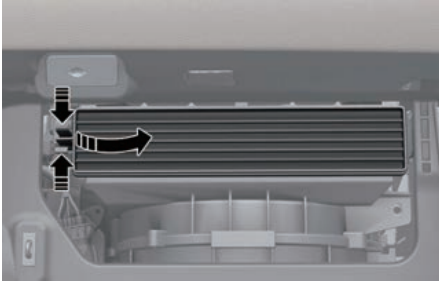


2. Remove the stoppers on both sides to allow the glove box to hang open.



3. Press and hold the lock on the left side of the cover.

4. Pull out the cover.

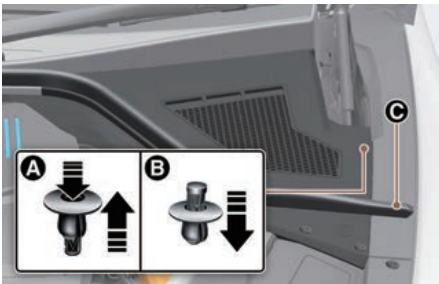


5. Replace the cabin air filter.
6. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

### Motor compartment

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Use a + screwdriver to remove the screws mounted on the air filter cover.

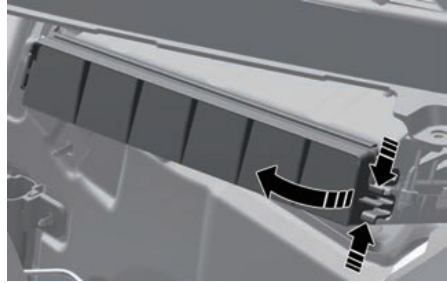
When removing the cover, make sure the [C] part remains still.



- [A] Screw removal  
[B] Screw mounting

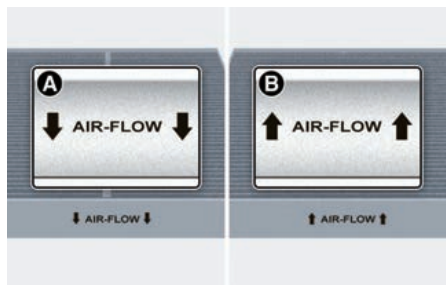
3. Press and hold the lock on the left side of the cover.

4. Pull out the cover.



5. Replace the cabin air filter.
6. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

### NOTICE



- [A] Glove box  
[B] Motor compartment

Install a new cabin air filter with the arrow symbol in the correct direction to improve effectiveness.

- Glove box: Install with the arrow symbol facing downward (↓).
- Motor compartment: Install with the arrow symbol facing upward (↑).

## Wiper blades

### Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign substances may reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with glass cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

#### NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms, or other components, do not:

- Use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
- Attempt to move the wipers manually.

### Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked. Replace the wipers with new ones.

#### NOTICE

To prevent damage:

- Never use non-specified wiper blades.
- Lift the wiper arms when in the top wiping position.
- Always return the wiper arms to the windscreen before driving.

### Front windscreen wiper blade

This vehicle has a "hidden" wiper design that cannot be lifted when in their bottom resting position.

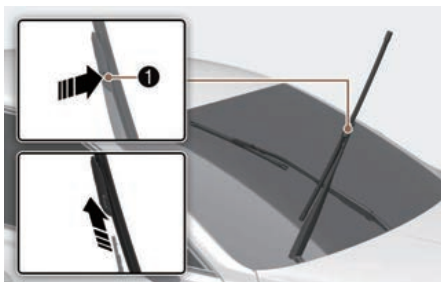
1. Within 20 seconds of turning off the vehicle, push and hold the wiper lever down to the 1x position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.



2. Lift the wipers off the windscreen.
3. Disassemble the washer fluid hose by pulling downward whilst bending down the end of blade.



4. Disassemble it by pulling upward whilst pressing the groove (1) located on the side of the wiper blade.



5. Install the new wiper blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
6. Gently put down the wiper back onto the windscreen.
7. Turn the wipers to any ON position to return the wiper arms to the bottom resting position.

## Battery (12 V)

### **WARNING**

To prevent serious injury or death to you or bystanders when working near or handling the battery:

Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen gas is always present in battery cells. It is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulfuric acid that is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



- Lift a battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners. When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
- Never attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the **READY** indicator ON or when the Start/Stop button is in the **DRIVE READY** position.

## NOTICE

To prevent battery damage:

- Always fully charge the battery and store indoors when you do not plan to use the vehicle for a long time if the outside temperature is low enough to cause the battery to freeze.
- Always fully charge the battery to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.
- Prevent liquid from wetting the battery terminals.
- Do not tilt the battery.

- Never connect unauthorised devices to the battery.

## For best battery service



- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended period of time, disconnect the battery cables.
- Inspect the battery frequently and keep the battery clean at all times.  
Leaving the battery contaminated will shorten battery life.
- Before recharging the battery or performing any inspections, turn off the vehicle and turn off all electrical equipment.

## i Information

Open the battery cover to check the batteries.

## Battery replacement

### 12 V Battery



When replacing the battery, disconnect the negative (-) cable (1) and remove the positive (+) battery fuse box (2).

#### *i* Information

To check the batteries, open the cover. The clips must be removed first to open the cover.

## Battery capacity label



- (1) The Genesis Branded Vehicle model name of battery
- (2) The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
- (3) The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
- (4) The normal voltage
- (5) The cold-test current in amperes by SAE / EN

## Battery recharging

### By battery charger

Should your vehicle's battery become discharged either run the motor for at least 60 minutes driving. Alternatively you may connect a fully automatic regulated charger to the motor compartment front jumper posts or at the battery in the boot.

#### **! WARNING**

To prevent the risk of serious injury or death from explosions or acid burns:

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the vehicle.
- Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.
- Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging. Do not contact the battery. This may result in serious injury.
- Remove the battery from the vehicle and place it in a well ventilated area.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.
- Remove the negative battery cable first and install it last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:
  1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
  2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
  3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.

## NOTICE

### AGM battery

Absorbent Glass Mat (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and should be serviced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Only charge using fully automatic battery chargers that are specifically for AGM batteries.

## CAUTION

Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in serious injury.

### By jump starting

After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 20-30 minutes before it is shutoff. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had a chance to adequately recharge.

Refer to the "Jump starting (12 V Battery)" section in chapter 8 for more information on jump starting procedures.

## i Information



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose used batteries in accordance with local law(s) or regulations.

## Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or disconnected:

- Current trip/After charging/Since last reset (items in Utility view) (refer to chapter 4)
- Integrated memory system (refer to chapter 5)
- Power windows (refer to chapter 5)
- Power boot (refer to chapter 5)
- Automatic climate control system (refer to chapter 5)
- Rear side window sunshades (refer to chapter 5)
- Clock (refer to the Infotainment system manual)
- Infotainment system (refer to the Infotainment system manual)

## Tyres and wheels

### **WARNING**

Tyre failure may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision. To reduce risk of serious injury or death:

- Inspect your tyres monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.
- The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar. Always use a tyre pressure gauge to measure tyre pressure. Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.
- Check the pressure of the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.
- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres may cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.
- Always replace tyres with the same size, type, construction, and tread pattern as each tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes may cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS).

## Tyre care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum electric energy economy, always maintain the recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side centre pillar.

## Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

Check all tyre pressures (including the spare) when the tyres are cold. "Cold tyres" mean the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Warm tyres normally exceed the recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure. The tyres are under-inflated. For the recommended inflation pressure, refer to the "11" section in chapter 2.

### **WARNING**

- Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.
- Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may result in loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

- Severe under-inflation may lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation, and other tyre failures that result in the loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.
- Under-inflation may cause excessive wear, poor handling, and reduced electric energy economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend that it be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.

## Check tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres, including the spare tyre (if equipped), at least once a month or more.

### *How to check*

Use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to check the tyre pressure. You cannot tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated when they are under-inflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until it reaches the recommended pressure. Make sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air

leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

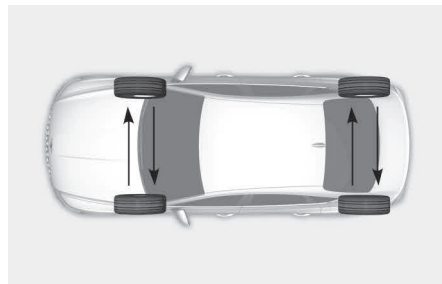
If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture may get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

## Tyre rotation

To equalize tread wear, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that the tyres be rotated every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking, or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check wheel bolt torque (proper torque is 101-116 lbf-ft [14-16 kgf-m]).



Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

## *i* Information

When installing an unsymmetrical tyre, install the side marked "outside" facing out.

## WARNING

- Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.
- Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.

## Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory and you may not need to have your wheels aligned again. If you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling to one side, the alignment may need to be adjusted.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

## NOTICE

Only use approved wheel weights or your vehicle's aluminium wheels may be damaged.

## Tyre replacement



[A] Tread wear Indicator

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 in. (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

## WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres may cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.
- Always replace tyres with the same size as each tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes may cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS).
- When replacing tyres (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tyres (or wheels) as a pair. Replacing just one tyre may seriously affect your vehicle's handling.
- Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that tyres be replaced after six (6) years.

- Driving in hot climates or excessive loading may accelerate the tyre aging process.

### Compact spare tyre replacement

**+** if equipped

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The original size tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare and loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision. The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle over 50 mph (80 km/h) when using the compact spare tyre.

## Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width, and offset.

## Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres or the tyres that are improperly inflated, or on slippery road surfaces. Replace the tyres when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow, or ice on the road.

## Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This may increase ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre must always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

## Tyre sidewall labelling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.



### 1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

### 2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only. Your tyre size designator may vary depending on your vehicle.)

**245/45R19 101H**

- 245 - Tyre width in millimeters.
- 45 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.
- R - Tyre construction code (Radial).
- 19 - Rim diameter in inches.
- 101 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.
- H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

**Wheel size designation**

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one.

Example wheel size designation:

**8.5J X 19**

- 8.5 - Rim width in inches.
- J - Rim contour designation.
- 19 - Rim diameter in inches.

**Tyre speed ratings**

The chart below lists many different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed rating symbol	Maximum speed
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (300 km/h)

**3. Checking tyre life (TIN: Tyre Identification Number)**

Any tyres that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT: XXXX XXXX 0000**

The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tyre size, and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1524 represents that the tyre was produced in the 15th week of 2024.

**4. Genesis exclusive tyre**

Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that tyres designed specifically for Genesis vehicles be used. You may find the marking "GOE" (Genesis Original Equipment) embossed on the tyre sidewall.

**5. Tyre ply composition and material**

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction. The letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

## 6. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

## 7. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

## 8. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

### Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional

equipment on your vehicle may vary depending on the grade.

### Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

### WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature - A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature may cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature may lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### WARNING

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, may cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure.

## Low aspect ratio tyres

 If equipped

The aspect ratio is lower than 50 on low aspect ratio tyres.

Because low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tyre. Also, low aspect ratio tyres tend to be wider and consequently have increased contact with the road surface. In some instances, low aspect ratio tyres may generate more road noise compared with standard tyres.

### CAUTION

Low aspect wheels and tyres are easily damaged. To reduce the risk of damage:

- When driving on rough roads, passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive the vehicle slowly not to damage the tyres and wheels. Damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.
- Inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 1,800 miles (3,000 km).
- It is difficult to visually inspect for tyre damage with your eyes. If any damage is found, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Summer tyres

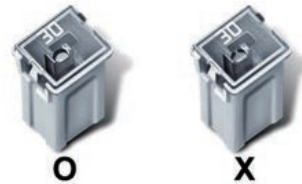
Genesis Branded Vehicle specifies summer tyres on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tyre performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tyres do not have the tyre traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre side wall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends the use of snow tyres or all season tyres on all four wheels.

## Fuses

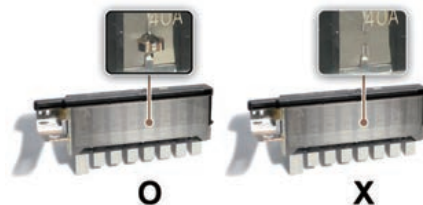
Blade type



Cartridge type



Multi type



Midi type



A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 4 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster and the others in the motor compartment and luggage compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse is melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. Before replacing a blown fuse, turn off the vehicle and all switches, and then disconnect the negative battery cable. Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### **WARNING**

Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.

- A higher capacity fuse may cause damage and possibly cause a fire.
- Do not install a wire or aluminium foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.

### **NOTICE**

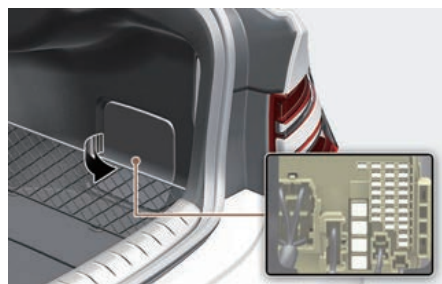
Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

## Instrument panel fuse replacement

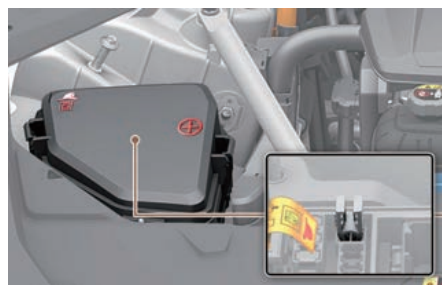
Driver's side



Boot



1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Turn off all other switches.
3. Open the fuse panel cover.
4. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.
5. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the motor compartment fuse panel.



6. Check the removed fuse and replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the motor compartment fuse panel).
7. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it is not tight, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

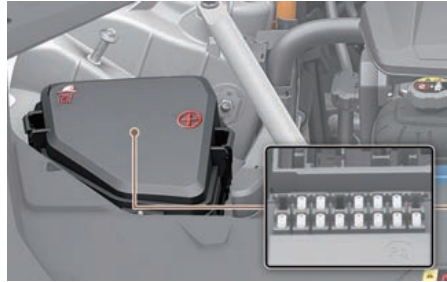
In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle.

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are undamaged, check the fuse panel in the motor compartment.

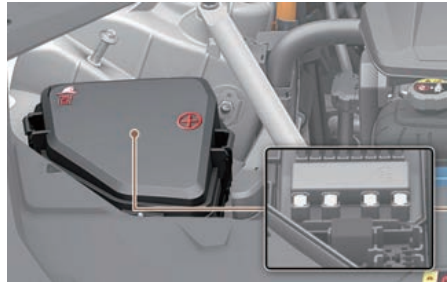
## Motor compartment panel fuse replacement

### Blade fuse/Cartridge fuse

Blade type fuse



Cartridge type fuse



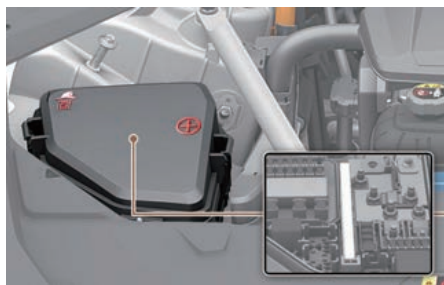
1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Turn off all other switches.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.
4. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.
5. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the motor compartment fuse panel cover.
6. Check the removed fuse and replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the removal tool in the motor compartment fuse panel.
7. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it is not tight, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

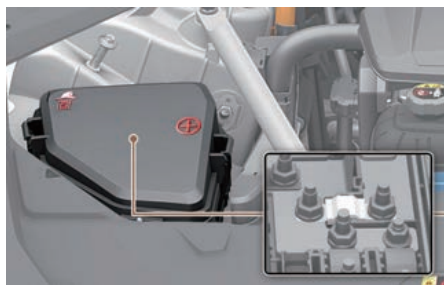
Always securely install the fuse panel cover. Water may contact the fuse and cause an electrical failure.

***Multi fuse/Midi fuse***

Multi type



Midi type



If the multi fuse or midi fuse is blown, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Fuse/relay panel description

### *Instrument panel fuse panel*







Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.




### ***i*** Information














Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.






---

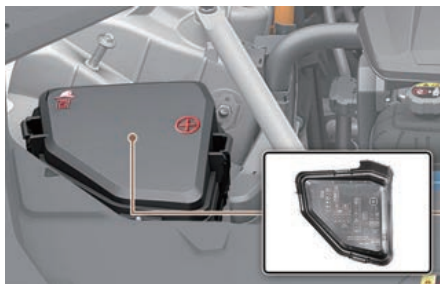


Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MEMORY 1	<sup>1</sup> MEMORY	10 A	CDCU, ADAS Unit (Parking), Front/Rear Smart Phone Wireless Charger, Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, Driver/Passenger Door Mood Lamp Unit, Rear Door Mood Lamp Unit LH/RH, Front A/C Control Module, CCIC Keyboard, A/C Control Module, Mood Lamp Module, Rear Door Curtain Unit, Console Mood Lamp LH/RH, Crash Pad Mood Lamp LH/RH
A/BAG IND		7.5 A	Overhead Console
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT		10 A	Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit
MODULE 8	<sup>8</sup> MODULE	10 A	Data Link Connector, Rain Sensor, ICC Unit, Multifunction Switch, A/C Control Module, Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit
E-SHIFTER 2	<sup>2</sup> E-SHIFTER	10 A	Electronic Shift Dial, SCU
CCU	<b>CCU</b>	10 A	CCU
MEMORY 2	<sup>2</sup> MEMORY	7.5 A	Rear A/C Controller, Head-Up Display, BDC, Security Indicator
BDC 1	<sup>1</sup> BDC	7.5 A	BDC
MODULE 2	<sup>2</sup> MODULE	10 A	CCU, Stop Light Switch
POWER HANDLE		15 A	Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit
MULTI MEDIA		25 A	CCIC Head Unit

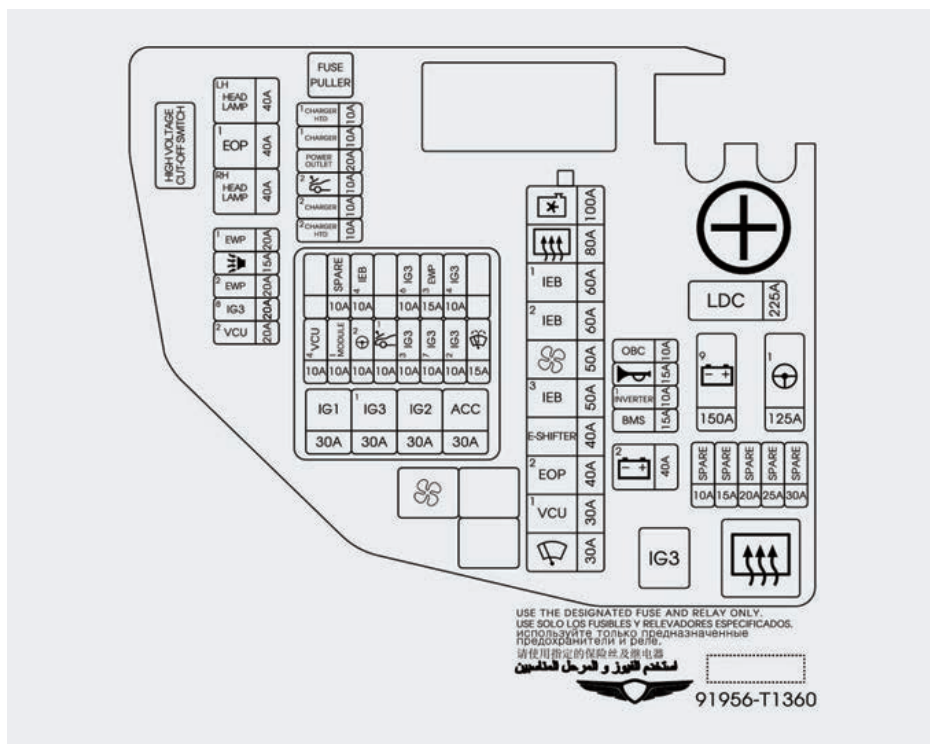
Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MODULE 4	<sup>4</sup> MODULE	10 A	AMP, CCRC RH, Inverter (Rear), Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module, Rear Seat Console Switch, Rear Seat LH/RH Module, Front/Rear Smart Phone Wireless Charger, UVC Lamp Unit, Data Link Connector, Electro Chromic Mirror, Armrest Heater Unit, CCIC Keyboard, ICC Unit, CCIC Head Unit, DCU
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	7.5 A	Front Monitor, Head-Up Display
MESSAGE SEAT (RR)	MESSAGE SEAT (RR)	15 A	Rear Seat LH/RH Lumbar Support Unit
SBCM (DRV)	SBCM (DRV)	20 A	Driver SBCM
MODULE 7	<sup>7</sup> MODULE	7.5 A	Head Lamp LH/RH
POWER BOOT		10 A	Boot Latch Motor
AMP 2	<sup>2</sup> AMP	15 A	CCRC RH
MODULE 5	<sup>5</sup> MODULE	10 A	Driver Door Module, Multifunction Switch
E-SHIFTER 1	<sup>1</sup> E-SHIFTER	7.5 A	Electronic Shift Dial, SCU
MODULE 1	<sup>1</sup> MODULE	10 A	Front Monitor, CCU, CCIC Head Unit, Front Console Keyboard, DCU, BDC, Armrest Lamp, Electronic Shift Dial, CCRC RH, AMP, ADAS Unit (Parking), Rear Seat Console USB Charger, Rear Seat Console Switch
POWER SEAT (PASS 1)	<sup>1</sup> PASS 	30 A	Passenger Power Seat Module
S/HEATER (DRV)	DRV 	25 A	Driver Power Seat Module

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
WIPER		10 A	Multifunction Switch
AIR BAG 2		10 A	SRS Control Module
BDC 2		10 A	BDC, Bluetooth Unit, UWB Antenna, Driver/Passenger Door Outside Handle, Rear Door Outside Handle LH/RH
AIR BAG 1		10 A	SRS Control Module
POWER SEAT (PASS 2)		25 A	Passenger Power Seat Module
S/HEATER (PASS)		20 A	Passenger Power Seat Module
MODULE 6		7.5 A	BDC
WIRELESS DCU		10 A	DCU
POWER SEAT (RR RH 2)		25 A	Rear Seat RH Module
SBCM (PASS)		20 A	Passenger SBCM
HEATED ARMREST		15 A	Armrest Heater Unit
MODULE 3		10 A	Crash Pad Switch, ADAS Unit (Driving), Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit, Front Console Switch, LKAS Unit, ECS Unit, ADAS Unit (Parking), Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, RWS Module, CDCU
POWER SEAT (DRV 1)		30 A	Driver Power Seat Module







Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
P/WINDOW LH	LH 	30 A	Front Power Window Module LH, Rear Power Window Module LH
MODULE 9	9 MODULE	10 A	VESS Unit, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror, Driver Door Module, PTL Unit, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module, Driver/Passenger Lumbar Support Unit, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Switch, Rear Seat LH/RH Power Switch, Rear Seat LH/RH Lumbar Support Unit, Rear Seat LH/RH Module, Rear Seat LH/RH Heater Unit, P/R Junction Block (RLY. 1/5)
POWER SEAT (RR RH 1)	1 RR RH 	25 A	Rear Seat RH Module
POWER SEAT		10 A	Driver/Passenger Lumbar Support Unit
POWER SEAT (RR LH 2)	2 RR LH 	25 A	Rear Seat LH Module
POWER SEAT (DRV 2)	2 DRV 	25 A	Driver Power Seat Module

*i* **Information**


Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.






### Motor compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MINE	LDC	LDC	225 A	ICCU
	B+9	<sup>9</sup> 	150 A	P/R Junction Block (Fuse: F7/F8/F9/F10/F11/S1/S2/S3), PCB Block (Fuse: S1/S2/S3/S4)
	MDPS 1	<sup>1</sup> 	125 A	MDPS Unit
MULTI	COOLING FAN		100 A	Cooling Fan Motor
	REAR HEATED		80 A	RLY.5
	IEB 1	<sup>1</sup> IEB	60 A	IEB Unit
	IEB 2	<sup>2</sup> IEB	60 A	IEB Unit
	BLOWER		50 A	RLY.1
	IEB 3	<sup>3</sup> IEB	50 A	IEB Unit
	E-SHIFTER	E-SHIFTER	40 A	SCU
	EOP 2	<sup>2</sup> EOP	40 A	Traction Motor Oil Pump (Rear)
	VCU 1	<sup>1</sup> VCU	30 A	VCU
	WIPER		30 A	Wiper Motor

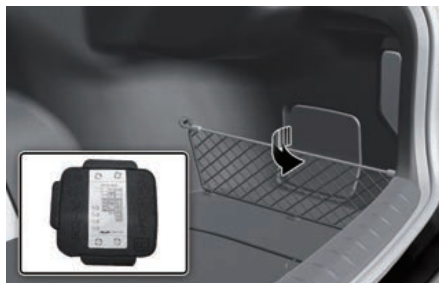
Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
SB	B+2	<sup>2</sup> 	40 A	P/R Junction Block (Fuse: F12/F13/F15), PDC (IPS11, IPS12)
	HEAD LAMP LH	LH HEAD LAMP	40 A	Headlight LH
	EOP 1	<sup>1</sup> EOP	40 A	Traction Motor Oil Pump (Front)
	HEAD LAMP RH	RH HEAD LAMP	40 A	Headlight RH
MICRO	OBC	OBC	10 A	VCMS, ICCU
	HORN		15 A	PCB Block (Horn Relay)
	INVERTER 1	<sup>1</sup> INVERTER	10 A	Inverter (Front)
	BMS	BMS	15 A	BMU
	EWP 1	<sup>1</sup> EWP	20 A	Electronic Water Pump (BSA)
	B/ALARM		15 A	PCB Block (B/Horn Relay)
	EWP 2	<sup>2</sup> EWP	20 A	Electronic Water Pump (Radiator)
	IG 3 (8)	<sup>8</sup> IG3	20 A	RLY.4
	VCU 2	<sup>2</sup> VCU	20 A	VCU
	CHARGER HTD 1	<sup>1</sup> CHARGER HTD	10 A	Charged Door Module LH

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MICRO	CHARGER 1	<sup>1</sup> CHARGER	10 A	Charged Door Module LH
	POWER OUTLET	POWER OUTLET	20 A	Armrest Power Outlet
	ACTIVE BONNET 2	<sup>2</sup> 	10 A	Active Bonnet Control Unit
	CHARGER 2	<sup>2</sup> CHARGER	10 A	NOT USED
	CHARGER HTD 2	<sup>2</sup> CHARGER HTD	10 A	NOT USED

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
IEB 4	<sup>4</sup> IEB	10 A	IEB Unit
IG 3 (6)	<sup>6</sup> IG3	10 A	Front/Rear A/C Controller, A/C PTC Heater, Front Monitor, DCU, CCRC RH, A/C Control Module, Incar Temperature Sensor, Incar PM Sensor, CCIC Head Unit, Coolant Valve, Electronic A/C Compressor
EWP 3	<sup>3</sup> EWP	15 A	Electronic Water Pump (BSA/Radiator/PEM), Coolant 3way Valve (BSA)
IG 3 (4)	<sup>4</sup> IG3	10 A	VCU
VCU 4	<sup>4</sup> VCU	10 A	VCU
MODULE 1	<sup>1</sup> MODULE	10 A	Front Radar, Front Corner Radar LH/RH, Inverter (Front)
MDPS 2	<sup>2</sup> 	10 A	MDPS Unit

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
ACTIVE BONNET 1	<sup>1</sup> 	10 A	Active Bonnet Control Unit
IG 3 (3)	<sup>3</sup> IG3	10 A	Traction Motor Oil Pump (Front/Rear), ICCU, BMU, Inverter (Rear)
IG 3 (7)	<sup>7</sup> IG3	10 A	VCMS, CCU, IPS Control Module
IG 3 (2)	<sup>2</sup> IG3	10 A	SCU, Cooling Fan Motor, Inverter (Front)
WASHER		15 A	Washer Relay
IG 1	IG1	30 A	IG1 Relay
IG 3 (1)	<sup>1</sup> IG3	30 A	IG3 relay
IG 2	IG2	30 A	IG2 Relay
ACC	ACC	30 A	ACC Relay

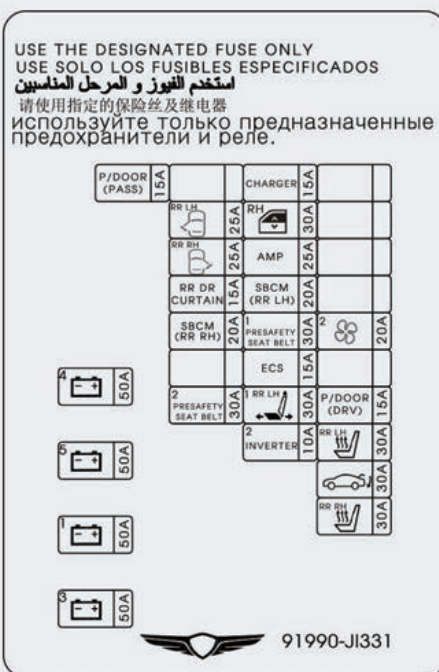
### Boot fuse panel (Rear sub junction block)










Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.






### *i* Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



## Boot fuse panel (Rear sub junction block)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
B+4	4 	50 A	PDC (Long Term Load Latch Relay , IPS13, Fuse: F4/F5/F12/F13/F21/F28/F37/F47/F55)
B+5	5 	50 A	PDC (Fuse: F29/F36/F46/F48/F49/F53/F56)
B+1	1 	50 A	PDC (IPS4, IPS5, IPS6, IPS7)
B+3	3 	50 A	PDC (Fuse: F1/F9/F10/F17/F18/F25/F26/F33/F34/F43/F44/F51/F52/F58/F59)
P/DOOR (PASS)	P/DOOR (PASS)	15 A	Passenger Door Latch
CHARGER	CHARGER	15 A	Charging Connector Lock/Unlock Relay
PDS (RR LH)	RR LH 	25 A	Rear Power Door Closing Actuator LH
P/WINDOW RH	RH 	30 A	Rear Power Window Module RH [LHD] Passenger Power Window Module [RHD] Driver Power Window Module
PDS (RR RH)	RR RH 	25 A	Rear Power Door Closing Actuator RH
AMP	AMP	25 A	AMP
RR DR (CURTAIN)	RR DR CURTAIN	15 A	Rear Door Curtain Unit
SBCM (RR LH)	SBCM (RR LH)	20 A	Rear SBCM LH
SBCM (RR RH)	SBCM (RR RH)	20 A	Rear SBCM RH

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 1	1 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30 A	Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit
BLOWER 2	2 	20 A	Blower #2 Relay
ECS	ECS	15 A	ECS Unit
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 2	2 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30 A	Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit
POWER SEAT (RR LH 1)	1RR LH 	30 A	Rear Seat LH Module
P/DOOR (DRV)	P/DOOR (DRV)	15 A	Driver Door Latch
INVERTER 2	2 INVERTER	10 A	Inverter (Rear)
SEAT HEATER (RR LH)	RR LH 	30 A	Rear Seat LH Module, Rear Seat LH Heater Unit
POWER BOOT		30 A	PTL Unit
SEAT HEATER (RR RH)	RR RH 	30 A	Rear Seat RH Module, Rear Seat RH Heater Unit

## Boot fuse panel (Battery junction block)



Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.

### *i* Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

**⚠ 주 의 (CAUTION)**

점프 시동 상세 방법은 차량 취급설명서를 참조해 주십시오.  
 For the details about jump start, refer to the owner's manual.  
 Para más información acerca del arranque con pinzas de puente, consulte el manual del propietario.  
 См. руководство пользователя для дополнительной информации о запуске двигателя от внешнего источника.  
 发动机短接起动的详细方法请参照车辆配备的车主手册相关内容。  
 المعلومات من طريقة التشغيل بواسطة كابل مشترك مع بطاريته خارجيه ارجع دليل المستخدم

후륜 조향시스템  
RWS 100A

발전제어  
AMS 10A

보조 배터리  
AUX BATT 50A

+

8 B+ 100A




7 B+ 100A

6 B+ 100A

지정된 퓨즈만 사용하세요.  
 USE THE DESIGNATED FUSE ONLY.  
 USE SOLO LOS FUSIBLES ESPECIFICADOS.  
 используйте только предназначенные предохранители.  
 请使用指定的保险丝。  
 استخدم الفيوز ذو القياس المناسب

91956-J1700

**Boot fuse panel (Battery junction block)**

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
RWS	후륜 조향 시스템 RWS	100 A	RWS Module
B+8	8 	100 A	Rear Junction Block (Fuse: S1/S2/F1/F5/F8/F11/F14/F17/F20)
B+7	7 	100 A	Rear Junction Block (Fuse: S4/F16/F22/F24/F25/F26)
B+6	6 	100 A	Rear Junction Block (Fuse: S3/F3/F6/F9/F12/F15/F18/F21/F23)
AMS	발전제어 AMS	10 A	12 V Battery Sensor
AUX BATT	보조 배터리  AUX BATT	50 A	NOT USED

## Light bulbs

We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to replace most vehicle light bulbs. It is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true for removing the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

### **WARNING**

- Prior to replacing a light, depress the brake pedal, shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and to prevent possible electric shock.
- Be aware the bulbs may be hot and may burn your fingers.

### **NOTICE**

- Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage to prevent damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.
- To prevent damage, do not clean the headlight lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

### *i* **Information**

Headlight desiccant (if equipped)

This vehicle is equipped with desiccant to reduce fogging inside the headlight due to moisture. The desiccant is consumable and its performance may change based on the used period or environment. If fogging inside the headlight due to

moisture continues for a long time, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

---

### *i* **Information**

The headlight and tail light lenses could appear to have condensation inside if the vehicle is washed after driving or if the vehicle is driven in wet weather. This condition is caused by a higher temperature inside the light and a cooler outside temperature. Moisture that condenses in the light is removed after driving with the light on. If the moisture is not removed, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

---

### *i* **Information**

- A normally functioning light may flicker momentarily to stabilize the vehicle's electrical control system. If the light goes out, or continues to flicker, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- The position light may not turn on when the position light switch is turned on, but the position light and headlight switch may turn on when the headlight switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *i* **Information**

Adjust the headlight aim after an accident or the headlight is replaced.

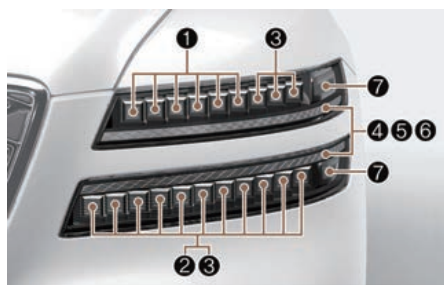
---

## *i* Information

### Traffic Change (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (for example, automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlights are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlights in a country with opposite traffic direction.

## Headlight, position light, turn signal light, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement

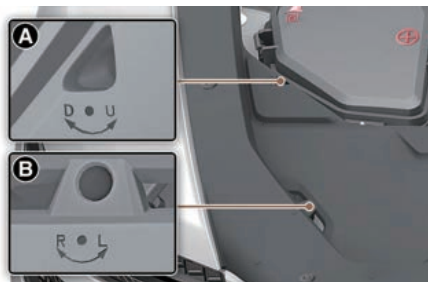


- (1) Headlight (Low)
- (2) Headlight (High)
- (3) Headlight (Low beam assist)
- (4) Daytime running light
- (5) Position light
- (6) Turn signal light
- (7) Headlight (Low beam assist)

If the LED light does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Headlight aiming (for Europe)

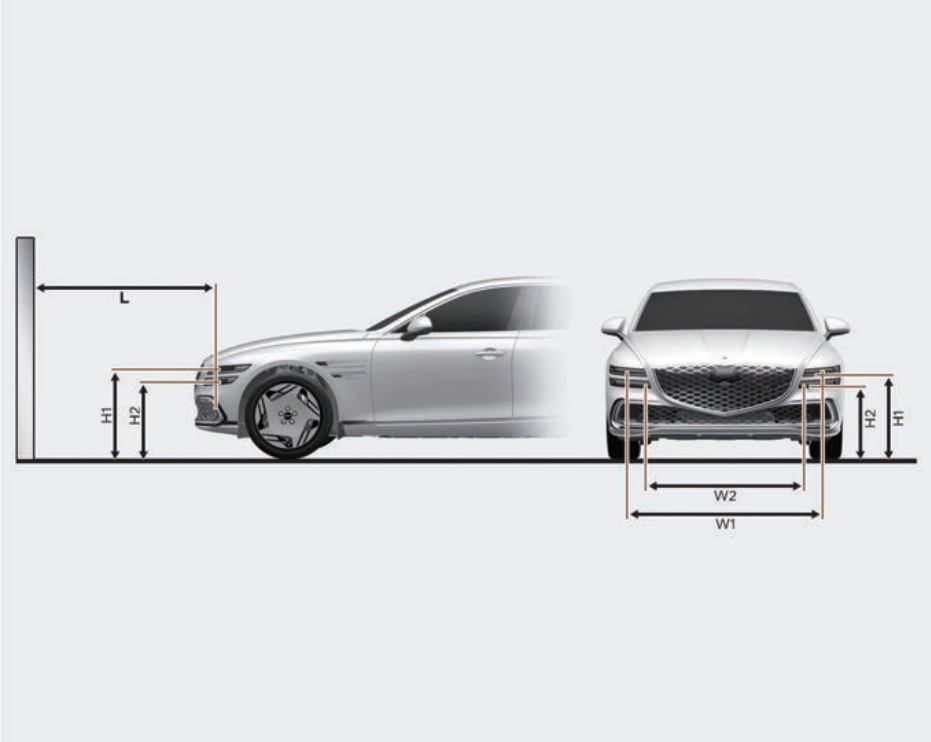


- [A] Low beam and high beam vertical aiming  
[B] Low beam and high beam horizontal aiming

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective headlight centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of headlights) on the screen.
4. With the headlight and battery in normal condition, aim the headlights so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low beam and high beam left or right, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

To aim the low beam and high beam up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

Aiming point



H1: Height between the headlight aiming centre and ground (Low beam)

H2: Height between the headlight aiming centre and ground (High beam)

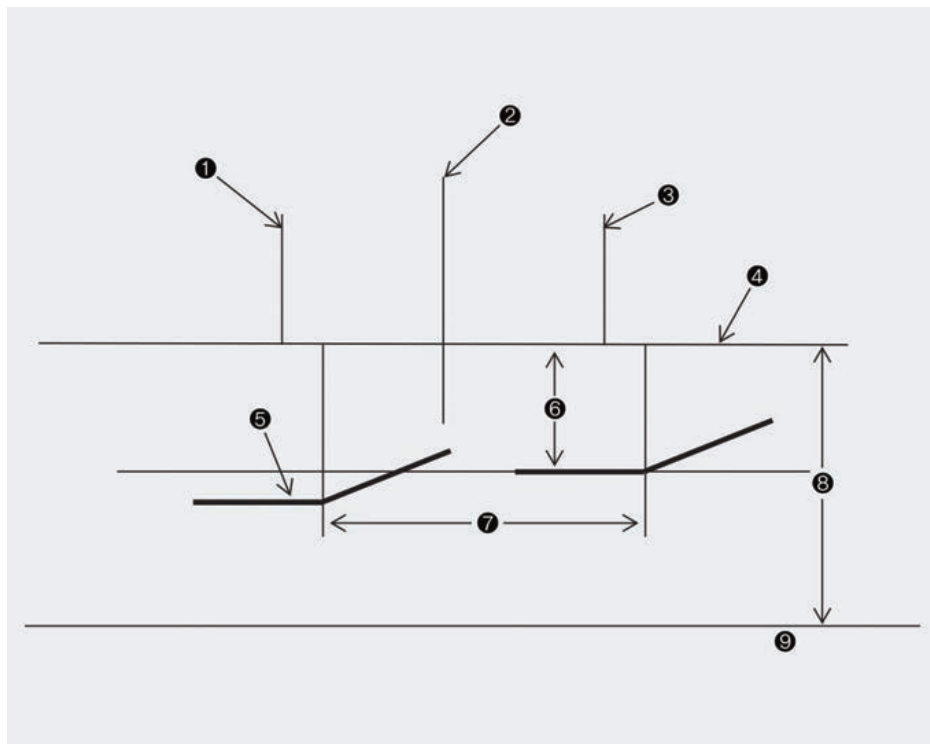
W1: Distance between the two headlight aiming centre (Low beam)

W2: Distance between the two headlight aiming centre (High beam)

Vehicle condition	H1	H2	W1	W2
Without driver in (mm)	27.2 (692)	23.3 (592)	55.9 (1,419)	57.3 (1,456)
With driver in (mm)	27.0 (687)	23.1 (587)		

## Headlight low beam

Based on 10 m screen



- (1) Vertical line of the left headlight aiming centre
- (2) Car axis
- (3) Vertical line of the right headlight aiming centre
- (4) Horizontal line of headlight aiming centre
- (5) Cut-off line
- (6) 3.94 in. (100 mm) (Based on 393.70 in. (10 m))
- (7) W1 (Low beam)
- (8) H1 (Low beam)
- (9) Ground

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If headlight levelling device is equipped, adjust the headlight levelling device switch to "0".

### *i* Information

The high beam is aimed simultaneously when aiming the low beam.

### Side repeater light replacement



If the LED light (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

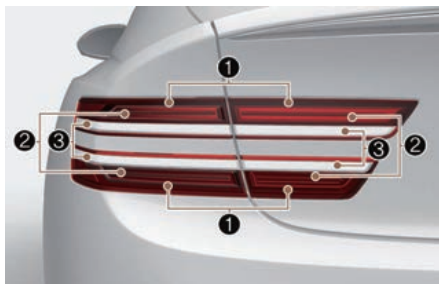
### Puddle light replacement



If the LED light (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

### Rear combination light replacement



(1) Tail light/Stop light

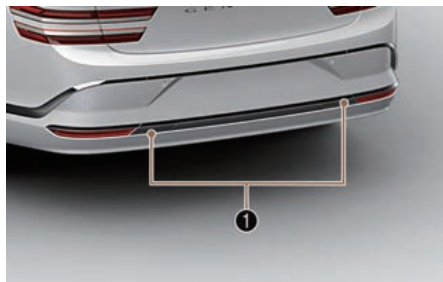
(2) Stop light

(3) Turn signal light

If the LED light does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Reverse guide light replacement



If the LED light (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Rear fog light replacement

 if equipped



If the LED light (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

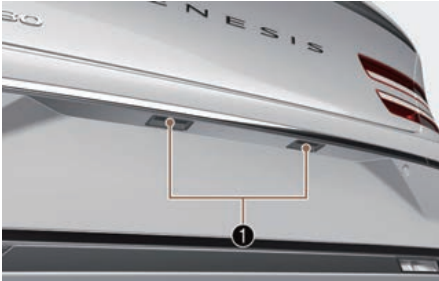
## High mounted stop light replacement



If the LED light (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## License plate light replacement



If the LED light (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lights cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear lamps



Vanity mirror lamp



Glove box lamp



Inner door handle lamp (1) / Foot lamp (2) / Door courtesy lamp (Bulb type) (3)



## Interior light replacement

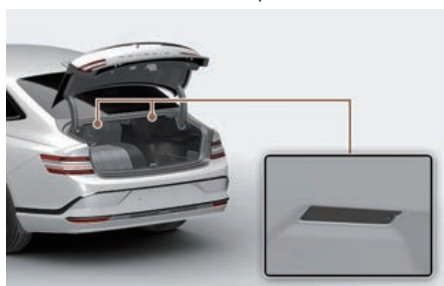
Front lamps



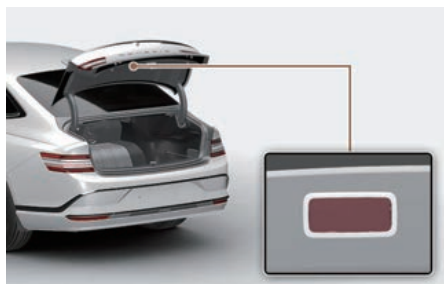
Mood lamp



Boot lamp



Boot emergency lamp



If the LED, bulb lamp does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED, bulb lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED, bulb lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Appearance care

### Exterior care

#### NOTICE

If you park your vehicle near a stainless steel sign or glass facade building, the vehicle's exterior plastic parts such as a bumper, spoiler, garnish, lamp or outside rearview mirror might be damaged due to sunlight reflected from the sign or building. To prevent damage of the exterior plastic parts, you should avoid parking in areas where light may be reflected or use a car cover. (The exterior plastic parts applied to your vehicle may vary.)

#### Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

#### Finish maintenance

##### Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution, and similar deposits may damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. Use a mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

### NOTICE

High pressure water may damage front and rear cameras, sensors, vehicle trim, and boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors.

---

### WARNING

After washing the vehicle, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

---

### NOTICE

- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents, or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.
  - To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.
- 

### NOTICE



- Water washing in the motor compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the motor compartment.
  - Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as water or other liquids may flow in to the motor compartment through the front boot and damage electrical/electronic components.
- 

### *i* Information

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

To prevent damage the matte finish:

- Do not go through an automatic car wash with rotating brushes.
  - Avoid using a steam cleaner. High temperature steam may leave stains that are difficult to remove.
  - Use a soft cloth (for example, microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, do not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the vehicle.
-

### Waxing

A good coat of wax helps protect your paint from contaminants.

Wax the vehicle when water no longer beads on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover usually strips the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

#### NOTICE

- Do not wipe dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth to prevent scratching the finish.
- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminium parts to prevent discolouration or paint deterioration.

#### NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Do not use any polish protector such as detergent, abrasive, or polish. If wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicone remover. If any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface, use a tar remover to clean. Be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.

### Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips on the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal quickly rusts and may develop into a major repair expense.

#### *i* Information

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, make sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

#### NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

It is impossible to only repaint the damaged area. The whole part must be repainted as necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded Products.

### Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative, and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

### ***Underbody maintenance***

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting may occur on underbody parts such as the frame and floor pan, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that must not be allowed to clog with dirt. Trapped water in these areas may cause rusting.

### ***Aluminium wheel maintenance***

The aluminium wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminium wheels.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.
- Do not wash the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any cleaners containing acid or alkaline detergents.

### ***Corrosion protection***

#### **Protecting your vehicle from corrosion**

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, Genesis Branded Vehicle produces vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance are also required.

#### **Common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt, and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion, minor scrapes, and dents that leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

#### **High-corrosion areas**

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air, and industrial pollution.

#### **Moisture breeds corrosion**

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures may also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

### **To help prevent corrosion**

#### **Keep your vehicle clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, and the like, take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, pay particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away may accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels, and frame members, make sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

#### **Keep your garage dry**

Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This

is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice, or mud. Even a heated garage may contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

#### **Keep paint and trim in good condition**

Scratches or chips in the finish must be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

## **Interior care**

### ***Interior general precautions***

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil, from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions for the proper way to clean vehicle interior surfaces.

### **NOTICE**

- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.
- When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.


### ***Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim***

#### **Vehicle interior surfaces**

 If equipped

Remove dust and loose dirt from interior surfaces with a whisk broom or a vacuum cleaner. If necessary, clean interior surfaces with a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use).

#### **Fabric**

 If equipped


Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If you do not pay attention to fresh spots immediately, the fabric may be stained and its colour may be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties may be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

#### **NOTICE**

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

---

#### **Leather**

 If equipped

- Features of seat leather
  - Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Because it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.

Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.

- The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
- The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high that provides driving comfort and stability.
- Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the products.

#### **NOTICE**

- Wrinkles or abrasions that appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.
  - Belts with metallic accessories, zippers, or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.
  - Be sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.
  - Jeans or clothes that could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.
- 
- Caring for the leather seats
    - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It prevents abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
    - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
    - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
    - Light coloured (beige, cream beige) leather may be easily contaminated and the stains may be noticeable.
    - Avoid wiping with a wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.

- Cleaning the leather seats
  - Remove all spills instantly.
  - For cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)  
Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a damp cloth and then wipe with a dry cloth.
  - For beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)  
Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until it does not smear.
  - For oil  
Remove oil instantly with an absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.
  - For chewing gum  
Harden the gum with ice and remove it gradually.
- Handling prime napa leather (if equipped)  
Try to avoid excessive sunlight and heat exposure. Excessive sunlight and heat exposure naturally fades and dries out napa leather, causing wrinkles and discolouration. If the napa leather is wet with liquid, immediately clean it with lint-free cloth to minimise damage. Do not scratch the napa leather surface with a sharp object. If your napa leather seat is bright coloured, it may be contaminated or stained from dyed materials such as jeans.

### ***Interior wooden trim***

- Use a wooden furniture protector (for example, wax, coating compound) to clean the interior wooden trim.
- Sharp objects (for example, driver, knife), adhesive materials, or tapes may damage the interior wooden trim.
- Any strong impacts may damage the interior wooden trim.
- If the coating finish over the interior wooden trim is removed, moisture may damage or change wood traits.
- If the interior wooden trim is damaged, you may get a splinter from the wood surface. We recommend that the damaged interior wooden trim be replaced by an authorised Retailer of Genesis Branded Products.
- Forged wood is an eco-friendly wooden trim made from recycled wood chips. Due to these material characteristics, the grain direction is not constant and small dots or natural cracks may occur. These are natural appearance characteristics of real wood from the manufacturing method and are not appearance defects.

### ***Cleaning the seat belt webbing***

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap.

### **WARNING**

Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken the seat belt.

### ***Cleaning the interior window glass***

If the interior glass surfaces need to be cleaned, use a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

### ***NOTICE***

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.



# Index

## A

<b>About "Getting started with your electric vehicle"</b> .....	1-7
<b>Accessing your vehicle</b> .....	5-6
Immobiliser system .....	5-11
Smart key .....	5-6
<b>Active bonnet lift system</b> .....	3-61
System activation .....	3-61
System limitation .....	3-62
System malfunction .....	3-62
<b>Active sound design</b> .....	6-43
<b>Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)</b> .....	5-35
Advanced Rear Occupant Alert precautions .....	5-36
System operation .....	5-35
System setting .....	5-35
<b>Air conditioner compressor label</b> .....	2-15
<b>Air conditioning system</b> .....	2-12
<b>All Wheel Drive (AWD)</b> .....	6-34
Emergency precautions .....	6-36
<b>Appearance care</b> .....	9-55
Exterior care .....	9-55
Interior care .....	9-59
<b>Automatic climate control system</b> .....	5-83
Automatic heating and air conditioning .....	5-86
Manual heating and air conditioning .....	5-86
System maintenance .....	5-97
System operation .....	5-96
<b>Aux. Battery Saver+</b> .....	1-49

## B

<b>Battery (12 V)</b> .....	9-18
Battery capacity label .....	9-20
Battery recharging .....	9-20
Battery replacement .....	9-20
For best battery service .....	9-19
Reset items .....	9-21
<b>Before driving</b> .....	6-3
Before entering the vehicle .....	6-3
Before starting .....	6-3
<b>Before Using Driver Assistance System</b> .....	7-4
Driver Assistance System sensors .....	7-4
<b>Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)</b> .....	7-33
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-37
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	7-35
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	7-34
<b>Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)</b> .....	7-60
Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction .....	7-61
Blind-Spot View Monitor operation .....	7-61
Blind-Spot View Monitor settings .....	7-61
<b>Bonnet</b> .....	5-51

Closing the bonnet .....	5-52
Opening the bonnet .....	5-51
<b>Brake fluid</b> .....	9-14
Checking the brake fluid level .....	9-14
<b>Braking system</b> .....	6-21
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	6-28
Auto Hold .....	6-26
Brake Assistant System (BAS) .....	6-33
Brake Disc Cleaning .....	6-27
Disc brakes wear indicator .....	6-22
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) .....	6-23
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) .....	6-29
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) .....	6-32
Good braking practices .....	6-34
High performance brake .....	6-22
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) .....	6-32
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) .....	6-33
Power-assist brakes .....	6-21
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) .....	6-31
<b>Bulb wattage</b> .....	2-10

## C

<b>Cabin air filter</b> .....	9-15
Filter inspection .....	9-15
Filter replacement .....	9-15
<b>Centre console overview</b> .....	2-5
<b>Charging your electric vehicle</b> .....	1-11
Checking basic information on charging your electric vehicle .....	1-14
Safety precautions for charging your electric vehicle .....	1-11
Stopping charging immediately .....	1-29
Using a DC Charger .....	1-22
Using a portable charger (ICCB) .....	1-24
Using an AC charger .....	1-20
<b>Child restraint system (CRS)</b> .....	3-37
Installing a Child Restraint System .....	3-39
Our recommendation: Children always in the rear .....	3-37
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	3-38
<b>Climate control additional features</b> .....	5-101
Air conditioning auto-drying .....	5-101
Auto defogging system .....	5-101
Auto dehumidify .....	5-102
Automatic controls linked to climate control settings (for driver's seat) .....	5-103
Rear climate auto Off .....	5-104
Recirculating air when entering a tunnel .....	5-103
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used .....	5-102
<b>Cluster display</b> .....	4-23
Cluster display control .....	4-23
View modes .....	4-24
<b>Convenience features</b> .....	5-1
<b>Coolant</b> .....	9-12

Changing coolant .....	9-13
Checking the coolant level .....	9-12
<b>Countermeasures for accidents or fire</b> .....	1-60
If the electric vehicle catches fire .....	1-60
If the electric vehicle is submerged .....	1-60
If the electric vehicle needs towing .....	1-61
Other precautions for electric vehicle accidents .....	1-61

## D

<b>Declaration of conformity</b> .....	2-16, 7-145
Front corner radar/Rear corner radar .....	7-146
Front radar .....	7-145
<b>Dimensions</b> .....	2-9
<b>Door locks</b> .....	5-25
Automatic door lock and unlock features .....	5-31
Deadlocks .....	5-31
Electronic child safety lock .....	5-31
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle .....	5-26
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle .....	5-25
Rear seat easy door close .....	5-29
<b>Drive mode integrated control system</b> .....	6-40
Drive mode .....	6-40
<b>Driver assistance system</b> .....	7-1
<b>Driver Attention Warning (DAW)</b> .....	7-53
Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations .....	7-54
Driver Attention Warning operation .....	7-53
Driver Attention Warning settings .....	7-53
<b>Driving your electric vehicle</b> .....	1-50
Checking electric vehicle driving information .....	1-51
Starting and stopping the vehicle .....	1-50
<b>Driving your vehicle</b> .....	6-1

## E

<b>Electric charging door</b> .....	5-61
Opening the electric charging door .....	5-61
<b>Electric vehicle specifications</b> .....	2-9
<b>Electronic control suspension</b> .....	6-38
System malfunction .....	6-38
<b>Electronically controlled suspension with road preview</b> .....	6-38
Limitations of the system .....	6-39
System malfunction .....	6-39
<b>Emergency commodity</b> .....	8-20
Fire extinguisher .....	8-20
First aid kit .....	8-20
Triangle reflector .....	8-20
Tyre pressure gauge .....	8-20
<b>Emergency situations</b> .....	8-1
<b>Explanation of scheduled maintenance items</b> .....	9-11
Air conditioning refrigerant .....	9-11

Brake discs, pads, calipers, and rotors .....	9-11
Brake fluid .....	9-11
Brake hoses and lines .....	9-11
Coolant .....	9-11
Cooling system .....	9-11
Drive shafts and boots .....	9-11
Reduction gear fluid .....	9-11
Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint .....	9-11
Suspension mounting bolts .....	9-11
<b>Exterior lights</b> .....	5-67
Battery saver function .....	5-69
Headlight delay function .....	5-70
Headlight levelling device .....	5-70
Headlight moisture removal function .....	5-70
High beam operation .....	5-68
Lighting control .....	5-67
Rear fog light .....	5-69
Reverse guide light .....	5-70
Turn signals and lane change signals .....	5-69
<b>Exterior overview (Front view)</b> .....	2-2
<b>Exterior overview (Rear view)</b> .....	2-3

## F

<b>Fingerprint authentication system</b> .....	5-21
Fingerprint authentication system operation .....	5-23
Fingerprint authentication system settings .....	5-22
Limitations of the system .....	5-24
When purchasing a used vehicle .....	5-24
<b>Forward Attention Warning (FAW)</b> .....	7-57
Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations .....	7-58
Forward Attention Warning operation .....	7-58
Forward Attention Warning settings .....	7-57
<b>Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)</b> .....	7-7
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-20
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	7-12
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	7-9
<b>Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)</b> .....	7-117
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-120
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	7-118
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	7-117
<b>Fuses</b> .....	9-28
Fuse/relay panel description .....	9-32
Instrument panel fuse replacement .....	9-29
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement .....	9-30

## G

<b>Genesis brand motor company</b> .....	1-3
<b>Genesis digital key</b> .....	5-11
Digital key (Card key) .....	5-17

Digital key (Smartphone) .....	5-11
Limitations of the system .....	5-21
Used vehicle/Digital key maintenance .....	5-20

## H

<b>Hazard warning flasher</b> .....	8-2
<b>Head-Up Display (HUD)</b> .....	5-62
Head-up display information .....	5-63
Head-up display settings .....	5-62
Precautions whilst using the head-up display .....	5-63
<b>High Beam Assist (HBA)</b> .....	5-74
High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations .....	5-75
High Beam Assist operation .....	5-74
High Beam Assist setting .....	5-74
<b>Highway Driving Assist (HDA)</b> .....	7-82
Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-90
Highway Driving Assist operation .....	7-84
Highway Driving Assist settings .....	7-83
Highway Lane Change Assist .....	7-87

## I

<b>If the vehicle does not start</b> .....	8-3
Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge .....	8-3
<b>If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit)</b> .....	8-12
Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit .....	8-14
How to adjust tyre pressure .....	8-17
Introduction .....	8-12
Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit .....	8-13
Using the Tyre Mobility Kit .....	8-15
<b>Important safety precautions</b> .....	3-3
Airbag hazards .....	3-3
Always wear your seat belt .....	3-3
Control your speed .....	3-4
Driver distraction .....	3-3
Keep your vehicle in safe condition .....	3-4
Never drink or take drugs and drive .....	3-3
Restrain all children .....	3-3
<b>Importer Information (for Europe)</b> .....	2-16
<b>Importer Information For United Kingdom</b> .....	2-16
<b>In case of an emergency whilst driving</b> .....	8-2
If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing .....	8-2
If the vehicle stalls whilst driving .....	8-2
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving .....	8-3
<b>Infotainment system</b> .....	5-116
Antenna .....	5-116
BANG & OLUFSEN sound system .....	5-118
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology .....	5-118
Infotainment system .....	5-117
Steering wheel remote controls .....	5-116

USB Port .....	5-116
Voice recognition .....	5-118
<b>Instrument cluster</b> .....	4-1, 4-2
Cluster display messages .....	4-18
Gauges and meters .....	4-3
Instrument cluster control .....	4-3
Warning and indicator lights .....	4-6
<b>Integrated memory system</b> .....	5-37
Recalling memory positions .....	5-38
Resetting the system .....	5-38
Seat easy access .....	5-39
Storing memory positions .....	5-38
<b>Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)</b> .....	5-71
System malfunction and limitations .....	5-72
System operation .....	5-71
System settings .....	5-71
<b>Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)</b> .....	7-48
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-50
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation .....	7-49
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings .....	7-48
<b>Interior features</b> .....	5-106
Armrest warmer .....	5-107
Ashtray .....	5-106
Clock .....	5-113
Coat hook .....	5-113
Cup holder .....	5-106
Floor mat anchor(s) .....	5-113
Luggage net holder .....	5-115
Power outlet .....	5-109
Rear mirror .....	5-109
Rear side window sunshades .....	5-114
Rear window sunshade .....	5-114
Sunvisor .....	5-109
USB charger .....	5-110
UV-C sterilizer system .....	5-107
Wireless smartphone charging system .....	5-111
<b>Interior lights</b> .....	5-77
Boot emergency lamp .....	5-80
Boot lamp .....	5-80
Door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Door courtesy lamp .....	5-79
Front lights .....	5-77
Glove box lamp .....	5-78
Interior light AUTO cut .....	5-77
Interior lights always on .....	5-79
Mood lamp .....	5-79
Puddle light .....	5-80
Rear mirror lamp .....	5-78
Rear room lamp .....	5-78
Vanity mirror lamp .....	5-78
<b>Interior overview</b> .....	2-4

<b>Introduction</b> .....	1-3
---------------------------	-----

## J

<b>Jump starting (12 V Battery)</b> .....	8-4
---	-----

## L

<b>Lane Following Assist (LFA)</b> .....	7-79
Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-81
Lane Following Assist operation .....	7-79
Lane Following Assist settings .....	7-79
<b>Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)</b> .....	7-28
Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-31
Lane Keeping Assist operation .....	7-29
Lane Keeping Assist settings .....	7-28
<b>Light bulbs</b> .....	9-48
Headlight aiming (for Europe) .....	9-49
Headlight, position light, turn signal light, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement ....	9-49
High mounted stop light replacement .....	9-53
Interior light replacement .....	9-54
License plate light replacement .....	9-54
Puddle light replacement .....	9-52
Rear combination light replacement .....	9-52
Rear fog light replacement .....	9-53
Reverse guide replacement .....	9-53
Side repeater light replacement .....	9-52
<b>Load and speed capacity tyres (for Europe)</b> .....	2-12

## M

<b>Maintenance</b> .....	9-1
<b>Maintenance services</b> .....	9-4
Owner maintenance precautions .....	9-4
Owner's responsibility .....	9-4
<b>Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)</b> .....	7-46
Manual Speed Limit Assist operation .....	7-46
<b>Mirrors</b> .....	5-44
Inside rearview mirror .....	5-44
Outside rearview mirrors .....	5-45
Reverse parking aid .....	5-47
<b>Motor compartment overview</b> .....	2-8, 9-3
<b>Motor number</b> .....	2-15

## N

<b>Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)</b> .....	7-74
Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control .....	7-76
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation .....	7-75
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings .....	7-75
<b>Non-Powered Boot</b> .....	5-52
Closing the boot .....	5-53
Emergency boot safety release .....	5-53

Opening the boot .....	5-52
------------------------	------

## O

<b>Open Source Software Notice</b> .....	2-16
<b>OTA software update</b> .....	5-64
Approving software update .....	5-64
Downloading software .....	5-64
Preparing software update .....	5-65
Updating software .....	5-65
<b>Owner maintenance</b> .....	9-5
Owner maintenance schedule .....	9-5

## P

<b>Pan-European eCall system (For Europe)</b> .....	8-22
Information on data processing (For Europe) .....	8-24
Pan-European eCall System (For Europe) .....	8-26
<b>Parking Distance Warning (PDW)</b> .....	7-107
Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations .....	7-110
Parking Distance Warning operation .....	7-108
Parking Distance Warning settings .....	7-107
<b>Power boot</b> .....	5-54
Emergency boot safety release .....	5-58
Operating the power boot .....	5-55
Power boot operating conditions .....	5-54
Resetting the power boot .....	5-58
Setting the power boot .....	5-58

## R

<b>Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)</b> .....	7-100
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-104
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	7-101
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	7-100
<b>Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)</b> .....	5-34
Declaration of Conformity .....	5-36
System operation .....	5-34
System setting .....	5-34
<b>Rear View Monitor (RVM)</b> .....	7-91
Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations .....	7-94
Rear View Monitor operation .....	7-92
Rear View Monitor settings .....	7-91
<b>Recommended lubricants and capacities</b> .....	2-13
<b>Recuperative braking system</b> .....	6-13
One pedal driving .....	6-14
Recuperative braking system limitations .....	6-14
Using i-PEDAL .....	6-15
Using recuperative braking system .....	6-13
<b>Reduction Gear</b> .....	6-8
Cluster display messages .....	6-11
Good driving practices .....	6-12

<b>Reduction gear fluid</b> .....	9-14
<b>Refrigerant label</b> .....	2-15
<b>Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)</b> .....	7-123
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-140
Remote Smart Parking Assist operation .....	7-125
Remote Smart Parking Assist settings .....	7-124
<b>Remote start</b> .....	6-8
<b>Returning used vehicles (For Europe)</b> .....	1-5
<b>Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)</b> .....	7-112
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-114
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	7-113
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	7-112
<b>Road active noise control</b> .....	6-43
System malfunction .....	6-43

## S

<b>Safe Exit Assist (SEA)</b> .....	7-41
Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations .....	7-44
Safe Exit Assist operation .....	7-42
Safe Exit Assist settings .....	7-41
<b>Safety messages</b> .....	1-4
<b>Safety system</b> .....	3-1
<b>Scheduled maintenance services</b> .....	9-7
Maintenance under severe usage conditions .....	9-10
Normal maintenance schedule .....	9-8
<b>Seat belts</b> .....	3-28
Additional seat belt safety precautions .....	3-34
Care of seat belts .....	3-36
Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) .....	3-34
Seat belt restraint system .....	3-30
Seat belt safety precautions .....	3-28
Seat belt warning light .....	3-29
<b>Seats</b> .....	3-5
Air ventilation seats .....	3-25
Front seats .....	3-9
Head restraint .....	3-20
Rear seats .....	3-14
Safety precautions .....	3-8
Seat warmers .....	3-23
<b>Smart boot</b> .....	5-59
Deactivating smart boot .....	5-60
Detecting area .....	5-60
Using smart boot .....	5-59
<b>Smart Cruise Control (SCC)</b> .....	7-62
Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations .....	7-70
Smart Cruise Control operation .....	7-63
Smart Cruise Control settings .....	7-62
<b>Smart recuperation system</b> .....	6-16
Front sensors (Front radar) .....	6-18
Pausing smart recuperation system .....	6-18

Smart recuperation level settings .....	6-17
Smart recuperation system on/off .....	6-16
Smart recuperation system operating condition .....	6-17
Smart recuperation system precautions .....	6-19
System malfunction .....	6-18
<b>Special driving conditions</b> .....	6-44
Driving at night .....	6-45
Driving in flooded areas .....	6-45
Driving in the rain .....	6-45
Hazardous driving conditions .....	6-44
Highway driving .....	6-46
Rocking the vehicle .....	6-44
Smooth cornering .....	6-44
<b>Start/Stop button</b> .....	6-4
Start/Stop button positions .....	6-5
Starting the vehicle .....	6-6
Turning off the vehicle .....	6-7
<b>Steering wheel</b> .....	5-40
Haptic warning / Steering Wheel Vibration Warning .....	5-44
Heated steering wheel .....	5-42
Horn .....	5-42
Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) .....	5-40
Rear Wheel Steering (RWS) .....	5-40
Steering wheel grip sensor .....	5-43
Tilt / Telescopic steering .....	5-41
<b>Steering wheel control overview</b> .....	2-7
<b>Storage compartment</b> .....	5-104
Centre console storage .....	5-104
Glove box .....	5-105
Rear console storage .....	5-105
Sunglass holder .....	5-105
<b>Supplemental restraint system - airbags</b> .....	3-46
Additional safety precautions .....	3-60
Airbag warning labels .....	3-60
Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat .....	3-56
How does the airbags system operate? .....	3-53
SRS care .....	3-59
SRS components .....	3-48
SRS warning light .....	3-55
What to expect after an airbag inflates .....	3-55
Where are the airbags? .....	3-49
Why didn't my airbag go off in a collision? .....	3-56
<b>Surround View Monitor (SVM)</b> .....	7-95
Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations .....	7-99
Surround View Monitor operation .....	7-96
Surround View Monitor settings .....	7-95

## T

<b>Theft alarm system</b> .....	5-33
<b>Towing</b> .....	8-18

Removable towing hook .....	8-19
Towing service .....	8-18
<b>Trailer towing</b> .....	6-50
<b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</b> .....	8-7
Changing a tyre with TPMS .....	8-10
Check tyre pressure .....	8-7
Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale .....	8-9
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator .....	8-10
Tyre pressure monitoring system .....	8-8
<b>Tyre specification and pressure label</b> .....	2-14
<b>Tyres and wheels</b> .....	2-11, 9-22
Check tyre inflation pressure .....	9-23
Low aspect ratio tyres .....	9-28
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures .....	9-22
Summer tyres .....	9-28
Tyre care .....	9-22
Tyre maintenance .....	9-25
Tyre replacement .....	9-24
Tyre rotation .....	9-23
Tyre sidewall labelling .....	9-25
Tyre traction .....	9-25
Wheel alignment and tyre balance .....	9-24
Wheel replacement .....	9-25

## U

<b>Understanding your electric vehicle</b> .....	1-7
Characteristics of your electric vehicle .....	1-7
Other precautions for electric vehicle management .....	1-10
Precautions when using the high voltage battery .....	1-9
<b>Using Electric Vehicle functions</b> .....	1-30
Checking energy information .....	1-32
Checking the Electric Vehicle screen configuration .....	1-30
Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L) .....	1-39
Setting electric vehicle specialized functions .....	1-40
Setting the next departure time .....	1-34
Setting the options for the AC charger .....	1-36
Setting the target battery charge level .....	1-38
<b>Using V2L function</b> .....	1-45
Safety precautions when using the V2L function .....	1-45
Solving V2L problems .....	1-48
Using electricity outside the vehicle .....	1-47

## V

<b>Vehicle certification label</b> .....	2-14
<b>Vehicle data collection and event data recorders</b> .....	1-6
<b>Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)</b> .....	2-14
<b>Vehicle information</b> .....	2-1
<b>Vehicle modifications</b> .....	1-5
<b>Vehicle settings (infotainment system)</b> .....	4-27

Setting your vehicle .....	4-27
<b>Vehicle weight</b> .....	6-50
Overloading .....	6-51
<b>Vehicle weight and luggage volume</b> .....	2-12

## W

<b>Washer fluid</b> .....	9-15
Checking the washer fluid level .....	9-15
<b>Welcome system</b> .....	5-76
Dynamic welcome light .....	5-77
Interior light .....	5-77
Puddle light and door handle light .....	5-76
<b>Windows</b> .....	5-48
Power windows .....	5-48
Remote window opening/closing feature (Remote Window Control) .....	5-50
<b>Windscreen defrosting and defogging</b> .....	5-99
Rear window defroster .....	5-100
To defog inside windscreen .....	5-99
To defrost outside windscreen .....	5-99
<b>Winter driving</b> .....	6-46
Snow or icy conditions .....	6-46
Winter precautions .....	6-49
<b>Wiper blades</b> .....	9-17
Blade inspection .....	9-17
Blade replacement .....	9-17
<b>Wipers and washers</b> .....	5-81
Front windscreen washers .....	5-82
Front windscreen wipers .....	5-81